Owner's manual
SEAT Arona

SEAT

Vehicle identification data

Model:
Vehicle Registration:
Vehicle identification number:
Date of vehicle registration or vehicle delivery:
SEAT Official Service:
Service advisor:
Telephone:

Confirmation of receipt of documentation and vehicle keys

The following items were delivered with the vehicle:	**YES**	**NO**
On-board documentation	☐	☐
First key	☐	☐
Second key	☐	☐
Correct working order of all keys was checked	☐	☐
Location: Date:		
Signature of owner:		

Introduction

Thank you for your trust choosing a SEAT vehicle.

With your new SEAT, you will be able to enjoy a vehicle with state-of-the-art technology and top quality features.

We recommend reading this Instruction Manual carefully to learn more about your vehicle so you can enjoy all its benefits in your daily driving.

Information about handling is complemented with instructions regarding the operation and maintenance of the vehicle in order to ensure its safety and maintain its value. Moreover, we want to give you valuable advice and tips to drive your vehicle efficiently and respecting the environment.

We wish you safe and enjoyable motoring.

SEAT, S.A.

⚠ WARNING

Read and always observe safety information concerning the passenger's front airbag ››› page 81, Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag.

About this manual

This manual describes the **features** of the vehicle at the time of drafting this text. Some of the features described below will be introduced in the future or will only be available in certain markets.

Some of the features described here are not included in all the types or variations of the model and they can be varied or modified based on technical or marketing requirements without it being considered misleading advertising.

Some details on the **drawings** may vary from its vehicle and must be interpreted as a standard representation.

The **direction indicators** (left, right, forwards, backwards) in this manual refer to the travel direction of the vehicle unless otherwise stated.

The **audiovisual material** is only meant to help the users better understand some features of the car. It is not a replacement for the instruction manual. Access the instruction manual to see the complete information and warnings.

* The **features marked with an asterisk** are included by default only in certain versions of the model, supplied as optional only for certain versions or only offered in certain countries.

® **Trademarks** are marked with ®. The absence of this symbol does not guarantee that the term is not a trademark.

>> It indicates that the section continues on the next page.

Important warnings on the page.

More in-depth content on the page.

General information on page indicated.

SOS Emergency information on the page.

You can access the information in this manual using:

- Thematic table of contents that follows the manual's general chapter structure.
- Visual table of contents that uses graphics to indicate the pages containing "essential" information, which is detailed in the corresponding chapters.
- Alphabetical index with many terms and synonyms to help you find information.

⚠ WARNING

Texts after this symbol contain information about safety and warn you about possible accident or injury risks.

CAUTION

Texts after this symbol indicate possible damage to the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts after this symbol contain information about the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts after this symbol contain additional information.

Printed Instruction Manual

The printed instruction manual contains relevant information about the use of the vehicle and the Infotainment System.

The digital version of the manuals contains more in-depth information.

Digital Version of the Infotainment System Manual

Fig. 1 SEAT website

The digital version is available on SEAT's official website.

To view the digital version of the manual:

- scan the QR code ››› **Fig. 1**
- **OR** enter the following address in the navigator website:

  http://www.seat.com/owners/your-seat/manuals-offline.html

choose your vehicle and then “Infotainment”.

Related videos

Fig. 2 SEAT website

The operation of some of the vehicle's features can be shown as an instruction video:

- scan the QR code ››› **Fig. 2**
- **OR** enter the following address in the navigator website:

  http://www.seat.com/owners/your-seat/manuals-offline.html

choose your vehicle and then “Multimedia”.

Note

Video instructions are only available in certain languages.

Frequently Asked Questions

Before driving

How do you adjust the seat? ››› page 19

How do you adjust the steering wheel? ››› page 20

How do you adjust the exterior mirrors? ››› page 20

How do you turn on the exterior lights? ››› page 31

How does the automatic gearbox selector lever work? ››› page 40

How do you refuel? ››› page 46

How do you activate the windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system? ››› page 33

Emergency situations

A warning lamp lights up or flashes. What does this mean? ››› page 37

Where are the first-aid kit and the warning triangle in the vehicle? ››› page 84

How do you open the bonnet? ››› page 17

How do you perform a jump start? ››› page 59

Where is the vehicle tool kit located? ››› page 53

How do you repair a tyre with the anti-puncture kit? ››› page 52

How do you change a wheel? ››› page 53

How do you change a fuse? ››› page 50

How do you change a light? ››› page 51

How do you tow a vehicle? ››› page 58

Useful tips

How do you set the time? ››› page 111

When should the vehicle inspection should be performed? ››› page 115

What functions do the buttons/thumbwheels on the steering wheel perform? ››› page 119

How do you remove the luggage compartment cover? ››› page 158

How do you drive in an economical and environmentally-friendly way? ››› page 244

How do you check and top up the engine oil? ››› page 46

How do you check and top up the engine coolant? ››› page 47

How do you top up the windscreen washer fluid? ››› page 48

How do you check and top up the brake fluid? ››› page 48

How do you check and adjust tyre pressure values? ››› page 326

Vehicle washing tips ››› page 336

Functions of interest

Easy Connect, CAR menu ››› page 34

How does the START-STOP system work? ››› page 248

What parking assistants are available? ››› page 284

How does the rear assist work? ››› page 292

How does the adaptive cruise control work? ››› page 259

How can the SEAT driving mode be adjusted? ››› page 274

How does tyre pressure monitoring work? ››› page 329

How do you open the vehicle without a key (Keyless Access)? ››› page 130

Interior lighting and ambient light ››› page 144

Table of Contents

The essentials 7
Exterior view 7
Exterior view 8
Driver-side general instrument panel (left-hand drive) 9
Driver-side general instrument panel (right-hand drive) 10
Passenger-side general instrument panel (left-hand drive) 11
Passenger-side general instrument panel (right-hand drive) 12
Centre console 13
Interior view 14
How it works 15
Opening and closing 15
Before driving 18
Airbags 21
Child seats 23
Starting the vehicle 31
Lights and visibility 31
Easy Connect 34
Warning lamps 37
Cruise control 38
Gearbox lever 40
Air conditioning 41
Fluid level control 46
Emergencies 50
Fuses 50
Bulbs 51
Action in the event of a puncture 52
Changing a wheel 53
Snow chains 57
Emergency towing of the vehicle 58
How to jump start 59
Changing the windscreen wiper blades 61
Safety 63
Safe driving 63
Advice about driving 63
Correct position of the vehicle occupants 64
Pedal area 68
Seat belts 69
Why wear a seat belt 69
How to properly adjust your seat belt 72
Seat belt tensioners* 73
Airbag system 74
Brief introduction 74
Safety instructions about airbags 76
Deactivating airbags 78
Transporting children safely 80
Safety for children 80
Child seats 82
Emergencies 84
Self-help 84
Emergency equipment 84
Tyre repair 85
Changing the windscreen wiper blades 87
Towing or tow-starting 87
Fuses and bulbs 91
Fuses 91
Changing bulbs 93
Change the front bulbs 94
Change the rear bulbs 96
Changing the interior bulbs 98
Operation 101
Controls and displays 101
General instrument panel 100
Instruments and warning/control lamps 102
Dashboard 102
Using the instrument panel 116
Control and warning lamps 118
Multifunction steering wheel* 119
Opening and closing 125
Keys 125
Central locking system 127
Anti-theft alarm* 133
Rear lid 136
Controls for the windows 136
Lights and visibility 139
Lights 139
Interior lights 144
Visibility 145
Windscreen wiper and rear window wiper systems 145
Rear view mirrors 146
Seats and head restraints 148
Adjusting the seat and head restraints 148
Seat functions 149
Transport and practical equipment 153
Practical equipment 153
Luggage compartment 155
Roof carrier* 159
Air conditioning 161
Heating, ventilation and cooling 161
Heating and fresh air 164
Manual air conditioning* 166
Climatronic* 168

Table of Contents

Infotainment System 170
Introduction 170
Safety warnings 170
Overview of the unit 172
General instructions for use 174
Connectivity 179
Data transfer 179
Full Link* 179
SEAT Media Control* 187
WLAN access point* 188
Operating modes 190
Radio 190
Media 191
Navigation 198
Vehicle Menu 208
Telephone 209
Multimedia 214

Driving 217
Start and driving 217
Starting and stopping the engine 217
Braking and parking 223
Braking and stability systems 226
Manual gearbox 232
Automatic gearbox/DSG automatic gearbox* 233
Gear-change recommendation 240
Steering 241
Run-in and economical driving 242
Engine management and emission control system 245
Driving tips 247
Driver assistance systems 248
Start-Stop system* 248
Cruise control system (CCS)* 250
Speed limiter 252
Emergency braking assistance system (Front Assist)* 255
Adaptive Cruise Control ACC* 259
Blind spot detector (BSD) with parking assistance (RCTA)* 269
SEAT Drive Profile* 274
Park Assist* 276
Parking aid parking and manoeuvring (ParkPilot) 284
Parking System Plus* 286
Rear parking aid* 290
Rear Assist "Rear View Camera"* 292
Towing bracket device 295
Towing bracket device* 295
Trailer towing 300

Practical tips 307
Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 307
Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 307
Checking and refilling levels 308
Refuelling 308
Fuel 310
AdBlue® 313
Working in the engine compartment 315
Engine oil 318
Cooling system 320
Brake fluid 321
Windscreen washer reservoir 322
Vehicle battery 323
Wheels 325
Wheels and tyres 325
Spare wheel (temporary spare wheel)* 330
Winter service 331

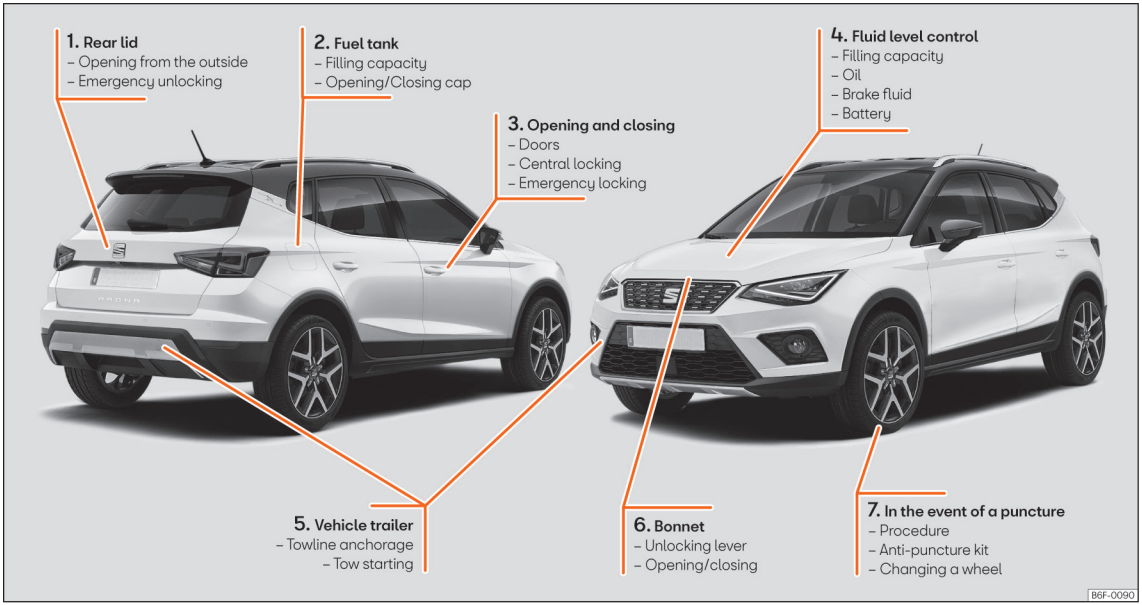
Maintenance 333
Service 333
Service intervals 333
Additional service offers 335
Warranty 336
Vehicle maintenance 336
Maintenance and cleaning 336

Information for the user 342
Information for the user 342
Event Data Recorder 342
Other important information 342
Information about the EU Directive 2014/53/EU 343

Technical data 346
Technical specifications 346
Important information 346
Information on fuel consumption 346
Trailer mode 347
Wheels 348
Engine data 349
Vehicle data 353

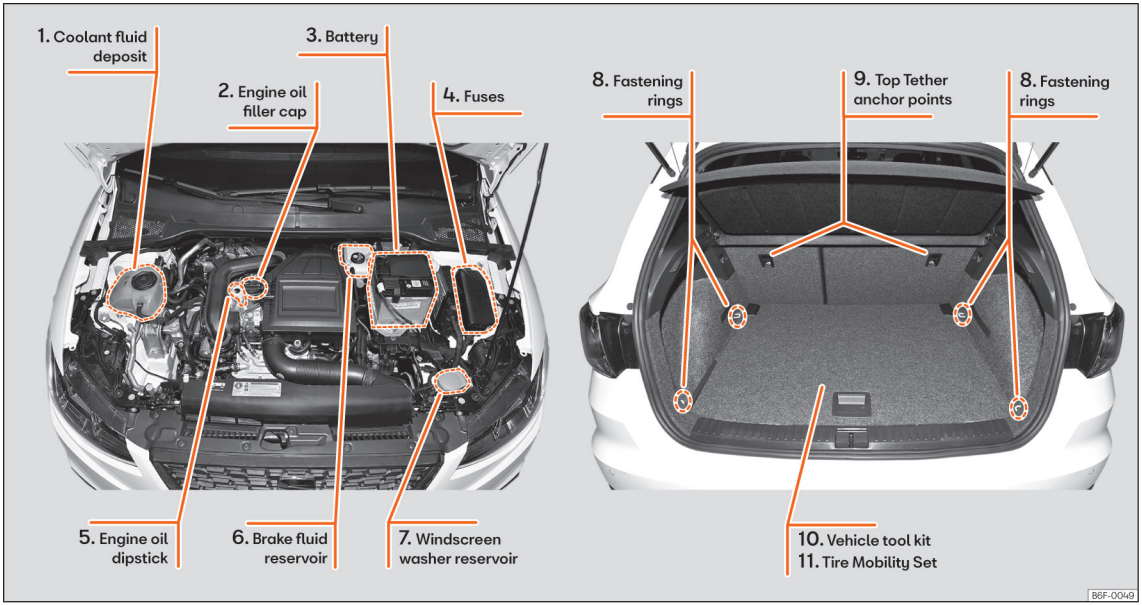
Index 355

Exterior view



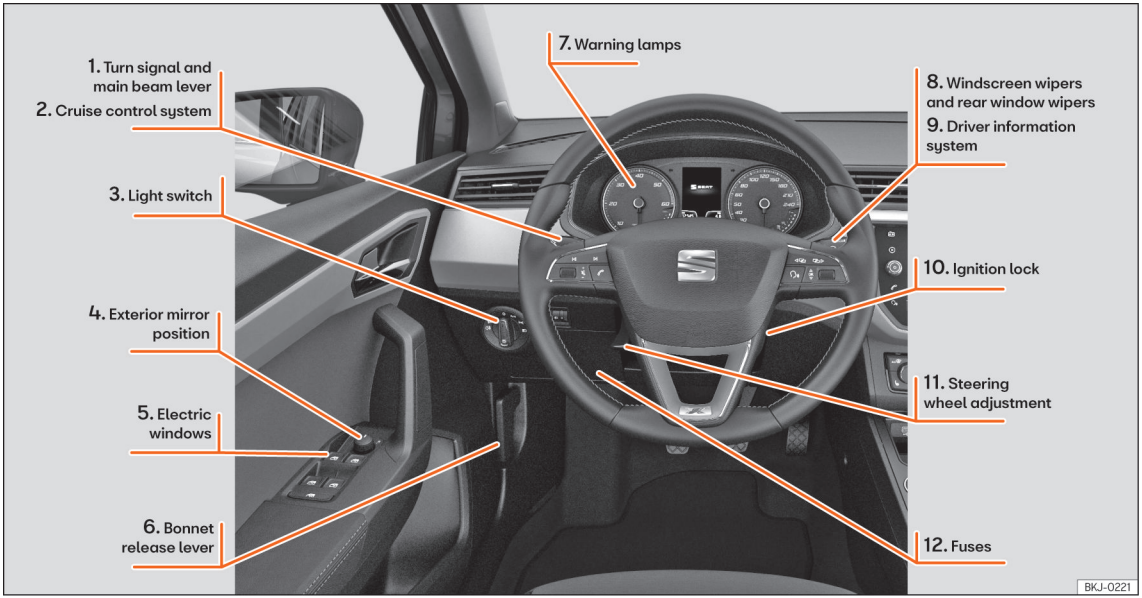
① ››› page 16
② ››› page 46
③ ››› page 15
④ ››› page 46
⑤ ››› page 58
⑥ ››› page 17
⑦ ››› page 52

Exterior view



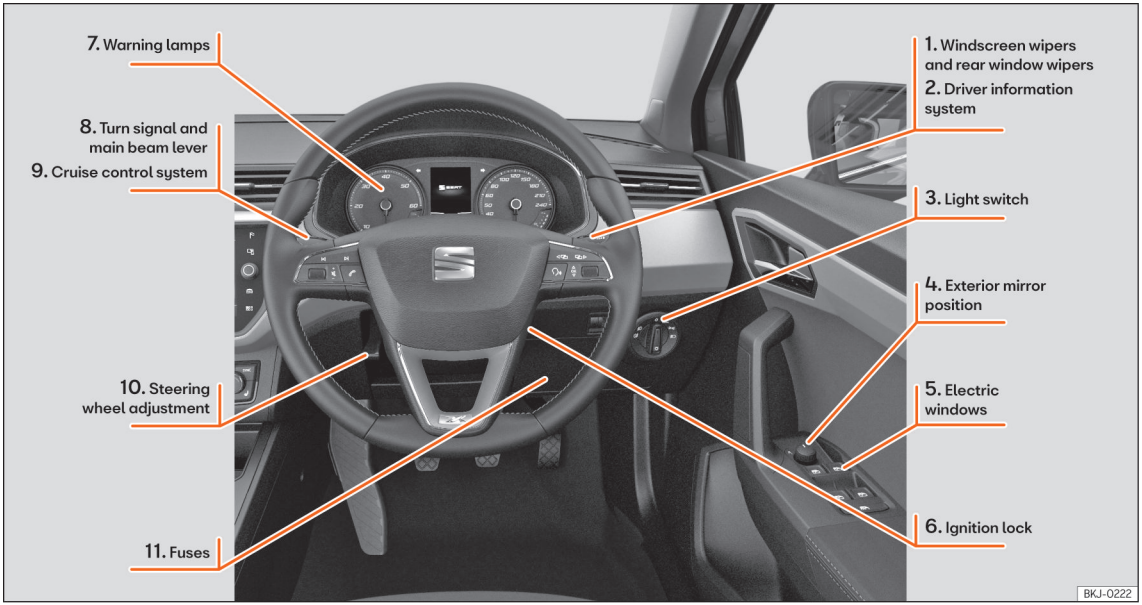
① ››› page 47
② ››› page 46
③ ››› page 49
④ ››› page 50
⑤ ››› page 46
⑥ ››› page 48
⑦ ››› page 48
⑧ ››› page 157
⑨ ››› page 30
⑩ ››› page 53
⑪ ››› page 52

Driver-side general instrument panel (left-hand drive)



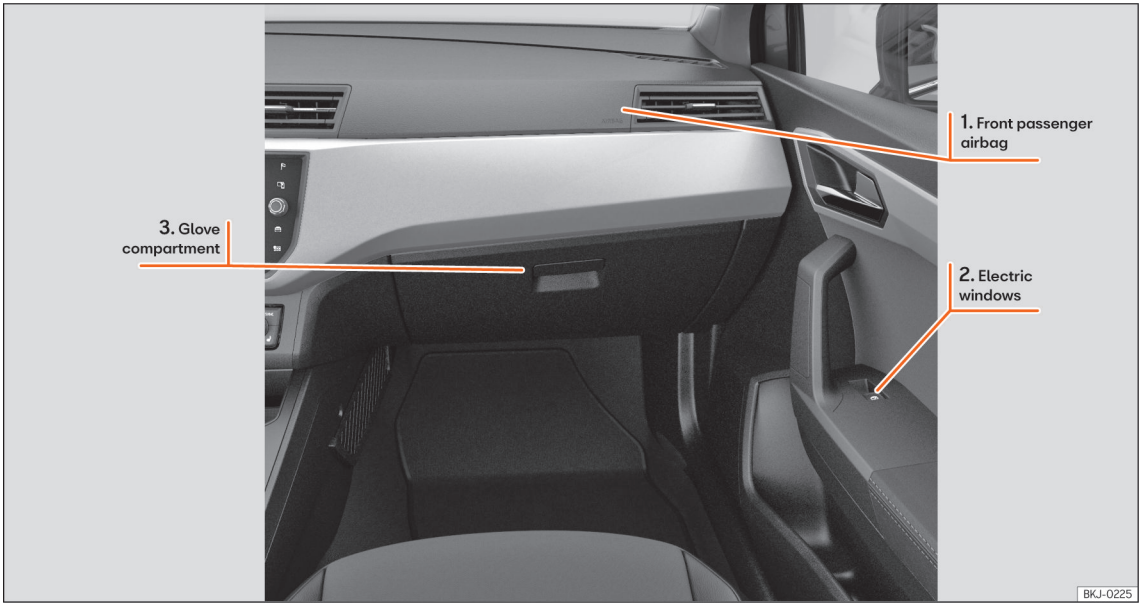
1. ››› page 32
2. ››› page 38
3. ››› page 31
4. ››› page 20
5. ››› page 18
6. ››› page 17
7. ››› page 37
8. ››› page 33
9. ››› page 108
10. ››› page 31
11. ››› page 20
12. ››› page 50

Driver-side general instrument panel (right-hand drive)



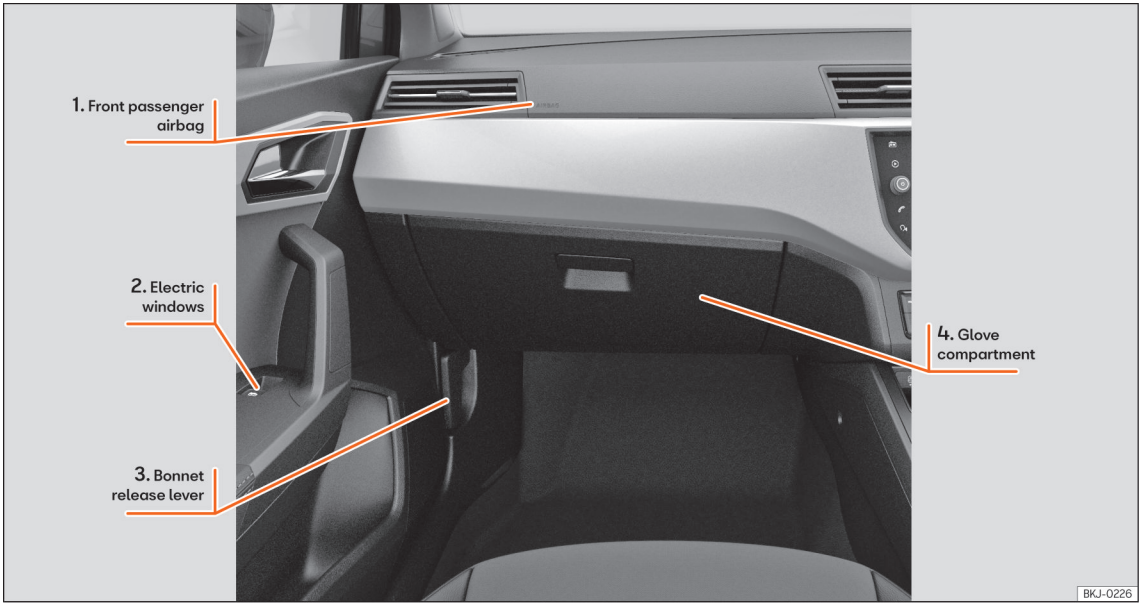
① ››› page 33
② ››› page 108
③ ››› page 31
④ ››› page 20
⑤ ››› page 18
⑥ ››› page 31
⑦ ››› page 37
⑧ ››› page 32
⑨ ››› page 38
⑩ ››› page 20
⑪ ››› page 50

Passenger-side general instrument panel (left-hand drive)



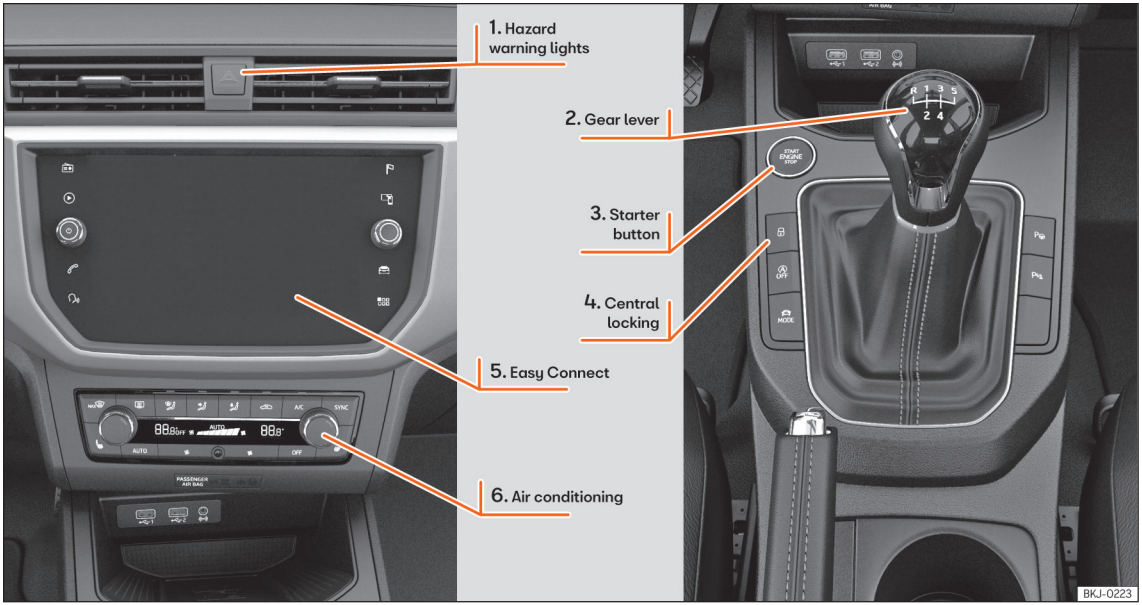
(1) ››› page 21
(2) ››› page 18
(3) ››› page 153

Passenger-side general instrument panel (right-hand drive)



(1) ››› page 21
(2) ››› page 18
(3) ››› page 17
(4) ››› page 153

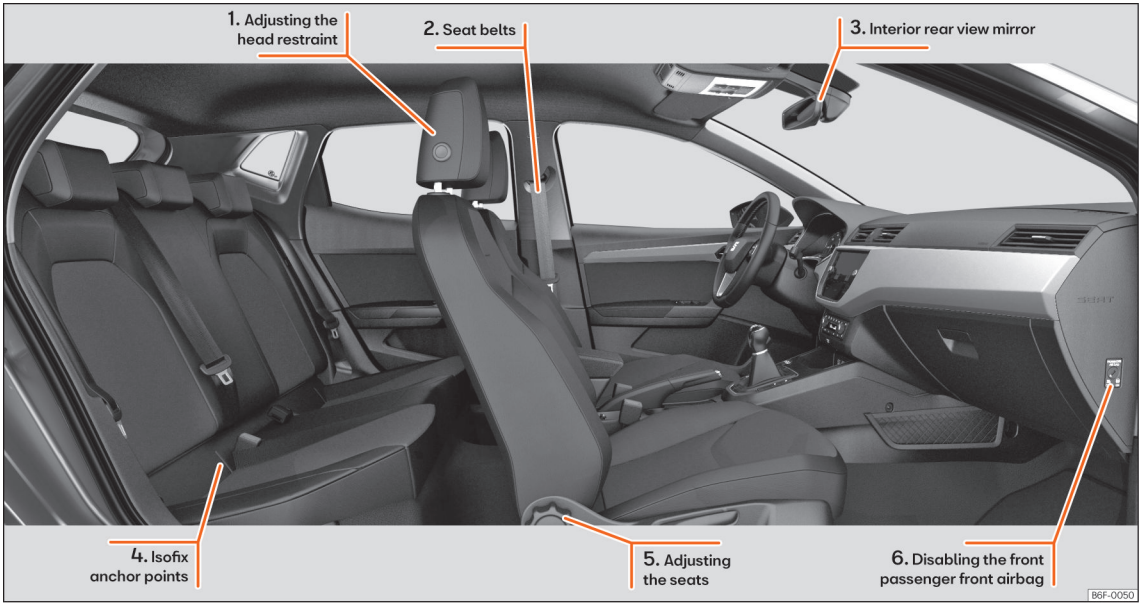
Centre console



① ››› page 32
② ››› page 40
③ ››› page 220
④ ››› page 15
⑤ ››› page 34, ››› page 170
⑥ ››› page 41

The layout in right-hand drive vehicles is symmetrical.

Interior view



① ››› page 19
② ››› page 19
③ ››› page 146
④ ››› page 27
⑤ ››› page 19
⑥ ››› page 22

How it works

Opening and closing

Related video

Fig. 3 Opening and closing

Doors

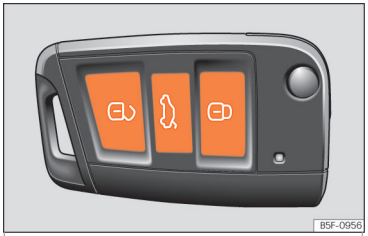


Fig. 4 Remote control key: keys.

Fig. 5 Centre console: central locking buttons.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle using the key

- Lock: press the button ››› **Fig. 4** button.
- Unlock: press the button ››› **Fig. 4** button.
- Unlock rear lid: press the button ››› **Fig. 4** until all the turn signals on the vehicle briefly light up.

Locking and unlocking with the central locking switch

- Lock: press the button ››› **Fig. 5** button. The symbol lights up yellow to indicate that it is activated. None of the doors can be opened from the outside. The doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- Unlock: Press the button again ››› **Fig. 5**. The symbol reverts to its initial colour.

››› ⚠ in Description on page 127

››› page 127

Unlocking or locking of driver door

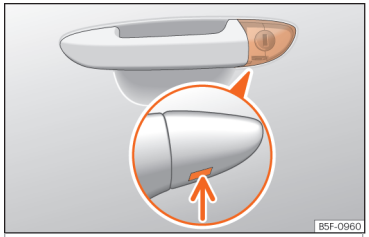


Fig. 6 Driver door lever: hidden lock cylinder.

If the central locking system should fail to operate, the driver door can still be locked and unlocked by turning the key in the lock.

As a general rule, when the driver door is locked manually all other doors are locked. When it is unlocked manually, only the driver door opens. Please observe the instructions relating to the anti-theft alarm system ››› **page 133**.

- Unfold the vehicle key blade ››› **page 125**.

»

- Insert the key shaft into the lower opening in the cover on the driver door handle ››› Fig. 6 (arrow) then remove the cover upwards.
- Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Special characteristics

- The anti-theft alarm will remain active when vehicles are unlocked. However, the alarm will not be triggered ››› page 133.
- After the driver door is opened, you have 15 seconds to switch on the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the alarm is triggered.
- Switch the ignition on. The electronic immobilizer recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

Note

The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is locked manually using the key shaft ››› page 133.

Emergency locking of doors without door cylinder

Fig. 7 Locking the door manually.

If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, doors with no lock cylinder will have to be locked separately.

A mechanical locking device (only visible when the door is open) is provided on the front passenger door.

- Pull the cap out of the opening.
- Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it to the right as far as it will go (if the door is on the right side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. Pull the interior door handle once to unlock and open the door.

Rear lid

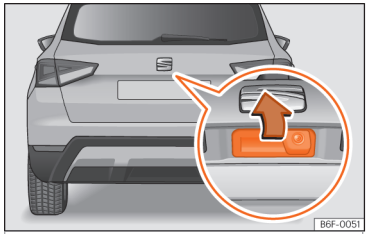


Fig. 8 Rear lid: handle

The rear lid opening system operates electrically*. It is activated by exerting slight pressure on the handle ››› Fig. 8.

This system may or may not be operative, depending on the situation of the vehicle.

If the rear lid is locked then it cannot be opened, however if it is unlocked then the opening system is operative and the rear lid may be opened.

To lock/unlock, press the button or the button ››› Fig. 4 on the remote control key.

A warning appears on the instrument panel display if the rear lid is open or not properly closed.* An audible warning is also given if the boot lid is opened while the vehicle is moving faster than 6 km/h (4 mph)*.

• Open the rear lid: exert slight pressure on the handle ››› Fig. 8. The rear lid opens automatically.

• Close the rear lid: hold it by one of the handles on the interior lining and close it by pushing gently.

››› ⚠ in Opening and closing on page 136

SOS ››› page 17

Unlocking the rear lid manually

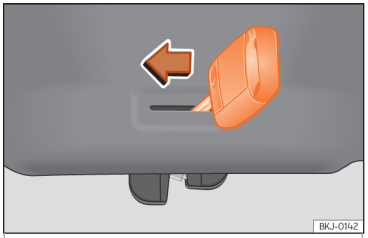


Fig. 9 Unlocking the rear lid manually.

This allows the vehicle to be opened if the central locking does not work (for example, if the battery is flat).

There is a groove in the luggage compartment allowing access to the emergency opening mechanism.

Opening the rear lid from inside the luggage compartment

• Insert the key in the groove and unlock the locking system, turning the key from right to left, as shown by the arrow ››› Fig. 9.

Related video

Fig. 10 Bonnet

Bonnet

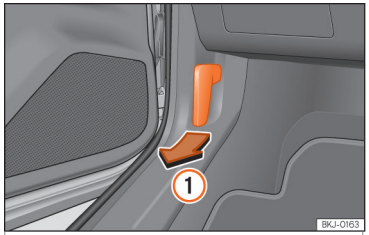


Fig. 11 Release lever in the driver's footwell area.

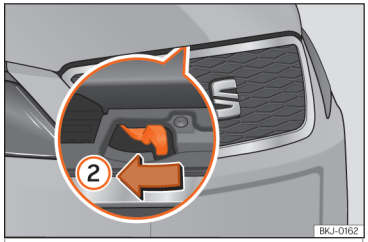


Fig. 12 Lever under the bonnet.

Opening the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are in place against the windscreen.

»

- Open the door and pull the lever under the dashboard ››› Fig. 11 ①.
- To lift the bonnet, press towards the left on the lever located under the bonnet, in the centre ››› Fig. 12 ②. The arrester hooks are released.
- Release the bonnet stay and secure it in the fixture designed for this in the bonnet.

Close the bonnet

- Slightly lift the bonnet.
- Release the bonnet stay and replace it in its support.
- At a height of approximately 30 cm let it fall so it locks.

If the bonnet does not close, do not press downwards. Open it again and let it fall as mentioned above.

››› ⚠ in Safety notes for work in the engine compartment on page 316

››› page 315

Controls for the windows

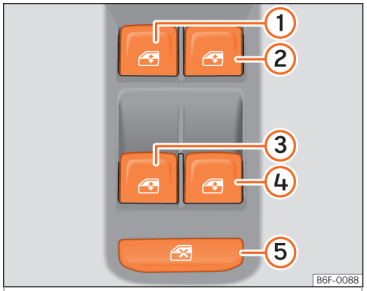


Fig. 13 Detail of the driver door: controls for the windows.

- Open the window: press the button.
- Close the window: pull on the button.

Buttons on the driver door

① Window on the front left door
② Window on the front right door
③ Window on the rear left door
④ Window on the rear right door
⑤ Safety switch for deactivating the electric window buttons in the rear doors.

››› ⚠ in Opening and closing the electric windows on page 137

››› page 136

Before driving

Related video

Fig. 14 Vehicle interior

Manually adjusting the front seats

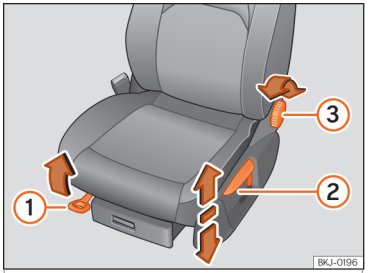


Fig. 15 Front seats: manual seat adjustment.

① Forwards/backwards: pull the lever and move the seat.

② Raising/lowering: pull/push the lever.

③ Tilting the backrest: turn the hand wheel.

››› ⚠ in Adjusting the front seats on page 148

Adjusting the head restraints

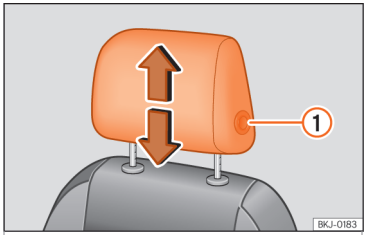


Fig. 16 Front seat: adjusting the head restraint.

• To raise or lower the head restraint, press the side button ① and move it upwards or downwards until it engages in the desired position.

››› ⚠ in Adjusting the front head restraints on page 148

››› page 67, ››› page 148

Adjustment of the seat belt

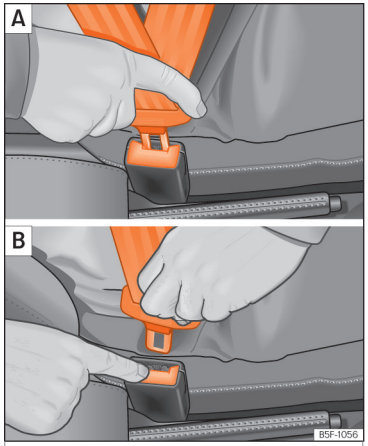


Fig. 17 Positioning and removing the seat belt buckle. »

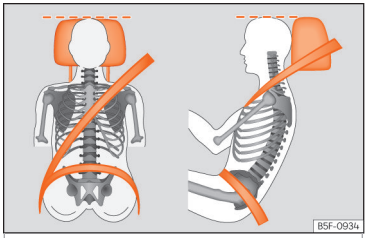


Fig. 18 Correct seat belt and head restraint positions, viewed from front and the side.

To adjust the seat belt around your shoulders, adjust the height of the seats.

The shoulder part of the seat belt should be well centred over it, never over the neck. The seat belt lies flat and fits comfortably on the upper part of the body.

The lap part of the seat belt lies across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt lies flat and fits comfortably on the pelvis.

››› page 70

››› page 72

Seat belt tensioners

During a collision, the seat belts on the front seats are retracted automatically.

The tensioner can be triggered only once.

››› ⚠ in Maintenance and disposal of belt tensioners on page 74

››› page 73

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

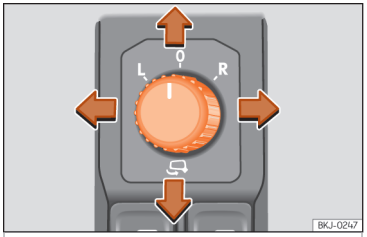


Fig. 19 Detail of the driver door: control for the exterior mirror.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors: Turn the knob to the corresponding position:

L/R Turning the knob to the desired position, adjust the mirrors on the driver side (L, left) and the passenger side (R, right) to the direction desired.

Folding in mirrors.

››› ⚠ in Electric exterior mirrors* on page 147

››› page 147

Adjusting the steering wheel

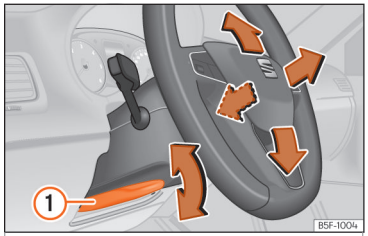


Fig. 20 Lever in the lower left side of the steering column.

- Adjusting the position of the steering wheel: pull the ››› Fig. 20 ① lever down, move the steering wheel to the desired position and lift the lever back up until it locks.

››› ⚠ in Adjusting the steering wheel position on page 65

Airbags

Related video

Fig. 21 Vehicle interior

Front airbags

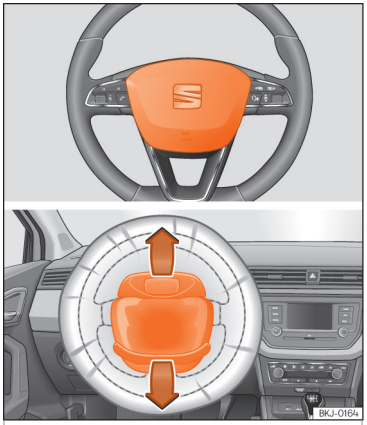


Fig. 22 Driver airbag located in steering wheel.

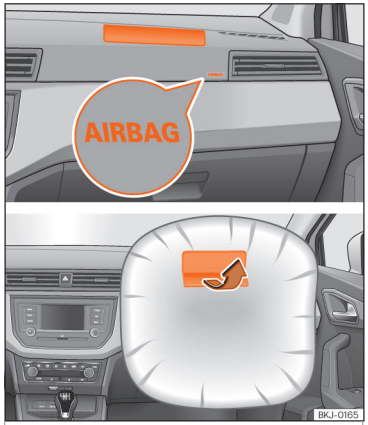


Fig. 23 Front passenger airbag located in dash panel.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ››› Fig. 22 and the airbag for the front passenger is located in the dash panel ››› Fig. 23. Airbags are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

When the driver and front passenger airbags are deployed, the covers remain attached to the steering wheel and dashboard, respectively ››› Fig. 22 ››› Fig. 23.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the driver and the front passenger additional protection for the head »

and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. After the collision, the airbag deflates sufficiently to allow visibility.

››› page 76

Deactivating the front passenger front airbag*

Fig. 24 Front passenger front airbag switch.

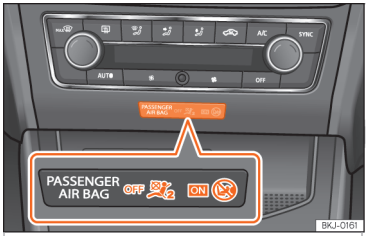


Fig. 25 Centre of the instrument panel: control lamp for deactivated front passenger airbag in centre console.

To deactivate the front passenger front airbag:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Insert the key into the slot of the switch for deactivating the front passenger airbag ››› Fig. 24. About 3/4 of the key should enter; this is as far as it will go.
- Turn the key gently to the **OFF** position. If you have difficulty, ensure that you have inserted the key as far as it will go.
- Close the front passenger door.
- Check, with the ignition switched on, that the **OFF** control lamp remains lit where it says **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre of the dash panel ››› Fig. 25.

››› ⚠ in Activation and deactivation of front passenger airbag* on page 79

››› page 78

Side airbags*

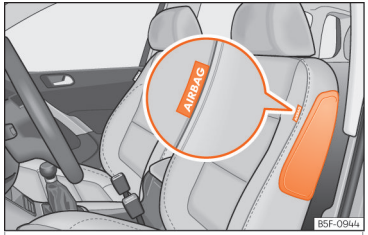


Fig. 26 Side airbag in driver's seat.

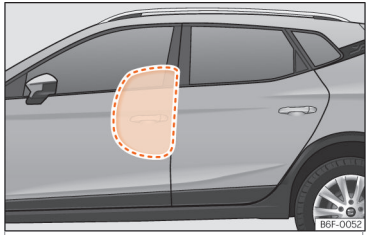


Fig. 27 Illustration of completely inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle.

The side airbags are located in the driver's seat and front passenger seat backrests ››› Fig. 26. The locations are identified by the text “AIRBAG” in the upper region of the backrests.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision.

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the front and rear outer seat belts also hold the passengers in the event of a side collision; this is how these airbags provide maximum protection.

››› ⚠ in Side airbags* on page 77

Head-protection airbags*

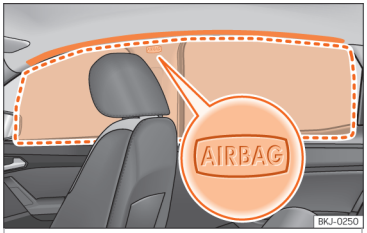


Fig. 28 Location and deployment area of the head-protection airbag.

There is a head airbag on each side of the interior above the doors ››› Fig. 28. Airbags are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The area framed in red is covered by the head-protection airbag when it is deployed ››› Fig. 28 (deployment area). Therefore, objects should never be placed or mounted in this area ››› ⚠ in Head-protection airbags* on page 78.

In the event of a side collision the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle.

The head-protection airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers in the front and rear side seats facing the impact.

››› ⚠ in Head-protection airbags* on page 78

Child seats

Related video

Fig. 29 Vehicle interior

Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag

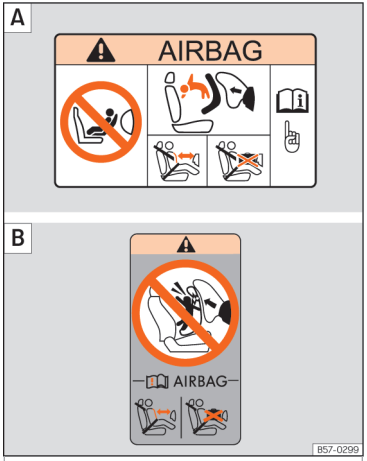


Fig. 30 Airbag adhesives - version 1: on the passenger-side sun blind A and on the rear frame of the front passenger's door B.

Fig. 31 Airbag adhesives - version 2: on the passenger-side sun blind A and on the rear frame of the front passenger's door B.

A sticker with important information about the passenger airbag is located on the passenger's sun visor and/or on the passenger side door frame.

››› ⚠ in Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag on page 81

››› page 80

Securing child seats

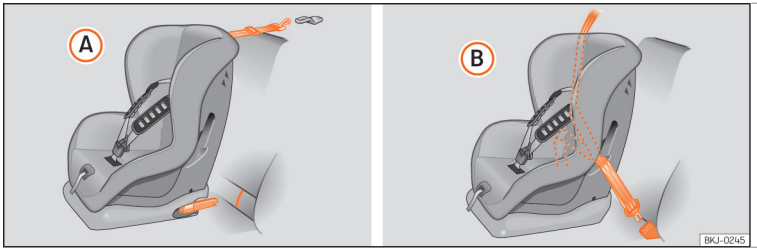


Fig. 32 On rear seats: possible assemblies of children seats.

Figure ››› **Fig. 32** Ⓐ shows the basic child restraint system mounting using lower retaining rings and the upper retaining strap. Figure ››› **Fig. 32** Ⓑ shows the child restraint system mounting using the vehicle seat belt.

The seat belt may be used to secure **universal** type child seats to the vehicle seats marked with a **U** in the table below.

- *In the passenger seat without height regulation*: the passenger seat must be in its rearmost position[1)].
- *In the passenger seat with height regulation*: the passenger seat must be in its rearmost and highest position[1)].

To correctly use a child seat in the back, the front backrest must be adjusted so that there is no contact with the child seat in the back in the case that it goes opposite to the direction of the car. In the case of front facing restraint systems, the front backrest must be adjusted so that there is no contact with the child's feet.

To adjust the passenger seat to accommodate a child's seat and get the seat belt in a perfect position, adjust the passenger backrest as far forward as possible[1)].

If a semi-universal type chair is to be installed, in which the method of attachment to the car is through the seat belt and support bracket, it should never be installed in the central rear seat as the ground clearance is lower than in other places and the support bracket will not allow the seat to remain sufficiently stable.

The systems include the child restraint system mounting with an upper retaining strap (Top Tether) and lower anchoring points on the seat. »

[1)] Compliance with current national legislation and the manufacturer's instructions is required when using or installing child seats.

Weight group	Seating position			
	Front passenger seat[a]		Rear side seat	Rear central seat[b]
	airbag on	airbag off		
Group 0 to 10 kg	X	U[c]	U	U
Group 0+ to 13 kg	X	U[c]	U	U
Group I 9 to 18 kg	X	U[c]	U	U
Group II 15 to 25 kg	X	UF[c]	UF	UF
Group III 22 to 36 kg	X	UF[c]	UF	UF

X: It is not compatible to install chairs in this configuration.
U: Suitable for universal restraint systems for use in this weight group.
UF: Acceptable for front-facing universal-category child restraint systems approved for this mass group.

[a] Compliance with current national legislation and the manufacturer's instructions is required when using or installing child seats.

[b] For semi-universal chairs where the securing system is the car safety belt and the support bracket, do not use them in the centre rear seat.

[c] Seats **without** height adjustment should be placed in their rearmost position. Seats **with** height adjustment should be placed in their rearmost and highest position.

››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 82

Securing child seats with the ISOFIX/iSize and Top Tether system*

Fig. 33 ISOFIX/iSize securing rings.

Fig. 34 Position of the Top Tether rings on the back of the rear seat.

Child seats can be secured quickly, easily and safely on the rear outer seats with the "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* system.

Two "ISOFIX" retaining rings are fitted on each rear side seat. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and, in others, they are secured to the rear floor. The "ISOFIX" rings are located between the rear side seat backrest and the seat cushioning ››› Fig. 33. The Top Tether* rings are located on the rear part of the backrests of the rear seats (behind the seat backrest or in the boot) ››› Fig. 34.

To understand the compatibility of the "ISOFIX" systems in the vehicle, consult the table below.

The body weight permitted and information regarding sizes **A** to **F** is indicated on the label on child seats with "**universal**" or "**semi-universal**" certification.

Weight group	Size class	Electrical equipment	Vehicle Isofix positions			
			Front passenger seat		Rear side seat	Rear central seat
			airbag on	airbag off		
Baby carrier	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
Group 0 to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X

»

Weight group	Size class	Electrical equipment	Vehicle Isofix positions			
			Front passenger seat		Rear side seat	Rear central seat
			airbag on	airbag off		
Group 0+ to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
Group I 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	X	IUF/IL	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	X	IUF/IL	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	X	IUF/IL	X
Group II 15 to 25 kg	---	---			---	---
Group III 22 to 36 kg	---	---			---	---

IUF: Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX universal child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.
IL: It is suitable for certain ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) that can be for the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories. Take the child seat manufacturer's vehicle list into account.
X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems for this weight group or size class.

›› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 82

Securing child seats with the “ISOFIX/i-Size”

Fig. 35 ISOFIX/iSize securing rings.

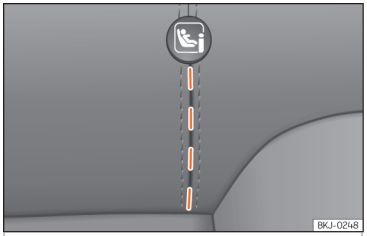


Fig. 36 Rear seat: cut-out grooves.

You are obliged to follow the seat manufacturer's instructions.

- Open the cut-out section behind the marked grooves to access the retaining rings ››› Fig. 36.
- Press the child seat onto the “ISOFIX/iSize” retaining rings until the child seat is heard to engage securely. If the child seat is equipped with Top Tether* anchor points, secure it to the correspondent ring ››› Fig. 38. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is properly anchored.

Child seats with the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* attachment system are available from Technical Services.

	Vehicle i-Size positions			
	Front passenger seat		Rear side seat	Rear central seat
	airbag on	airbag off		
Child restraint system approved under ECE R129	X	X	i-U	X

i-U: Valid position for front-facing and rear-facing child restraint systems approved under ECE R129.
X: Invalid position for child restraint systems approved under ECE R129.

Securing child seats with the Top Tether* retaining straps

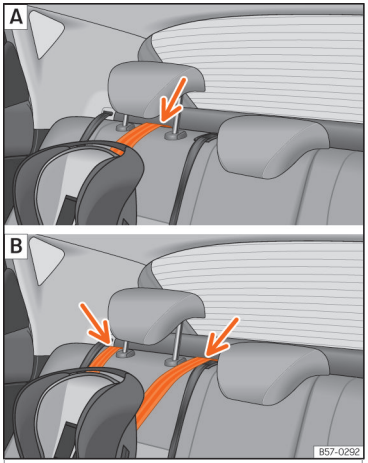


Fig. 37 Retainer strap: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

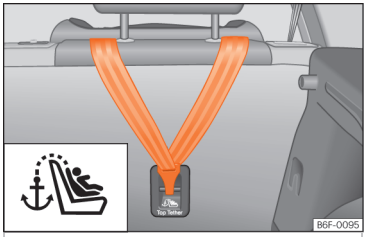


Fig. 38 Rear part of the rear seats: securing rings for the Top Tether strap.

Child seats with the Top Tether system come with a strap for securing the seat to the vehicle anchor point, located at the back of the rear seat backrest and provide greater restraint.

The objective of this strap is to reduce forward movements of the child seat in a crash, to reduce the risk of injuries to the head from hitting the inside of the vehicle.

Using the Top Tether in rear-facing mounted seats

Currently, there are very few rear-facing child safety seats that have Top Tether. Please carefully read and follow the seat manufacturer instructions to learn the proper way to install the Top Tether strap.

Securing the retainer strap

- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to deploy the child seat Top Tether retaining strap.
- Place the belt under the head restraint of the back seat ››› **Fig. 37** (depending on the instructions of the chair itself, lift or remove the head restraint if necessary).
- Slide the strap and secure it properly with the anchorage of the backrest ››› **Fig. 38**.
- Firmly tighten the strap following the manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the retaining strap

- Loosen the strap following the manufacturer's instructions.
- Push the lock and release it from the anchoring support.

››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 82

Starting the vehicle

Ignition lock

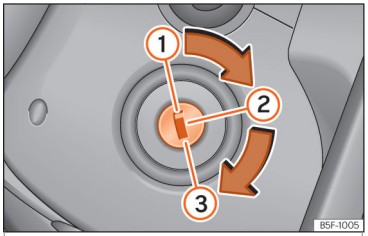


Fig. 39 Ignition key positions.

Turn on the ignition: place the key in the ignition and start the engine.

Locking and unlocking the steering wheel

- Lock the steering wheel: remove the key from the ignition and turn the wheel until it locks. In vehicles with automatic transmission, in order to remove the key, move the gear shift to the **P** position. If necessary, press the gear shift blocking key and release it.
- Unlock the steering wheel: put the key into the ignition and turn it at the same time as the steering wheel in the direction indicated by the arrow. If it is not possible to turn the steering wheel, it may be because it is locked.

Turning on/switching off the ignition, glow plugs reheating

- Turn on the ignition: turn the key to the ② position.
- Turn off the ignition: turn the key to the ① position.
- Diesel vehicles ϖ: the glow plugs reheat when the ignition is switched on.

Starting the engine

- Manual transmission: press the clutch pedal all the way down and move the gearbox lever into neutral.
- Automatic transmission: press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the **P** position or into **N**.
- Turn the key to the ③ position. The key automatically returns to the ② position. Do not press the accelerator.

Start-Stop system*

When you stop and release the clutch pedal, the Start-Stop system* turns off the engine. The ignition remains switched on.

››› ⚠ in Ignition key positions on page 217

››› page 217

Lights and visibility

Related video

Fig. 40 Lights and visibility

Light switch

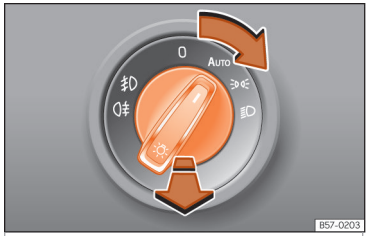


Fig. 41 Instrument console: light panel.

- Turn the switch to the required position ››› Fig. 41.

Symbol	Ignition switched off	Ignition is switched on
0	Fog lights, dipped beam and side lights off.	Light off or daytime driving light on.
AUTO	The “Coming home” and “Leaving home” guide lights may be switched on.	Automatic control of dipped beam and daytime running light.
	Side light on.	Daylight running lights switched on.
	Dipped beam headlight off	Dipped beam switched on.

Fog lights: pull the switch to the first position, from positions **AUTO**, or .

Rear fog light: pull the switch completely from positions **AUTO**, or .

Turn on fog lights: push the switch or turn it to the **0** position.

››› page 139

Turn signal and main beam lever

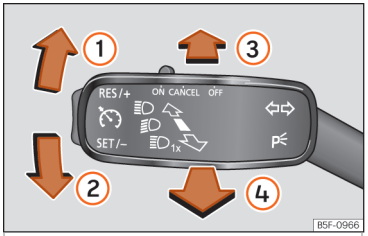


Fig. 42 Turn signal and main beam lever.

More the lever to the required position:

1. Right turn light: right-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
2. Left turn light: left-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
3. Main beam on: control lamp lit up on the instrument panel.
4. Light flash: on with the lever pushed. Control lamp lit up.

Lever all the way down to switch it off.

››› ⚠ in Turn signal and main beam lever on page 141

››› page 140

Hazard warning lights

Fig. 43 Dashboard: switch for hazard warning lights.

Switched on, for example:

- When approaching a traffic jam
- In an emergency
- The vehicle has broken down
- When towing or being towed

››› ⚠ in Hazard warning lights ⚠ on page 143

››› page 143

Interior lights

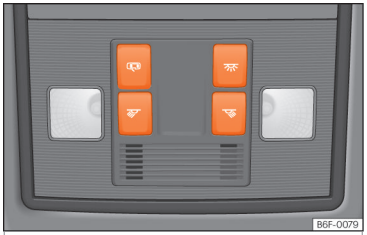


Fig. 44 Detail of headliner: front interior lighting.

Knob	Function
	Turning the interior lights on or off.
	Activating or deactivating the automatic door contact lights. The interior lights come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the key is removed from the ignition. The light goes off a few seconds after all the doors are closed, the vehicle is locked or the ignition is switched on.
/	Turning the reading light on and off

The light controls may vary depending on the vehicle version.

››› page 144

Windscreen wipers and window wiper blade

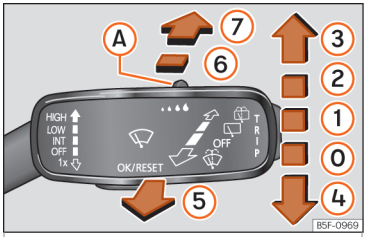


Fig. 45 Operating the windscreen wiper and rear wiper.

More the lever to the required position:		
0	OFF	Windscreen wipers off.
1	▪▪▪▪	Windscreen wipers interval wipe. Using the control ››› Fig. 45 A adjust the interval (vehicles without rain sensor), or the sensitivity of the rain sensor.
2	LOW	Slow wipe.
3	HIGH	Continuous wipe.
4	1x	Short wipe. Brief press, short clean.
5		Automatic wipe. The windscreen washer function is activated by pushing the lever forwards, and simultaneously the windscreen wipers start.
6		Interval wipe for rear window. The wiper will wipe the window approximately every six seconds.
7		The rear window wash function is activated by pressing the lever, and the rear wiper starts simultaneously.

››› ⚠ in Windscreen wiper and window wiper on page 145

››› page 145

SOS ››› page 61

Easy Connect

Vehicle menu settings

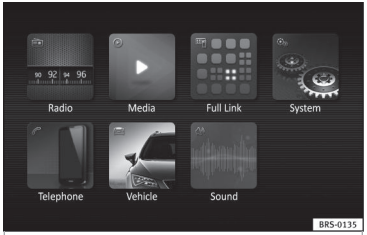


Fig. 46 Easy Connect: Main menu.

Fig. 47 Easy Connect: CAR menu.

The actual number of menus available and the name of the various options will depend on the vehicle's electronics and equipment.

- Switch the ignition on.
- If the Infotainment System is off, switch it on.
- Press the Infotainment button MENU / ▦ and then the **Vehicle** function button ››› Fig. 46,

or, press the Infotainment button CAR / 🚗 to go to the **Vehicle** menu ››› Fig. 47.

- Press the **SETTINGS** function button to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
- To select a function in the menu, press the desired button.

When the function button check box is activated ☑, the function is active.

Pressing the menu button ⮌ will always take you to the last menu used.

Any changes made using the settings menus are automatically saved on closing those menus.

Menu	Submenu	Possible setting	Description
ESC system	–	Activation of the Electronic Stability Programme (ESC)	››› page 226
Tyres	Tyre monitor system	Tyre pressure storing (Calibration)	››› page 329
	Winter tyres	Activation and deactivation of the speed warning. Setting the speed warning value	››› page 331
Lights	Light assist	Motorway function, turning-on time, automatic lights when raining, one-touch signalling.	››› page 139
	Vehicle interior lighting	Brightness of instrument panel and controls	››› page 144
	"Coming home/Leaving home" function	Switch-on time of the "Coming home" and "Leaving home" functions	››› page 141
Driver assistance	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	Activation/deactivation: default distance level, driving profiles.	››› page 259
	Front Assist (emergency braking assistance system)	Activation/deactivation: Front Assist, advance warning, distance warning display	››› page 255
	Fatigue detection	Activation/deactivation	››› page 110
Parking and manoeuvring	Parking and manoeuvring settings	Automatically activate front volume, front sound treble, rear volume, rear sound treble	››› page 291
Ambient lighting	–	Background lighting, switch-off, colour	››› page 144
Mirrors and windscreen wipers	Rear view mirrors	Activate/deactivate folding after parking	››› page 147
	Windscreen wipers	Activate and deactivate automatic wipe in case of rain, wipe when reversing	››› page 33
Opening and closing	Electric windows control	Convenience open function, all, only driver	››› page 138
	Central locking	Unlocking doors, automatic lock when driving, interior monitoring	››› page 127
Instrument panel	–	Current consumption, average consumption, convenience consumers, ECO Advice, travelling time, distance travelled, average speed, digital speed display, speed warning, oil temperature, reset data "when setting off", reset data for "total calculation"	››› page 108

Menu	Submenu	Possible setting	Description
Date and time	–	Time source, time, time zone, time format, date, date format	–
Units	–	Distance, speed, temperature, volume, fuel consumption, pressure	–
Service	–	Chassis number, date of next SEAT service inspection, date of next oil change service	››› page 115
Factory settings	All	Restore all settings	–
	Individual	Restore factory settings for lights, driver assistance, parking and manoeuvring	

⚠ WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury. Operating the Easy Connect system while driving could distract you from traffic.

Warning lamps

Control and warning lamps

Fig. 48 Related video: Dash panel

Red warning lamps

	Notification central lamp: additional information on the instrument panel display
	Parking brake on ››› page 224.
	Fault in the brake system ››› page 224.
	Fault in the steering system ››› page 242.
	Driver or passenger has not fastened seat belt ››› page 69.
	Press the foot brake ››› page 260.

Yellow warning lamps

	Notification central lamp: additional information on the instrument panel display
	Front brake pads worn ››› page 224.
	Fault in ESC or disconnection caused by the system; **OR** ESC or ASR in operation ››› page 226.
	Fault in ASR or disconnection caused by the system; **OR** ASR in operation ››› page 226.
	ASR manually deactivated; **OR** ESC in Sport mode ››› page 226.
	Fault in the ABS ››› page 226.
	Rear fog light switched on ››› page 139.
	Fault in the emission control system ››› page 245.
	Pre-heating of the diesel engine; **OR** fault in the management of the diesel engine ››› page 245.
EPC	Fault in the petrol engine management ››› page 245.
	Particulate filter blocked ››› page 245.
	Fault in the steering system ››› page 242.
	Tyre monitor system ››› page 329.
	Fuel tank almost empty ››› page 113.
	Fault in airbag system and seat belt tensioners ››› page 79.
OFF	Front passenger front airbag is disabled ››› page 79.
ON	The front passenger front airbag is activated ››› page 79.
	Fault in the lighting of the vehicle ››› page 139.
	Low engine oil level ››› page 318.
	Fault in the gearbox ››› page 240.

Other warning lamps

	Turn lights or emergency lights on ››› page 139.
	Trailer turn signals ››› page 139.
	Press the foot brake ››› page 233.
	Speed regulator (GRA) ››› page 250; **OR** speed limiter ››› page 252; **OR** adaptive cruise control (ACC) ››› page 259.
CNG	Natural gas operating mode ››› page 114.
	Main beam on or flasher on ››› page 139.
	Door(s), rear lid or bonnet open or not properly closed ››› page 106.
	Engine cooling fluid ››› page 114.
	Engine oil pressure ››› page 318.
	Fault in the battery ››› page 324.
SAFE	Electronic immobiliser active ››› page 219.
	Service interval display ››› page 115.
	Mobile telephone is connected via Bluetooth® ››› page 209.

»

	Mobile telephone battery charge status ››› page 209.
	Risk of freezing ››› page 106.
Ⓐ	Start-Stop system activated ››› page 248.
	Start-Stop system unavailable ››› page 248.
eco	Low consumption driving status ››› page 107.
	››› ⚠ in Warning symbols on page 118
	››› page 118

Cruise control

Operating the cruise control system (CCS)*

Fig. 49 Related video: Dash panel

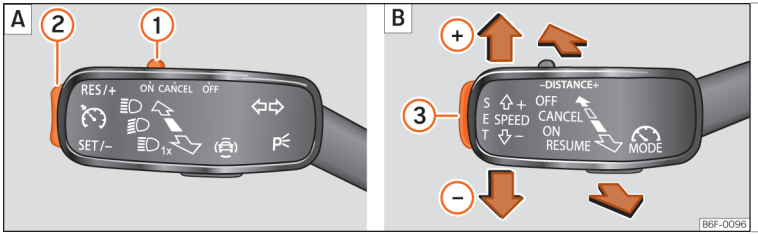


Fig. 50 On the left of the steering column: A controller and buttons to operate the cruise control system; B third lever to operate the cruise control system.

Function	Position of the turn signal lever ››› Fig. 50 A or the third lever ››› Fig. 50 B	Effect
Switching on the cruise control system	Move controller (1) to the **ON** position on the turn signal lever or move the third lever forward.	The system switches on. The last set speed of the cruise control is stored. It does not take effect yet.
Switching on the cruise control system	Press the button (2) on the turn signal lever or button **SET** (3) on the third lever.	The current speed is stored and the cruise control is activated.
Temporarily switching off the cruise control	Move controller (1) of the turn signal lever to the **CANCEL** position or move the third lever into pressure point **CANCEL**.	The limiter is switched off temporarily. The speed will be stored.
Switching on the cruise control system again	Press the button (2) on the turn signal lever or move the third lever into the pressure point **RESUME**.	The set speed control is activated.
Increasing the set speed of the cruise control	Briefly press the button (2) on the turn signal lever in the area **RES/+** or press **SET** (3) on the third lever to increase the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and set it.	The speed is changed to the set value.
	Press **SPEED+** on the third lever to increase the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and set it.	
	Hold down the button (2) on the turn signal lever in the **RES/+** area or hold down **SPEED+** to increase continuously in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and set it.	
Reducing the set speed of the cruise control	Briefly press the button (2) on the turn signal lever in the **SET/–** area or move the third lever into position **RESUME** to reduce the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and set it.	The speed is changed to the set value.
	Press **SPEED–** on the third lever to reduce the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and set it.	
	Hold down the button (2) on the turn signal lever in the **SET/–** area or hold down **SPEED–** to continuously decrease the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph), then set it.	
Switching off the cruise control system	Move controller (1) of the turn signal lever into position **OFF** or the third lever into position **OFF**.	The system switches off.

»

››› ⚠ in Cruise control operation on page 251

››› page 250

Gearbox lever

Manual gearbox

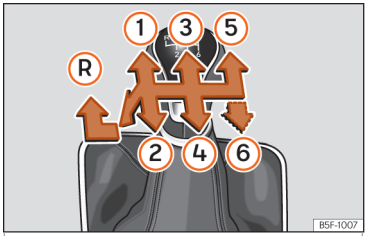


Fig. 51 Gear shift pattern of a 5 or 6-speed manual gearbox.

The position of the gears is indicated on the gearbox lever ››› Fig. 51.

- Press the clutch pedal and keep your foot right down.
- Move the gearbox lever to the required position.
- Release the clutch.

Selecting reverse gear

- Press the clutch pedal and keep your foot right down.
- With the gearbox lever in neutral, push it downwards, move it to the left as far as it will go and then forwards to select reverse ››› Fig. 51 (R).
- Release the clutch.

››› ⚠ in Driving with a manual gearbox on page 232

››› page 232

Automatic gearbox*

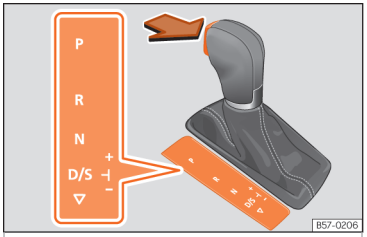


Fig. 52 Automatic transmission: selector lever positions.

P Parking lock

R Reverse gear

N Neutral (idling)

D/S Drive (forward)

+/– Tiptronic mode: pull the lever forwards (+) to go up a gear or backwards (–) to go down a gear.

››› ⚠ in Selector lever positions on page 234

››› page 233

SOS ››› page 40

Manual release of the selector lever

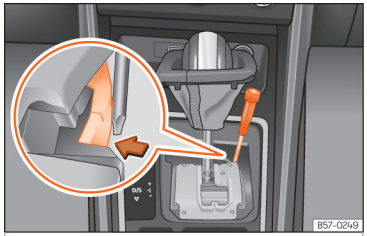


Fig. 53 Selector lever: manual release from position P.

Should the power supply be interrupted, there is a manual unlocking device located

under the console of the selector lever, on the right. Releasing the selector lever requires a certain degree of practical skill.

- Unlock: use the flat part of a screwdriver blade.

Removing the cover from the selector lever

- Apply the handbrake (P) ››› ⚠ to ensure that the car does not move.
- Carefully pull the corners of the selector lever boot and twist it upwards above the lever handle.

Releasing the selector lever

- Using a screwdriver, press and hold the yellow unlocking tab sideways ››› Fig. 53.
- Press the interlock button on the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.
- After carrying out the manual release, attach the selector lever boot on the gearbox console again.

If the power supply should ever fail (e.g. discharged battery) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever must first be moved to position **N**, after operating the manual release mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

The selector lever may be moved out of position P only when the handbrake is firmly applied. If this does not work, secure the vehicle with the brake pedal. On a slope the vehicle could otherwise start to move inadvertently after shifting the selector lever out of position P - accident risk!

Air conditioning

Related video

Fig. 54 Air conditioning

How does Climatronic* work?

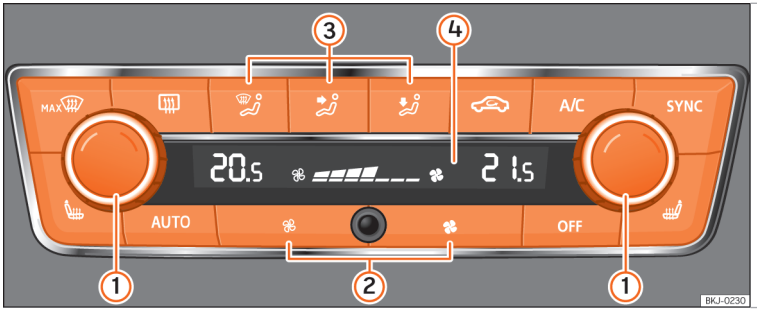


Fig. 55 In the centre console: Climatronic control panel.

To switch a specific function on, press the appropriate button. Press the button again to switch off the function.

The LED on each control lights up to indicate that the respective function of a control has been switched on.

① Temperature	The left and right sides can be adjusted separately: turn the control to adjust the temperature.
② Fan	The power of the fan is automatically adjusted. Press the buttons to manually adjust the fan.
③ Air distribution	The airflow adjusts automatically for comfort. You can also switch it on manually using the buttons ③.
④	Indications on the display screen of the fan speed and the temperature selected for the right and left sides.
MAX Defrost function	The air drawn in from outside the vehicle is directed at the windscreen and air recirculation is automatically switched off. To defrost the windscreen more quickly, the air is dehumidified at temperatures over approximately +3°C (+38°F) and the fan runs at maximum output.
	The air is directed at the chest of driver and passengers by the dash panel air vents.

	Air distribution towards the footwell.
	Upward air distribution.
	Heated rear window: this only works when the engine is running and switches off automatically after a maximum of 10 minutes.
	Air recirculation
	Seat heating buttons
A/C	Press the button to switch on or off the cooling system.
SYNC	Press the **SYNC** button to apply the driver-side settings to the passenger side. Use the temperature regulator for the passenger side in order to set a different temperature.
AUTO	Automatic adjustment of temperature, fan, and air distribution.
Switching off	Press the **OFF** button or manually set the fan to **0**.

››› ⚠ in General notes on page 161

››› page 168

How does the manual air conditioning* and the heating and fresh air system work?

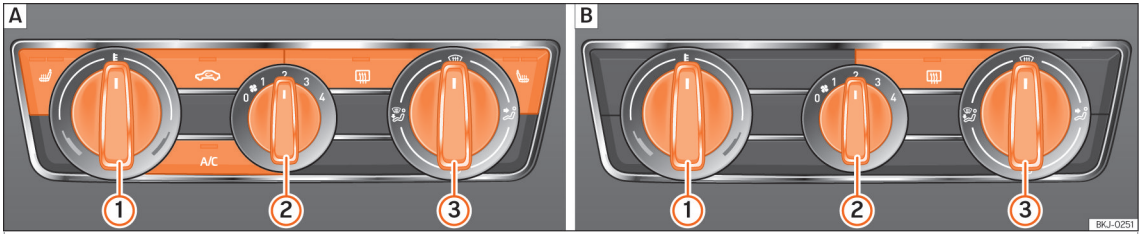


Fig. 56 In the centre console: A controls for the manual air conditioning; B heating and fresh air system controls.

To switch a specific function on, press the appropriate button. Press the button again to switch off the function.

The LED on each control lights up to indicate that the respective function of a control has been switched on.

① Temperature	Turn the control to adjust the temperature.
② Fan	Level 0: blower and manual air conditioning/heating off Level 4: maximum fan level.
③ Air distribution	: Defrost function. The airflow is directed at the windscreen. **Manual air conditioning:** Air recirculation is automatically switched off or is not switched on. Increase the fan power to clear the windscreen of condensation as soon as possible. To dehumidify the air, the cooling system will automatically switch on.
	: The air is directed at the chest of driver and passengers by the dash panel air vents.
	: Air distribution towards the footwell.
	: Air distribution towards the windscreen and the footwell.

	Heated rear window: this only works when the engine is running and switches off automatically after a maximum of 10 minutes.
	**Manual air conditioning:** Air recirculation
A/C	**Manual air conditioning:** Press the button to switch on or off the cooling system.
	**Manual air conditioning:** Seat heating buttons

››› ⚠ in General notes on page 161

››› page 164, ››› page 166

Fluid level control

Filling capacities

Tank level

Petrol and diesel engines	40 l, 7 l reserve
Natural gas engine[a)]	approx. 11.6 kg

[a)] The capacity depends on the efficacy and characteristics of the natural gas pumps. The capacity indicated is based on a minimum loading pressure of 200 bar.

Capacity of the windscreen washer fluid container

Windscreen washer fluid container	approx. 3 litres

Fuel

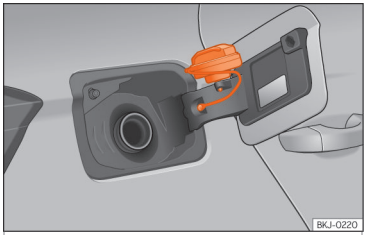


Fig. 57 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached.

The tank flap is released electronically by means of the central locking and is located at the rear of the vehicle, on the right. The tank holds approximately 40 litres.

Opening the fuel tank cap

- Open the fuel tank flap by pressing on the left side.
- Unscrew the cap by turning it to the left.
- Place it in the space on the hinge of the open flap ››› Fig. 57.

Closing the fuel tank cap

- Unscrew the cap by turning it to the right as far as it will go.
- Close the lid.

››› ⚠ in Refuelling on page 309

››› page 308

Oil

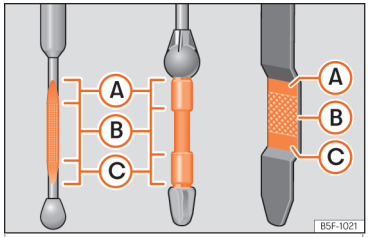


Fig. 58 Engine oil dipstick.

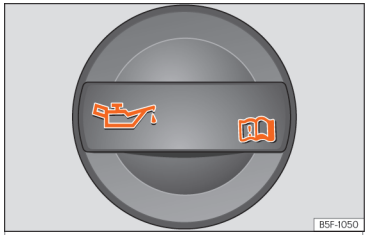


Fig. 59 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap.

The level is measured using the dipstick located in the engine compartment ››› page 317.

The oil indicator must be between zones (A) and (C). It can never go above zone (A).

- Zone (A): do not add oil.
- Zone (B): you can add oil but keep the level in that zone.
- Zone (C): add oil until zone (B).

Topping up engine oil

- Unscrew cap from oil filler opening.
- Add oil slowly.
- At the same time, check the level to ensure you do not add too much.
- When the oil level reaches at least zone (B), unscrew the engine oil filler cap carefully.

Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

Engine oil specifications

Diesel engines

Engine type	Type of Service	Specification
With particulate filter (DPF)[a]	Set Service and Flexible Service Intervals	VW 507 00

[a] Only use recommended oils, otherwise you may damage the engine.

If the engine oil level is too low

You can get information about the correct engine oil for your vehicle in your specialised shop. If you have to change your engine oil, use this oil.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, in the event of an **emergency** you can change the oil **once** with a maximum of 0.5 L of the next oil until the next oil change:

– *Petrol engines:* standard VW 504 00, VW 502 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C3 or API SN.

– *Diesel engines:* standard VW 507 00, VW 505 01, ACEA C3 or API CK-4.

Have the oil changed by a specialised workshop.

Using engine oil that is compliant with the VW 504 00 standard instead of VW 508 00 could increase consumption and the vehicle's CO_2 emissions.

Castrol EDGE Professional

Recommended by SEAT

SEAT recommends using original SEAT oil to guarantee high SEAT engine performance.

››› ⚠ in Changing engine oil on page 320

››› page 318

Coolant

Fig. 60 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cap.

The coolant tank is located in the engine compartment ››› page 317. »

When the engine is cold, replace the coolant when the level is below **MIN**.

Coolant specifications

The engine cooling system is supplied from the factory with a specially treated mixture of water and at least 40 % of the additive **G13** (TL-VW 774 J), purple. This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C (-13°F) and protects the light alloy parts of the engine cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and considerably raises the boiling point of the coolant.

To protect the cooling system, the percentage of additive must always be at least 40 %, even in warm climates where anti-freeze protection is not required.

If for weather reasons further protection is necessary, the proportion of additive may be increased, but only up to 60 %; otherwise antifreeze protection will diminish and this will worsen cooling.

When the coolant is topped up, use a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40 % of the G13 or G12 plus-plus (TL-VW 774 G) additive (both are purple) to obtain an optimum anti-corrosion protection ››› **in Topping up coolant on page 321**. The mixture of G13 with G12 plus (TL-VW 774 F), G12 (red) or G11 (green-blue) engine coolants will significantly reduce anti-corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided ››› **in Topping up coolant on page 321**.

››› in Topping up coolant on page 321

››› page 320

Brake fluid

Fig. 61 Engine compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment ››› **page 317**.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. If it is below **MIN**, please visit a Technical Service.

››› in Changing the brake fluid on page 322

››› page 321

Windscreen washer

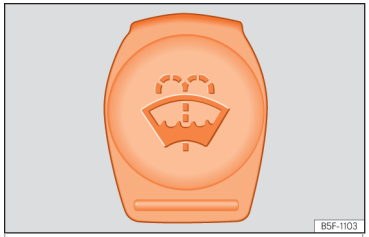


Fig. 62 In the engine compartment: cap of the windscreen washer tank.

The windscreen washer reservoir is located in the engine compartment ››› **page 317**.

To top up, mix water with a product recommended by SEAT.

In cold temperatures, add anti-freeze for windows.

››› ⚠ in Checking and topping up the windscreen washer reservoir water on page 322

››› page 322

Battery

The battery is located in the engine compartment ››› page 317. It does not require maintenance. It is checked as part of the Inspection Service.

››› ⚠ in Symbols and warnings on handling the battery on page 323

››› page 323

Emergencies

Fuses

Fuse location

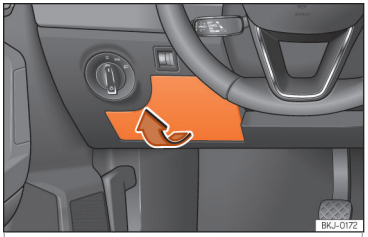


Fig. 63 On the dashboard on the driver side: lid of the fuse box.

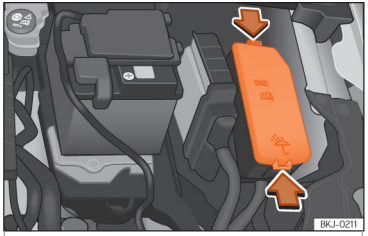


Fig. 64 In the engine compartment: lid of the fuse box.

Opening and closing the fuse box situated below the dash panel

- Open: remove the fuse box cover in the direction indicated ››› Fig. 63.
- Close: click the cover back into place.

To open the engine compartment fuse box

- Raise the bonnet.
- Press the locking tabs to release the fuse box cover ››› Fig. 64
- Then lift the cover out.
- To **fit** the cover, place it on the fuse box. Push the locking tabs down until they click audibly into place.

Identifying fuses situated below the dash panel by colours

Colour	Amp rating
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 91

››› page 91

Replacing a blown fuse

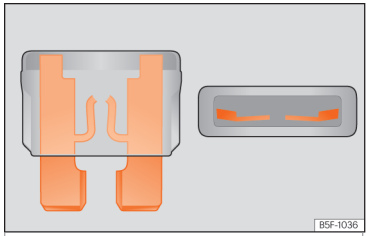


Fig. 65 Image of a blown fuse.

Preparation

- Switch off the ignition, lights and all electrical equipment.
- Open the corresponding fuse box ››› page 91.

Identifying a blown fuse

A fuse is blown if its metal strip is ruptured ››› Fig. 65.

- Point a lamp at the fuse to see if it has blown.

To replace a fuse

- Remove the fuse.
- Replace the blown fuse by one with an *identical* amperage rating (same colour and markings) and *identical* size.
- Replace the cover again or close the fuse box lid.

Bulbs

Bulbs (12 V)

Note: Depending on the level of equipment fitted in the vehicle, LEDs may be used for part or all of the interior and/or exterior lighting. LEDs have an estimated life that exceeds that of the vehicle. If an LED light fails, go to an authorised workshop for its replacement.

Light source used for each function

Halogen headlights.	Type
Dipped beam headlights	H7 Long Life
Main beam headlights	H7
Side light/DRL (daytime running light)	W21W
Turn signal	PY 21W

Halogen headlight with LED DRL	Type
Dipped beam headlights	H7 Long Life
Main beam headlights	H7
Turn signal	PY 21W
Side light/DRL (daytime running light)	LED[a]

[a] In case of a LED failure, go to an authorised workshop to have it replaced.

Full-LED main headlights	Type
No bulbs may be replaced. All functions are with LEDs. In case of a LED failure, go to an authorised workshop to have it replaced.	

Bulb light[a]	Left	Right
Brake lights	2 x P21WLL	2 x P21WLL
Side lights		
Retro fog light	P21 WLL	–
Reverse light	–	P21 WLL
Turn signal	PY 21W NA LL	PY 21W NA LL

[a] The table corresponds to a right-hand traffic vehicle. The position of lights may vary according to the country.

Light with LEDs[a]	Left	Right
Brake lights	LED	LED
Side lights	LED	LED
Retro fog light	LED	–
Reverse light	–	P21 WLL
Turn signal	PY 21W NA LL	PY 21W NA LL

[a] The table corresponds to a right-hand traffic vehicle. The position of lights may vary according to the country.

››› page 93

Action in the event of a puncture

Related video

Fig. 66 Wheels

What to do first

- Park the vehicle on a horizontal surface and in a safe place as far away from traffic as possible.
- Apply the handbrake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- *Manual transmission:* select the 1st gear.
- *Automatic transmission:* Move the selector lever to position **P**.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- Have the vehicle tool kit* ››› page 53 and the spare wheel ››› page 330 ready.
- Observe the applicable legislation for each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, etc.).
- All occupants should leave the vehicle and wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

⚠ WARNING

- **Always observe the above steps and protect yourself and other road users.**
- **If you change the wheel on a slope, block the wheel on the opposite side of the car with a stone or similar to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

Repairing a tyre with the anti-puncture kit

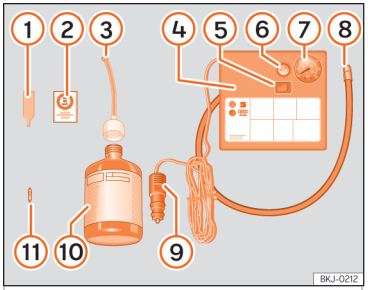


Fig. 67 Standard display: contents of the anti-puncture kit.

The anti-puncture kit is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Sealing the tyre

- Unscrew the tyre valve cap and insert. Use the ››› Fig. 67 (1) tool to remove the insert. Place it on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre sealant bottle vigorously ››› Fig. 67 (10).
- Screw the inflator tube ››› Fig. 67 (3) into the sealant bottle. The bottle's seal will break automatically.
- Remove the lid from the filling tube ››› Fig. 67 (3) and screw the open end of the tube into the tyre valve.
- With the tyre sealant bottle upside down, fill the tyre with the contents of the sealant bottle.
- Remove the bottle from the valve.
- Place the insert back into the tyre valve using the tool ››› Fig. 67 (1).

Inflating the tyre

- Screw the compressor tyre inflator tube ››› Fig. 67 (8) into the tyre valve.
- Check that the air bleed screw is closed ››› Fig. 67 (6).
- Start the engine and leave it running.
- Insert the connector ››› Fig. 67 (9) into the vehicle's 12-volt socket ››› page 154.
- Turn the air compressor on with the ON/OFF switch ››› Fig. 67 (5).

- Keep the air compressor running until it reaches 2.0 to 2.5 bar (29-36 psi/200-250 kPa). **A maximum of 8 minutes**.
- Disconnect the air compressor.
- If it does not reach the pressure indicated, unscrew the tyre inflator tube from the valve.
- Move the vehicle 10m so that the sealant is distributed throughout the tyre.
- Screw the compressor tyre inflator into the valve.
- Repeat the inflation process.
- If the indicated pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. Stop and request assistance from an authorised technician.
- Disconnect the air compressor. Unscrew the tyre inflator tube from the tyre valve.
- When the tyre pressure is between 2.5 and 2.0 bars, continue driving without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Attach the sticker ››› Fig. 67 ② to the instrument cluster, within the driver's visual field.
- Check the pressure again after 10 minutes ››› page 86.

››› ⚠ in TMS (Tyre Mobility System)* on page 85

››› page 85

Changing a wheel

Related video

Fig. 68 Wheels

Vehicle tool kit

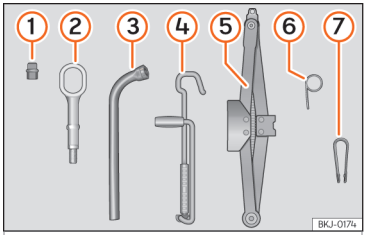


Fig. 69 Underneath the floor panel of the luggage compartment: on-board tools.

① Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts*
② Towline anchorage
③ Box spanner for wheel bolts*
④ Crank handle for jack
⑤ Jack*
⑥ Hook for extracting the central wheel trims*
⑦ Clip for removing the wheel bolt caps.

››› ⚠ in Vehicle tools on page 84

››› page 84

Central trim for steel rims*

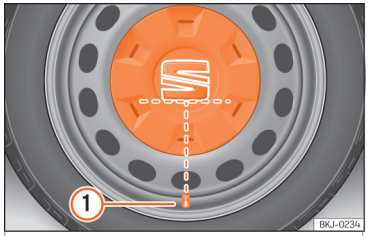


Fig. 70 Correct positioning of the central wheel trim for steel rims.

The central trims must be removed for access to the wheel bolts. »

Removing

- Attach the wire hook (vehicle tools ››› Fig. 69 ⑥) to one of the chambers of the central wheel trim.
- Insert the box spanner through the hook, supporting it on the tyre and remove the wheel trim.

Fitting

- Fit the central wheel trim onto the rim. The bottom of the "S" of the SEAT badge should align with the inflation valve ››› Fig. 70 ①.
- Press the central trim firmly until it locks in with an audible click.

Note

There is also a valve mark on the back of the central wheel trim that indicates the correct alignment.

Wheel bolt caps*

Fig. 71 Wheel: wheel bolts with caps.

Removal

- Fit the plastic clip (vehicle tools) over the cap until it clicks into place ››› Fig. 71.
- Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Wheel bolts

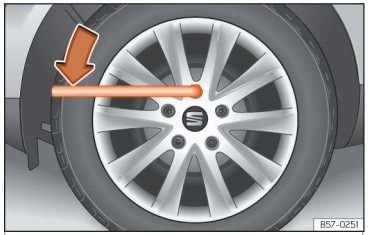


Fig. 72 Tyre change: slacken the wheel bolts.

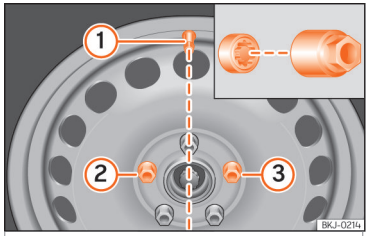


Fig. 73 Tyre change: tyre valve ① and the correct position for the anti-theft wheel locking bolt ② or ③.

Use only the wheel wrench belonging to the car to loosen the wheel bolts.

Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.

If the wheel bolt is very tight, carefully push on the end of the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip during this operation.

Loosening wheel bolts

- Fit the wheel wrench on as far as it will go ››› Fig. 72.
- Hold the wrench at the end and rotate the bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise ››› ⚠ **in Removing and fitting the wheel on page 56**.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and should be pushed fully on again after changing the tyre.

Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt

- Take the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle tool kit.
- Insert the adapter fully onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ››› Fig. 73.
- Fit the wheel wrench as far as it will go over the adapter.
- Hold the wrench at the end and rotate the bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise ››› ⚠ **in Removing and fitting the wheel on page 56**.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** has a different cap. This cap only fits on anti-theft locking bolts and is not for use with standard wheel bolts.

Important information about wheel bolts

Factory-fitted rims and wheel bolts are specially matched during construction. Therefore, if different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you should not even use wheel bolts from vehicles of the same model.

In wheels with full hubcaps, the anti-theft locking bolt must be threaded onto positions ››› Fig. 73 ② or ③, taking the tyre valve's position as reference ①. Otherwise it will not be possible to mount the hubcap.

Raising the vehicle

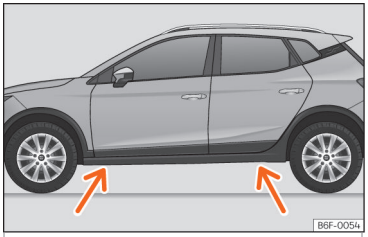


Fig. 74 Jack position points.

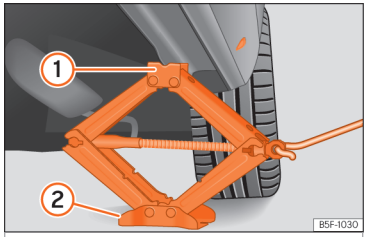


Fig. 75 Fitting the jack.

- Place the jack* (vehicle tools) on firm ground. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. If the surface is slippery (for example tiles) place the jack on a rubber mat or similar to prevent it from slipping ››› ⚠.
- Find the support point on the strut (sunken area) closest to the wheel to be changed ››› Fig. 74.
- Turn the jack* crank handle, located below the strut support point, to raise it until the tab ① ››› Fig. 75 is below the housing provided.
- Align the jack* so that tab ① "grips" onto the housing provided on the strut and the mobile base ② is resting on the ground. The base plate ② should fall vertically with respect to the support point ①.
- Continue turning the jack* until the wheel is slightly lifted off the ground. »

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure that the jack* remains stable. If the surface is slippery or soft, the jack* could slip or sink, respectively, with the resultant risk of injury.**
- **Only raise the vehicle with the jack* supplied by the manufacturer. Other jacks, even those approved for other SEAT models could slip, with the consequent risk of injury.**
- **Only mount the jack* on the support points designed for this purpose on the strut, and always align the jack correctly. If you do not, the jack* could slip as it does not have an adequate grip on the vehicle: risk of injury!**
- **The height of the parked vehicle can change as a result of variations in temperature and loading.**

ⓘ CAUTION

The vehicle must not be raised on the crossbar. Only place the jack* on the points designed for this purpose on the strut. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.

Removing and fitting the wheel

Change the wheel after loosening the wheel bolts and raising the vehicle with the jack.

Taking off the wheel

- Unscrew the wheel bolts using the box spanner and place them on a clean surface.
- Take off the wheel ››› ❗.

Putting on the spare wheel

When fitting tyres with a compulsory rotation direction, observe the instructions in ››› page 57.

- Mount the wheel.
- Screw on the wheel bolts in position and tighten them loosely with a box spanner.
- Carefully lower the vehicle using the jack*.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal pairs using the wheel brace.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before fitting the spare wheel, inspect the wheel condition and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before fitting the wheel.

Wheel bolt tightening torque

The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is **120 Nm**. After changing a wheel, have the tightening torque checked immediately with a torque wrench that is working perfectly.

Before checking tightening torque, have any rusty wheel bolts that are difficult to screw replaced and clean the wheel hub threads.

Never apply grease or oil to wheel bolts or to the wheel hub threads. Even if the bolts have been tightened to the prescribed torque, they could come loose while driving.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel bolts are not properly tightened, they could come loose while driving and cause an accident, serious injury and loss of vehicle control.

- **Use only wheel bolts which correspond to the rim in question.**
- **Never use different wheel bolts.**
- **Wheel bolts and threads should be clean, free of oil and grease, and it should be possible to screw them easily.**
- **To loosen and tighten wheel bolts, only use the wheel wrench that came with the car from the factory.**
- **Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.**
- **Never apply grease or oil to wheel bolts or to the wheel hub threads. Even if the bolts have been tightened to the prescribed torque, they could come loose while driving.**
- **Never loosen the screwed joints of wheel rims with bolted ring trims.**
- **If wheel bolts are tightened below the prescribed torque, the bolts and rims could come loose while driving. If tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts or threads can be damaged.**

CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel, the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Tyres with compulsory direction of rotation

A directional tread pattern can be identified by the arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel to guarantee optimum properties of this type of tyres with regard to grip, noises, wear and aquaplaning.

If it is absolutely necessary to fit the spare tyre* against the direction of rotation, drive with care as this means the tyre does not offer optimum driving properties. This is of particular importance when the road surface is wet.

To return to directional tread tires, replace the punctured tyre as soon as possible and restore the obligatory direction of rotation of all tyres.

Subsequent work

- *Alloy wheels:* replace the wheel bolt caps.
- *Plate wheels:* replace the wheel hubcap.
- Return all tools to their proper storing location.
- If the replaced wheel does not fit in the spare wheel housing, store it safely in the luggage compartment ››› page 155.
- Check the tyre pressure of the newly mounted tyre as soon as possible.
- In vehicles fitted with a tyre pressure indicator, adjust the pressure and store it in memory ››› page 329.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench (it should be 120 Nm). Meanwhile, drive carefully.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Snow chains

Use

Snow chains should only be used on the front wheels.

- Check that they are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; correct the position if necessary, in accordance with the manufacturer's fitting instructions.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h (30 mph).
- If there is a danger of being trapped despite having mounted the chains, it is best to disable the driving wheels (ASR) in the ESC ››› page 226.

Snow chains will improve *braking ability* as well as *traction* in winter conditions.

For technical reasons snow chains may only be used with the following wheel rim/tyre combination.

195/60 R16	Chains with links of maximum 13.5 mm
205/60 R16	Chains with links of maximum 9 mm
205/55 R17	
215/45 R18	

Remove wheel covers and any integral trim ring before fitting snow chains.

Remove the chains when roads are free of snow. Driving characteristics worsen, and the wheels become damaged quickly and may even be rendered unusable.

WARNING

Snow chains should be correctly tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. This will prevent the chains coming into contact with the wheel housing.

Emergency towing of the vehicle

Towing

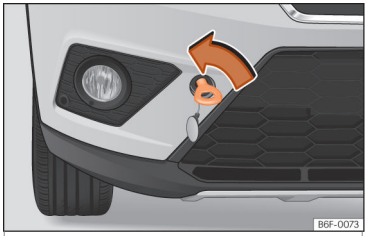


Fig. 76 Right side of the front bumper: towline anchorage.

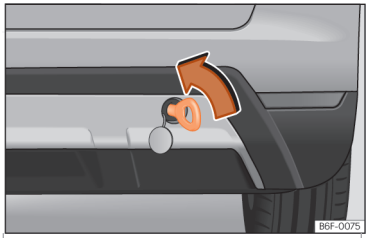


Fig. 77 Right side of the rear bumper: towline anchorage.

Towline anchorages

Attach the bar or rope to the towline anchorages.

The towline anchorages are located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment, next to the vehicle tools ››› page 53.

Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection ››› Fig. 76 or ››› Fig. 77 and tighten it with the wheel brace.

Tow rope or tow bar

It is easier and safer for the vehicle to be towed using a tow bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar.

A tow rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar only to the towline anchorages provided or a towing bracket.

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

- The tow rope must be taut before you drive off.
- Release the clutch very carefully when starting the vehicle (manual gearbox), or accelerate gently (automatic gearbox).

Driving style

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow *rope*. Both drivers should realise how difficult it is to tow a vehicle. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking and also to allow the use of the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers.

Place the gear lever in neutral on vehicles with a manual gearbox. With an automatic gearbox, place the lever in **N**.

The brake servo only works when the engine is running. When not running, you must apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal.

As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.

››› ⚠ in General information on page 87

››› page 87

Tow-starting

If the engine will not start, first try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ››› page 59. You should only attempt to tow-start a vehicle if charging the battery does not work. This is done by leveraging wheel movement.

When tow-starting a vehicle with a **petrol engine**, do not tow it more than a *short* distance, otherwise unburned fuel can enter the catalytic converter.

However, if your vehicle has to be tow-started:

- Engage 2nd or 3rd gear.
- Keep the clutch pressed down.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and move the gear lever into neutral. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

››› ⚠ in General information on page 87

››› page 87

How to jump start

Jump leads

The jump lead must have a sufficient wire cross section.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jump leads

Jump leads must comply with standard **DIN 72553** (see cable manufacturer's instructions). The wire cross section must be at least 25 mm² for petrol engines and at least 35 mm² for diesel engines.

Note

- **The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.**
- **The discharged battery must be properly connected to the on-board network.**

How to jump start: description

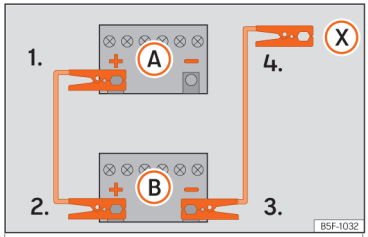


Fig. 78 Diagram of connections for vehicles without Start-Stop system.

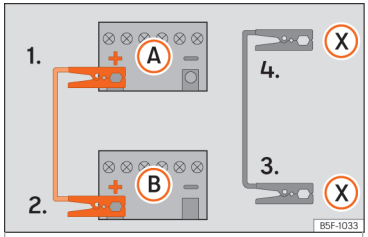


Fig. 79 Diagram of connections for vehicles with Start-Stop system.

Jump lead terminal connections

1. Switch off the ignition of both vehicles ››› ⚠.

»

2. Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the flat battery (A) ››› Fig. 78.
3. Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing assistance (B).

4a. *In vehicles without a Start-Stop system:* connect one end of the *black* jump lead to the negative terminal (–) of the vehicle providing the current (B) ››› Fig. 78.

4b. *In vehicles with a Start-stop system:* connect one end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a suitable ground terminal, to a solid piece of metal in the engine block, or to the engine block itself ››› Fig. 79.

5. Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a solid metal component bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery (A).
6. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting

7. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
8. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery and wait for 2 or 3 minutes until the engine is running.

Removing the jump leads

9. Before you remove the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
10. Turn on the heater blower and heated rear window in the vehicle with the flat battery. This helps minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
11. When the engine is running, disconnect the leads in reverse order to the details given above.

Make sure the battery clamps have sufficient metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine fails to start after about 10 seconds, switch off the starter and try again after about 1 minute.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment** ››› page 315, Working in the engine compartment.
- **The battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the flat battery (12 V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery). Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even after the battery has thawed, battery acid could leak and cause chemical burns. If a battery freezes, it should be replaced.**
- **Keep sparks, flames and lighted cigarettes away from batteries, danger of explosion. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the flat battery. The gas emitted from the battery could be ignited by sparks. Danger of explosion.**
- **Never attach the negative cable to fuel system components or the brake lines in the other vehicle.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not lean on the batteries. This could result in chemical burns.**

Note

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

Changing the wiper blades

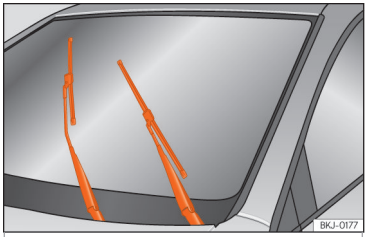


Fig. 80 Wipers in service position.

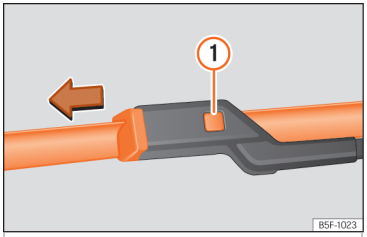


Fig. 81 Changing the windscreen wiper blade.

To change the blades it is necessary to move the wipers from the rest position into the service position.

Do not change the windscreen wipers when out of the service position, as it could cause paint to flake off the bonnet due to friction with the windscreen wiper arm.

Service position (for changing wiper blades)

- Ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen.
- Turn the ignition on and off and then (within approximately 9 seconds) push the windscreen wiper lever down (short wipe). The windscreen wipers will move to the service position ››› Fig. 80.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the windscreen wiper arm.
- Press the securing tab down (1) ››› Fig. 81.
- Extract the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Insert the wiper blade onto the windscreen wiper arm until it clicks into place.
- Place the windscreen wiper arms to their initial position.
- Turn the ignition on, push the windscreen wiper lever down (touch wipe) and then turn the ignition off.

››› ⚠ in Changing the windscreen and rear window wiper blades on page 87

››› page 87

Changing the rear window wiper blade

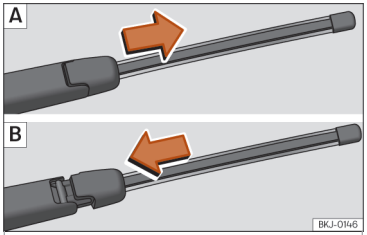


Fig. 82 Removing and fitting the rear window wiper blade.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass
- Slide the blade adapter in the direction of the arrow and remove the blade ››› **Fig. 82 A**.

Fitting the wiper blade

- With one hand, hold the top end of the wiper arm.
- Place the blade as shown in ››› **Fig. 82 B** and slide the adapter along until it engages.

››› ⚠ in Changing the windscreen and rear window wiper blades on page 87

››› page 87

Safety

Safe driving

Advice about driving

Safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and consider for both your own safety and for your passengers' safety.

⚠ WARNING

- **This manual contains important information about the operation of the vehicle, both for the driver and the passengers. The other sections of the on-board documentation also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.**

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

– Make sure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals are working properly.

– Check tyre pressure.

– Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.

– Ensure that all luggage is correctly secured ››› page 155.

– Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.

– Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors properly according to your size.

– Ensure that the passenger in the central rear seat always has the head restraint in the correct position for use.

– Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.

– Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ››› page 80.

– Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position ››› page 64.

– Fasten your seat belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly ››› page 69.

What affects driving safety?

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected by any circumstance, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ››› ⚠, for this reason:

– Always pay attention to traffic and do not get distracted by passengers or telephone calls.

– Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).

– Observe traffic laws and speed limits.

– Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.

– When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.

– If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

⚠ WARNING

When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases.

Safety equipment

Never put your safety or the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the »

risk of injury. The following points cover part of the safety equipment in your SEAT[1]:

- three-point seat belts,
- Belt tension limiter for the front and rear side seats
- belt tensioners for the front and rear seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seat backrests,
- "ISOFIX" anchor points for "ISOFIX" rear child seat system
- height-adjustable front head restraints,
- Rear-centre head restraints with in-use position and non-use position
- adjustable steering column.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of an accident. However, these safety systems can only be effective if you and your passengers are sitting in a correct position and use this equipment properly.

Safety is everyone's business!

Correct position of the vehicle occupants

Correct sitting position for the driver

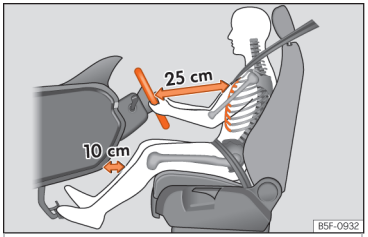


Fig. 83 The proper distance between driver and steering wheel.

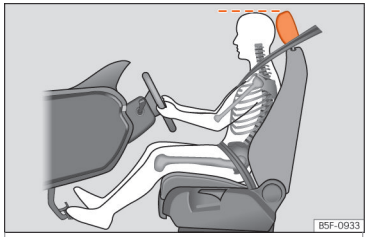


Fig. 84 Correct head restraint position for the driver.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the driver:

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the centre of your chest ››› Fig. 83.

– Move the driver's seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled ››› ⚠.

– Ensure that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your

[1] Depending on the version/market.

head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ››› Fig. 84.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› page 69.

– Keep both feet in the footwell so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

Adjustment of the driver's seat ››› page 148.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the driver can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between the centre of the chest and the centre of the steering wheel ››› Fig. 83. If distance is less than 25 cm, the airbag system may not protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury when the driver airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing his or her seat belt correctly.**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve optimal protection.**

Adjusting the steering wheel position

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 20

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the position of the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving, as this could cause an accident.**
- **Move the lever up firmly so the steering wheel position does not accidentally change during driving. risk of accident!**
- **Make sure you are capable of reaching and firmly holding the upper part of the steering wheel: risk of accident!**
- **If you adjust the steering wheel so that it points towards your face, the driver airbag will not protect you properly in the event of an accident. Make sure that the steering wheel points towards your chest.**

Correct position for the front passenger

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the front passenger:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible ››› ⚠.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ››› page 67.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› page 69.

»

It is possible to deactivate the front passenger airbag in **exceptional circumstances** ››› page 78.

Adjusting the front passenger seat ››› page 19.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the front passenger can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your chest and the dash panel. If distance is less than 25 cm, the airbag system may not protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, out the window or on the seat. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger in events such as sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never travel with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the front passenger is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the seat backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**

Correct sitting position for rear seat passengers

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, passengers on the rear seat bench must consider the following:

– Sit up straight.

– Adjust the head restraint to the correct position ››› page 67.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› page 69.

– Use an appropriate child restraint system when you take children in the vehicle ››› page 80.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the passengers in the rear seats are not sitting properly, they could sustain severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**
- **Seat belts can only provide optimal protection when seat backrests are in an upright position and the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly. If passengers In the rear seats are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt increases.**

Examples of incorrect sitting positions

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only when the belt webs are properly positioned. Incorrect sitting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect seat belt position. As the driver, you are responsible for all passengers, especially children.

– Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ››› ⚠.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all

vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but we would like to make you aware of this issue.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your seat backrest far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the surface of a seat.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the footwell.
- Never travel without wearing the seat belt.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Any incorrect sitting position increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position exposes the vehicle occupants to severe injuries if airbags are triggered, by striking a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. Before every trip, instruct your passengers to sit properly and to stay in this position during the trip** **››› page 64, Correct position of the vehicle occupants.**

Correct adjustment of front head restraints

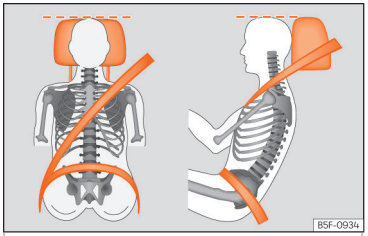


Fig. 85 Correctly adjusted head restraint as viewed from the front and the side.

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is, as far as possible, at the same level as the top of your head, or at the very least, at eye level ››› Fig. 85.

⚠ WARNING

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries. An improper adjustment of the head restraints may cause death in an accident and increase the risk of suffering injuries during abrupt braking actions or unexpected manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the height of the passenger.**

Correct adjustment of rear head restraints

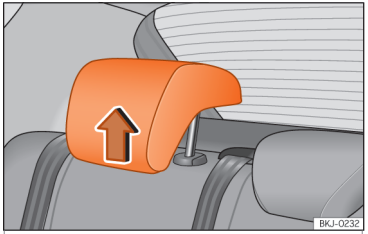


Fig. 86 Head restraints in the correct position.

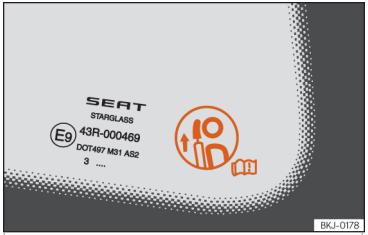


Fig. 87 Head restraint position warning label.

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of the passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations

Rear head restraints

- The rear head restraints have 2 positions: **use** and **non-use**.
- One position for **use** (head restraint raised) ››› Fig. 86. In this position, the head restraints are used normally, protecting passengers along with the rear seat belts.
- And one position for **non-use** (head restraint lowered).
- To fit the head restraints in position for use, pull on the edges with both hands in the direction of the arrow.

⚠ WARNING

- **Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the head restraints are in the non-use position. See the warning label located on the rear side fixed window ››› Fig. 87.**
- **Do not swap the centre rear head restraint with either of the outer seat rear head restraints. Risk of injury in case of an accident!**

ⓘ CAUTION

Note the instructions on the adjustment of the head restraints ››› page 148.

Pedal area

Pedals

- Ensure that you can always press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals unimpaired to the floor.
- Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.
- Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ››› ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a specialised dealership.

If a brake circuit fails, the brake pedal must be pressed down thoroughly in order to stop the vehicle.

Wear suitable footwear

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feeling for the pedals.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the pedals are obstructed, an accident may occur. Risk of serious injuries.**
- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This**

would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.

- Never place objects in the driver footwell. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation. In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to operate the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal. Risk of accident!

Seat belts

Why wear a seat belt

Number of seats

Your vehicle has **five** seats, two in the front and three in the rear. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

- Never transport more than the permitted amount of people in your vehicle.
- Every vehicle occupant must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system.

Seat belt control lamp*

Fig. 88 Dashboard: right rear seat occupied and corresponding seat belt fastened display.

It lights up red

Driver or passenger has not fastened seat belt.

The control lamp illuminates to remind the driver to fasten his seat belt.

Before starting the vehicle:

- Fasten your seat belt securely.
- Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.
- Protect children by using a child seat according to the child's height and weight.

When starting to drive, if the vehicle's speed surpasses approx. 25 km/h (15 mph) and the seat belts are not fastened or are unfastened during the drive, a warning sound will be »

heard for a few seconds. The warning light will also flash .

The lamp goes out when the driver and passenger seat belts are fastened with the ignition switched on.

Rear seat belts fastened display*

Depending on the model version, when the ignition is switched on, the seat belt status display ››› Fig. 88 on the instrument panel informs the driver whether the passengers in the rear seats have fastened their seat belts. The symbol indicates that the passenger in this seat has fastened “his or her” seat belt.

When a seat belt in the rear seats is fastened or unfastened, the seat belt status is displayed for approximately 30 seconds. The indication can be hidden by pressing the **0.0/SET** button on the dash panel.

The seat belt status flashes for a maximum of 30 seconds when a seat belt in the rear seats is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. An audible warning will also be heard if the vehicle is travelling at over 25 km/h (15 mph).

The protective function of seat belts

Fig. 89 Drivers with properly worn seat belts will not be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.

Properly worn seat belts hold the occupants in the proper position. These also help prevent uncontrolled movements that may result in serious injury and reduce the risk of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Vehicle occupants wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. In addition, the front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the releasing kinetic energy and consequently, the risk of injury. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown that wearing seat belts is an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival when involved in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some cases of head-on collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal or side collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off!

Important safety instructions for the use of seat belts

– Always wear the seat belt as described in this section.

– Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.
- Fasten your seat belt before every trip - even when driving in town. Other vehicle occupants must also wear the seat belts at all times, otherwise they run the risk of being injured.
- The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.
- Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of your seat as long as the vehicle is in motion.
- Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.
- The seat belt must never be twisted while it is being worn.
- The seat belt should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
- Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.
- Bulky and unfastened clothing (such as an overcoat over a sweater) impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belts, reducing their capacity to protect.
- The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.
- Never use seat belt clips, fastening rings or similar items to alter the position of the belt webbing.
- Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and have been stretched must be replaced by a specialised workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.
- The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly.

Head-on collisions and the laws of physics

Fig. 90 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently.

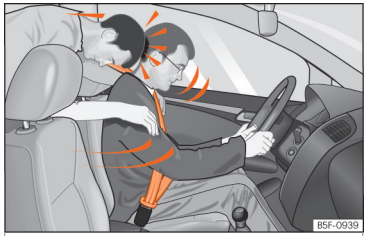


Fig. 91 The unbelted passenger in the rear seat is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver who is wearing a seat belt.

The effects of the laws of physics in the case of a head-on collision are easy to explain: the »

moment a vehicle starts moving, a type of energy called “kinetic energy” starts acting on both the vehicle and its passengers.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and on the weight of the vehicle and of its passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be “absorbed” in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h (15 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the corresponding kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Because the vehicle occupants in our example are not restrained by seat belts, in the event of crashing against a wall, all of the occupants' kinetic energy will be absorbed solely by said impact.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a head-on collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ››› Fig. 90.

It is also important for rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently through the vehicle interior in an accident. Passengers in the rear seats who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ››› Fig. 91.

How to properly adjust your seat belt

Fastening and unfastening your seat belt

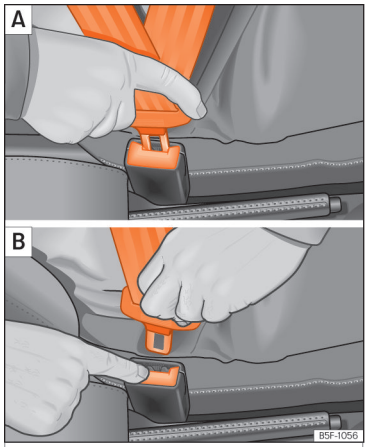


Fig. 92 Positioning and removing the seat belt buckle.

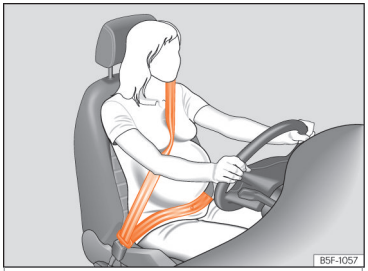


Fig. 93 Position of seat belt during pregnancy.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 19.

Fasten your seat belt

The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.

- Adjust the seat and head restraint correctly.
- To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ››› Fig. 92.
- Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic retractor on the shoulder strap. Full freedom of movement is permitted when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly. However, during sudden braking, during travel in steep areas or bends and during acceleration, the automatic retractor on the shoulder belt is locked.

The automatic belt retractors on the front seats are fitted with seat belt tensioners ››› page 73.

Releasing the seat belt

- Press the red button on the belt buckle ››› Fig. 92. The latch plate is released and springs out ››› ⚠.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim is not damaged.

Positioning seat belts

Seat belts offer their maximum protection only when they are properly positioned.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **Never put the latch plate in the buckle of another seat. If you do this, the seat belt will not protect you properly and the risk of injury is increased.**
- **Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. If you do, you increase the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries.**
- **An incorrectly worn seat belt can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck. The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the torso**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the pelvis Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach, and always lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen ››› Fig. 93.**
- **Always engage the retractor lock when you are securing a child seat in group 0, 0+ or 1 ››› page 80.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ››› page 70.**

Seat belt tensioners*

How the seat belt tensioner works

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 20 »

The seat belts for the front and side rear occupants are equipped with belt tensioners. The belt tensioners are activated by sensors, although only in severe head-on and lateral collisions. This retracts and tightens the seat belts, reducing the forward motion of the occupants.

The belt tensioners will not be triggered in the event of minor collisions, if the vehicle overturns, or in accidents where no major forces act on the vehicle.

Note

- **If the seat belt tensioners are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.**
- **The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Specialised workshops are familiar with these regulations, which are also available to you.**

Maintenance and disposal of belt tensioners

The belt tensioners are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tensioners or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tensioners function incorrectly or may not function at all.

So that the effectiveness of the seat belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations, which are known to the specialised workshops, must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

- **Improper use or repairs not carried out by qualified mechanics increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. The belt tensioners may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tensioners or seat belts.**
- **The seat belt tensioner, seat belt and automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tensioners and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a specialised workshop only.**
- **The belt tensioners will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed if they have been activated.**

Airbag system

Brief introduction

Why is it so important to wear a seat belt and to sit correctly?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. Therefore, it is most important to properly wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety **››› page 69, Why wear a seat belt**.

The airbag inflates in a matter of seconds, so if you are not properly seated when the airbag is triggered, you may sustain fatal injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all vehicle occupants assume a correct sitting position while travelling.

Sharp braking before an accident may cause a passenger not wearing a seat belt to be

thrown forward into the area of the deploying airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries on the occupant. This also applies to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact and the vehicle speed.

Whether or not the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbags will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle involved in an accident, no matter how serious, is not a determining factor for the airbags to have been triggered.

⚠ WARNING

- **Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries.**
- **All vehicle occupants, including children, who are not properly belted can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt, or if you lean forward or to the side while travelling or assume an incorrect sitting position, there is a substantially increased risk of injury. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly.**
- **Always adjust the front seats properly.**

Description of airbag system

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 21.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. The airbag system offers additional protection for the driver and passenger in combination with the seat belts.

The airbag system mainly comprises (as per vehicle equipment):

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit)
- frontal airbags for driver and passenger,
- side airbags,
- curtain airbags,
- a control lamp on the dash panel ››› page 79.
- key-operated switch for front passenger airbag,
- a control lamp for disabling/enabling the front passenger airbag.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag control lamp will illuminate for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

There is a fault in the system if the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on ››› page 79,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on,
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

The airbag system is not triggered if:

- the ignition is switched off
- there is a minor frontal collision
- there is a minor side collision
- there is a rear-end collision »

- the vehicle turns over.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ››› page 64, Correct position of the vehicle occupants.**
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, during a frontal collision the system might not trigger correctly or may fail to trigger at all.**

Airbag activation

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system is only ready to function when the ignition is on.

In special accidents instances, several airbags may activate at the same time.

In the event of minor head-on and side collisions, rear-end collisions, overturning or rollover of the vehicle, airbags **do not activate**.

Activation factors

The conditions that lead to the airbag system activating in each situation cannot be generalised. Some factors play an important role, such as the properties of the object the vehicle hits (hard/soft), angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

Deceleration trajectory is key for airbag activation.

The control unit analyses the collision trajectory and activates the respective restraint system.

If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car.

The following airbags are triggered in serious head-on collisions:

- Driver airbag.
- Front passenger front airbag

The following airbags are triggered in serious side-on collisions:

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Curtain (head) airbag on the side of the accident.

In an accident with airbag activation:

- the interior lights switch on (if the interior light switch is in the courtesy light position);
- the hazard warning lights switch on;
- all doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is cut.

Safety instructions about airbags

Front airbags

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 21.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ››› page 64, Correct position of the vehicle occupants.**
- **The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passenger, pets and objects.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone**

mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.

- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.

Side airbags*

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 22.

⚠ WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at a greater risk of injury if the side airbag system is triggered in an accident.
- In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.
- Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Great forces, such as hard blows or kicks, must not be exerted upon the backrest bolster because the system may be damaged. In this case, the side airbags would not be triggered.
- Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over seats with side airbags unless the covers have been approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a specialised workshop.
- The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.
- Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain (head) airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.
- In a side-on collision the side airbags will not work if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.
- Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.
- Never drive the vehicle if the loudspeakers in the door panels have been removed, unless the holes left by the loudspeakers have been closed properly.
- Always check that the openings are closed or covered if additional loudspeakers or other equipment are fitted inside the door panels.
- Any work carried out to the doors should be made in an authorised specialised workshop.

Head-protection airbags*

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 23. »

⚠ WARNING

- In order for the head-protection airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.
- For safety reasons, the curtain airbag must be disabled in those vehicles fitted with a screen dividing the interior of the vehicle. See your technical service to make this adjustment.
- There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the outer seats and the deployment space of the head-protection airbags so that the head-protection airbag can deploy completely without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Please, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.
- The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.
- Any work on the head-protection airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a specialised workshop.

Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.

- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.

Deactivating airbags

Activation and deactivation of front passenger airbag*

Fig. 94 Switch for activating and deactivating the front passenger airbag.

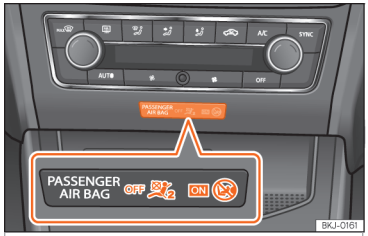


Fig. 95 Centre of the instrument panel: control lamp for deactivated front passenger airbag in centre console.

Deactivate the front passenger front airbag only if you have to use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat.

SEAT recommends fitting the child seat in the rear seat to avoid having to deactivate the front passenger airbag.

Front passenger front airbag switch

When the front passenger airbag is **deactivated**, this means that only the front passenger front airbag is deactivated. All the other airbags in the vehicle remain activated.

Disconnect the front passenger front airbag

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Insert the key into the slot of the switch for deactivating the front passenger airbag ››› Fig. 94. About 3/4 of the key should enter; this is as far as it will go.
- Turn the key gently to the **OFF** position. If you have difficulty, ensure that you have inserted the key as far as it will go.
- Close the front passenger door.
- Check, with the ignition switched on, that the **OFF** control lamp remains lit where it says **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre of the dash panel ››› Fig. 95.

Connect the front passenger front airbag

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the front passenger door.
- Insert the key into the slot of the switch for deactivating the front passenger airbag ››› Fig. 94. About 3/4 of the key should enter, as far as it will go.
- Turn the key gently to the **ON** position. If you have difficulty, ensure that you have inserted the key as far as it will go.
- Close the front passenger door.
- Check, with the ignition switched on, that the **OFF** control lamp is not lit where it says **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre of the dash panel ››› Fig. 95. The **ON** control lamp lights up for 60 seconds and then goes off.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver of the vehicle is responsible for disabling or switching on the airbag.**
- **Always switch off the ignition before disabling the front passenger airbag! Failure to do so could result in a fault in the airbag deactivation system.**
- **Never leave the key in the airbag disabling switch as it could get damaged or enable or disable the airbag during driving.**
- **If for any reason an airbag is deactivated, reactivate it as soon as possible so that it can fulfil its protective function.**

Airbag system control lamps

It lights up on the combi-instrument

Fault in airbag system and seat belt tensioners.
Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

OFF — It lights up on the dash panel

Front passenger front airbag disabled.
Check whether the airbag should remain disabled

ON — It lights up on the dash panel

Front passenger airbag enabled.
The control lamp switches off automatically 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

If the airbag and seat belt tensioner system control lamp remains on or flashes, it indicates a malfunction in the airbag and seat belt tensioner system ››› ⚠. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

If the front passenger airbag is deactivated, the warning lamp **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** remains lit on the dash panel to remind you that »

the airbag is deactivated. If, with the front passenger airbag deactivated, this lamp does not remain lit or if it is lit together with the control lamp on the dash panel, there is a fault in the airbag system ››› ⚠. If the control lamp is flashing, there is a fault in the disabling of the airbag system ››› ⚠. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a fault in the airbag and seat belt tensioner system, the airbags and seat belts may not trigger correctly, may fail to trigger or may even trigger unexpectedly.

- **The vehicle occupants run the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **Do not mount a child seat in the front passenger seat or remove the mounted child seat! The front passenger front airbag may deploy during an accident in spite of the fault.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Always pay attention to any lit control lamps and to the corresponding descriptions and instructions to avoid damage to the vehicle or harm to the occupants.

Transporting children safely

Safety for children

Introduction

For safety reasons, as we have learned from accident statistics, we recommend that children under 12 years of age travel in the rear seats. Depending on their age, height and weight, children travelling in rear seats must use a child seat or a seat belt. For safety reasons, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat, behind the front passenger seat or in the centre back seat.

The physical laws involved and the forces acting in a collision apply also to children ››› page 71. But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce the risk of injuries, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the SEAT Original Accessories Programme, which includes systems for all ages made by “Peke” (not for all countries) (see www.seat.com).

These systems have been especially designed and approved, complying with the ECE-R44. regulation.

SEAT recommends securing the child seats shown on the website as described below:

- Child seats in the opposite direction of travel (group 0+): ISOFIX and support bracket (Peke G0 Plus + ISOFIX Base (RWF)).
- Child seats in the direction of travel (group 1): ISOFIX and Top Tether (Peke G1 ISOFIX DUO Plus).
- Child seats directed towards the front of the vehicle for group 2: safety belt and ISOFIX (RÖMER KIDFIX XP©).
- Child seats directed towards the front of the vehicle for group 3: safety belt and ISOFIX (TATAKI MAXI PLUS©).

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and note ››› page 81.

We recommend you always carry the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 24.

Read and always observe the safety information included in the following chapters:

- Safety distance with respect to the passenger airbag **››› page 74**.
- Objects between the passenger and the passenger side airbag **››› ⚠ in Front airbags on page 76**.

The passenger side front airbag, when enabled, is a serious risk for a child that is facing backward since the airbag can strike the seat with such force that it can cause serious or fatal injuries. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.

Therefore we strongly recommend you to transport children on the rear seats. This is the safest location in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch **››› page 78**. When transporting children, use a child seat suitable for the age and size of each child **››› page 82**.

⚠ WARNING

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and project it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger front airbag has been disabled. Risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger front airbag must always be disabled ››› page 78, Activation and deactivation of front passenger airbag*. If the passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest, most upright position. If it is a fixed seat, it should be moved to the rearmost position possible.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to deactivate the airbag, the vehicle must be taken to a technical service. Do not forget to reconnect the airbag when an adult wants to sit in the front passenger seat.**
- **All vehicle occupants, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**
- **Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other vehicle occupants.**
- **If children assume an improper sitting position when the vehicle is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly important if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; as this could cause serious injury or even death.**
- **A suitable child seat can protect your child!**
- **Never leave a child alone in the child seat or inside the vehicle because depending on the season, very high temperatures may be reached inside a parked vehicle, which could be fatal.**
- **Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child seat, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted and the seat belt should be properly in place ››› page 69.**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat ››› page 82, Child seats.**

»

- When a child seat is mounted in the rear seats, the door child-proof lock should be activated ››› page 133.

Child seats

Safety instructions

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 23.

⚠ WARNING

When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.

- Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ››› page 81.

⚠ WARNING

The retaining rings are designed only for use with "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* system child seats.

- Never secure other child seats that do not have the "ISOFIX" or Top Tether* system, or retaining belts or objects to the fastening rings - this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.
- Ensure that the child seat is secured correctly using the "ISOFIX" and Top Tether* securing rings.

⚠ WARNING

An undue installation of the safety seat will increase the risk of injury in the event of a crash.

- Never tie the retainer strap to a hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never secure or tie luggage or other items to the lower anchorages (ISOFIX) or the upper ones (Top Tether).

Categorisation of child seats into groups

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

Child seats are subject to the regulation ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation.

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

Group 0 Up to 10 kg (up to around 9 months)

Group 0+ Up to 13 kg (up to around 18 months)

Group 1 from 9 to 18 kg (up to approx. 4 years old)

Group 2 from 15 to 25 kg (up to approx. 7 years old)

Group 3 from 22 to 36 kg (up to approx. 7 years old)

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 standard bear the test mark ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it).

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

SEAT recommends you use child seats from the **Original Accessories Catalogue**. These child seats have been designed and tested for use in SEAT vehicles. You can find the right child seat for your model and age group at SEAT dealers.

Child seats by approval category

Child seats may have the approval category of universal, semi-universal, vehicle specific (all according to the ECE-R 44 standard) or i-Size (according to the ECE-R 129 standard).

- **Universal**: child seats with universal approval can be installed in all vehicles. There is no need to consult any list of models. In the case of universal approval for ISOFIX, the child seat is additionally provided with a Top Tether belt.

- **Semi-universal**: semi-universal approval, in addition to the standard requirements of universal approval, requires safety devices to lock the child seat, which require additional testing. Child seats with semi-universal approval include a list of vehicle models for which they can be installed.
- **Vehicle-specific**: vehicle-specific approval requires a dynamic test of the child seat for each vehicle model separately. Child seats with vehicle-specific approval also include a list of vehicle models for which they can be installed.
- **i-Size**: child seats with i-Size approval must meet the requirements prescribed in the ECE-R 129 standard in relation to installation and safety. Child seat manufacturers can tell you which seats have i-Size approval for this vehicle.

Attachment systems

Depending on the country, different attachment systems are used for safely installing child seats.

Attachment systems overview

- **ISOFIX**: ISOFIX is a standardised attachment system allowing quick and safe attachment of child seats in the vehicle. ISOFIX attachment establishes a rigid connection between the child seat and the car body.

The child seat has two rigid attachment clips, called connectors. These connectors are fitted into the ISOFIX attachment rings found between the seat cushion and the backrest of the vehicle's back seat (on the sides). ISOFIX attachment systems are used mainly in Europe ››› page 27. If necessary, ISOFIX attachment may have to be supplemented with a Top Tether belt or a support bracket.

- **Automatic three-point seat belt**. Whenever possible, it is preferable to attach the child seats with the ISOFIX system rather than attaching them with an automatic three-point seat belt ››› page 25.

Additional attachment:

- **Top Tether**: the Top Tether belt is guided over the back of the rear seat and attached to an anchor point with a hook. Anchor points are located at the back of the rear seat backrest on the boot side ››› page 30. The rings for retaining the Top Tether belt are marked with an anchor symbol.
- **Support bracket**: some child seats rest on the floor of the vehicle with a support bracket. The support bracket prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of impact. Child seats fitted with a support bracket should only be used in the passenger seat and side rear seats ››› ⚠. For the assembly of this type of seat you should also consult the list of approved vehicles for this assembly, available in the instructions for child restraint systems.

Recommended systems for attaching child seats

SEAT recommends attaching child seats as follows:

- **Baby carriers or child seats in the opposite direction of travel:** ISOFIX and support bracket or iSize.
- **Child seats in the direction of travel:** ISOFIX and Top Tether.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the support bracket can cause serious or fatal injury.

- **Make sure the support bracket is correctly and safely installed.**

Emergencies

Self-help

Emergency equipment

Emergency warning triangle*

The use of reflective warning triangles is obligatory in emergencies in some countries. As are the first aid kit and a set of spare light bulbs.

The warning triangle is under the storage compartment which is located under the luggage compartment floor.

Note

- **The warning triangle is not part of the vehicle's standard equipment.**
- **The warning triangle should meet legal requirements.**

First-aid kit and fire extinguisher*

The first-aid kit can go in the storage compartment which is located under the luggage compartment floor.

The fire extinguisher* is attached to the luggage compartment carpet with Velcro.

Note

- **The first-aid kit and the fire extinguisher are not part of the vehicle's standard equipment.**
- **The first aid kit must comply with legal requirements.**
- **Observe the expiry date of the contents of the first aid kit. After it has expired you should purchase a new one.**
- **The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.**
- **Ensure that the fire extinguisher is fully functional. The fire extinguisher should, therefore, be checked regularly. The sticker on the fire extinguisher will inform you of the next date for checking.**
- **Before acquiring accessories and emergency equipment see the instructions in "Accessories and spares" ››› page 307.**

Vehicle tools

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 53

Depending on the equipment, the tools and anti-puncture kit* are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

The tool kit includes:

- Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts*
- Towline anchorage
- Box spanner for wheel bolts*
- Jack*
- Wire hook for pulling off the wheel covers* / wheel bolt cap clip.

Some of the items listed are only provided in certain model versions, or are optional extras.

WARNING

- **The factory-supplied jack is only designed for changing wheels on this model. On no account attempt to use it for lifting heavier vehicles or other loads. Risk of injury.**
- **Use the jack only on a firm, level ground.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack. Risk of accident.**
- **If work is to be carried out underneath the vehicle, this must be secured by suitable means. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.**

Note

The jack does not generally require any maintenance. If required, it should be greased using universal type grease.

Tyre repair

TMS (Tyre Mobility System)*

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 52

The Anti-puncture kit* (Tyre Mobility System) will reliably seal punctures caused by the penetration of a foreign body of up to about **4 mm** in diameter. **Do not remove foreign objects, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.**

After inserting the sealant residue in the tyre, you must again check the tyre pressure about 10 minutes after starting the engine.

You should only use the tyre mobility set if the vehicle is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the procedure and you have the necessary tyre mobility set! Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.

Do not use the tyre sealant in the following cases:

- If the wheel rim has been damaged.
- In outside temperatures below -20°C (-4°F).
- In the event of cuts or perforations in the tyre greater than 4 mm.
- If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre.
- If the sealant bottle has passed its use by date.

⚠ WARNING

Using the tyre mobility system can be dangerous, especially when filling the tyre at the roadside. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:

- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible. Park it at a safe distance from surrounding traffic to fill the tyre.**
- **Ensure the ground on which you park is flat and solid.**
- **All passengers and particularly children must keep a safe distance from the work area.**
- **Turn on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Use the tyre mobility system only if you are familiar with the necessary procedures. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.**
- **The tyre mobility set is intended for temporary emergency use only until you can reach the nearest specialised workshop.**
- **Replace the repaired tyre with the tyre mobility set as soon as possible.**
- **The sealant is a health hazard and must be cleaned immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.**
- **Always keep the tyre mobility set out of the reach of small children.**
- **Always stop the engine, apply the handbrake lever firmly and engage gear if using a manual gearbox, in order to reduce the risk of vehicle involuntary movement.**

⚠ WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant does not have the same performance properties as a conventional tyre.

- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**
- **Drive for only 10 minutes at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.**

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of used or expired sealant observing any legal requirements.

Note

- **A new bottle of sealant can be purchased at SEAT dealerships.**
- **Take into account the separate instruction manual of the tyre mobility set* manufacturer.**

Contents of the tyre mobility system*

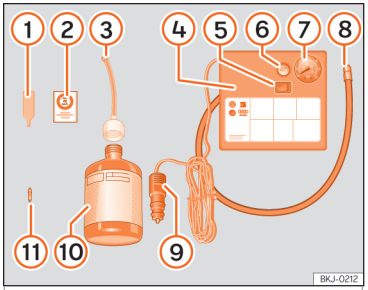


Fig. 96 Standard display: contents of the anti-puncture kit.

The anti-puncture kit is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It includes the following components ››› Fig. 96:

1. Valve insert remover
2. A sticker to be adhered to the instrument cluster, within the driver's visual field, to remind that the maximum advisable speed “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph”
3. Filler tube with cap
4. Air compressor
5. ON/OFF switch
6. Air bleed screw (it can also be integrated in the inflator tube).
7. Warning provided by tyre pressure monitoring system (it can also be integrated in the inflator tube).
8. Tube for inflating tyres
9. 12 volt connector
10. Bottle of sealant
11. Spare tyre valve

The **valve insert remover** (1) has a gap at the lower end for the valve insert. The valve insert can only be screwed or unscrewed in this way. This also applies to its replacement part (11).

⚠ WARNING

When inflating the wheel, the air compressor and the inflator tube may become hot.

- **Protect hands and skin from hot parts.**
- **Do not place the hot flexible inflator tube or hot air compressor on flammable material.**
- **Allow them to cool before storing the device.**
- **If it is not possible to inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bars (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too badly damaged. The sealant is not in a good condition to seal the tyre. Do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.**

⚠ CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after a maximum of 8 operational minutes to avoid overheating! Before switching on the air compressor again, let it cool for several minutes.

Check after 10 minutes of driving

Screw in the inflator tube ››› Fig. 96 (8) again and check the pressure on the gauge (7).

1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower:

- **Stop the vehicle!** The tyre cannot be sealed sufficiently with the tyre mobility set.
- You should obtain professional assistance ››› ⚠.

1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure to the correct value again.
- Carefully resume your journey, without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph), until you reach the nearest specialised workshop and replace the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Do not continue driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower.**
- **Seek specialist assistance.**

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

Changing the windscreen and rear window wiper blades

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 61.

Perfect windscreen wiper blade condition is essential for clear vision. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately.

The windscreen wiper blades are supplied as standard with a layer of graphite. This layer is responsible for ensuring that the wipe is silent. If the graphite layer is damaged, the noise of the water as it is wiped across the windscreen will be louder.

Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly. **If the wipers scrape across the glass**, they should be changed if they are damaged, or cleaned if they are dirty ››› ❗.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windscreen wiper arms might be incorrect. They should be checked by a specialised workshop and corrected if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive unless you have good visibility through all windows!

- **Clean the windscreen wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **The wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the glass.**
- **Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. This could damage the windscreen wiper blades.**
- **Never move any windscreen wiper by hand. This could cause damage.**
- **To prevent damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arms, the latter should only be lifted off the windscreen when in service position.**

ⓘ Note

- **The windscreen wiper arms can be moved to the service position only when the bonnet is properly closed.**
- **You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.**

Towing or tow-starting

General information

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 58.

Tow-starting means starting the engine of the vehicle while another pulls it.

Towing means one vehicle pulling another that is not roadworthy.

If the vehicle comes with the Keyless Access system, towing is only allowed with the ignition on!

The vehicle battery drains if the vehicle is towed with the engine switched off and the ignition connected. Depending on the battery charge status, the drop in voltage may be so large, even after just a few minutes, that no electrical device in the vehicle may work e.g. the hazard warning lights. In vehicles with the Keyless Access system, the steering wheel could lock up.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle has no electrical power, the brake lights, turn signals and all other »

lights will no longer function. Do not have the vehicle towed away. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of accidents is high when tow-starting, for example, the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.

CAUTION

If there is no oil in the gearbox or no lubricant in the automatic transmission the car may only be towed with the driven wheels lifted clear of the road, or transported on a special car transporter or trailer.

CAUTION

Do not tow a vehicle for more than 50 m in attempt to start it. There is risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

Note

- Please observe related legal requirements.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights of both vehicles. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.
- The tow rope must not be twisted. Otherwise the front tow line anchorage could be pulled off the vehicle.

Indications for tow-starting

Vehicle's should not generally be tow-started. The jump start should be used instead ››› page 59.

For technical reasons, towing the following vehicles is **not** allowed:

- Vehicles with an automatic gearbox.
- If the vehicle battery is discharged, because in vehicles with the Keyless Access locking and ignition system the steering remains locked and the electronic parking brake cannot be deactivated nor can the electronic lock of the steering column be released if they are activated.
- If the battery is flat, it is possible that the engine control units may not operate correctly.

However, if the vehicle must absolutely be tow-started (in the case of manual gearboxes):

- Engage the 2nd or 3rd gear.
- Keep the clutch pressed down.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- Once the engine starts, press the clutch and disengage the gear to avoid colliding with the towing vehicle.

Note

The vehicle can only be tow-started if the electronic parking brake and, if appropriate, the electronic lock of the steering column are deactivated. If the vehicle has no power supply or there is an electric system fault, the engine must be tow-started to deactivate the electronic parking brake and the electronic lock of the steering column.

Anchoring the front tow line

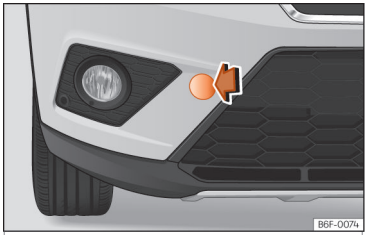


Fig. 97 Right side of the front bumper: remove the lid.

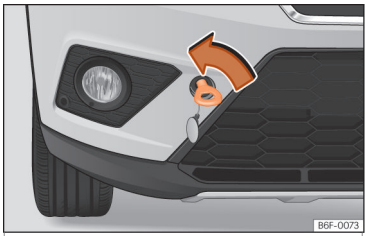


Fig. 98 Right side of the front bumper: towline anchorage screwed in.

The front towline anchorage is only mounted if the vehicle has to be towed.

There is a cover with an opening into which the towline anchorage is screwed on the right part of the front bumper.

– Take the towline anchorage from the on-board tool set.

– Remove the cover by pressing down on its right-hand side until it is unclipped ››› Fig. 97.

– Bolt the anchorage to its limit to the *left*, in the direction of the arrow ››› Fig. 98.

After use, unscrew the towline anchorage and fit the cover back on the bumper. Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle tool kit. The towline anchorage should always be kept in the vehicle.

Rear towline anchorage

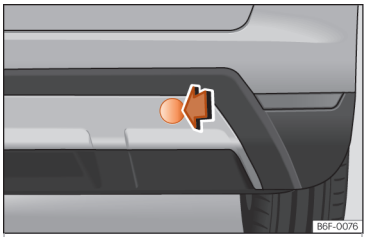


Fig. 99 Right side of the rear bumper: cover-cap.

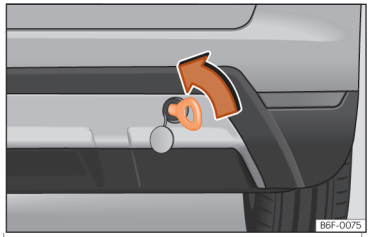


Fig. 100 Right side of the rear bumper: towline anchorage screwed in.

The rear towline anchorage should only be mounted if you wish to tow another vehicle.

On the right of the rear bumper there is a cover which covers a threaded hole.

– Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle tool set ››› page 84.

– Remove the cover by pressing down on its right-hand side until it is unclipped ››› Fig. 99.

– Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go ››› Fig. 100 and tighten with the wheel brace.

After use, unscrew the towline anchorage and put it back in the vehicle tool kit. Replace the cover on the bumper. The towline anchorage should always be kept in the vehicle. »

⚠ WARNING

- **If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing (accident risk).**
- **If your car has a towing bracket, only use special towing ropes. Risk of accident!**

ⓘ CAUTION

In vehicles fitted with a towing bracket, only use special tow bars to prevent damage to the ball joint. These tow bars have been specially approved for use with towing brackets.

Towing vehicles with a manual gearbox

Towing is relatively straightforward.

Please observe the relevant instructions ››› page 87.

The vehicle can be towed using a tow bar or tow rope in the normal way, with all four wheels on the road; it can also be towed with either the front or rear wheels lifted off the road. The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h** (30 mph).

Towing a vehicle equipped with automatic gearbox

Certain restrictions must be observed when towing your vehicle.

Please observe the relevant instructions ››› page 87.

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or tow rope in the normal way, with all four wheels on the ground. When doing so, please note the following points:

- Make sure the **selector lever is in the N** position.
- The vehicle must not be towed faster than **50 km/h** (30 mph).
- The vehicle must not be towed further than **50 km (30 miles)**. Reason: when the engine is not running, the gearbox oil pump does not work and the gearbox is not adequately lubricated for higher speeds or longer distances.

If the vehicle has to be towed with a **breakdown truck**, it must only be suspended at the *front* wheels. Reason: the drive shafts are located on the front wheels. If the car is towed with the rear wheels lifted off the road (i.e. travelling backwards), the drive shafts also turn *backwards*. The planetary gears in the automatic gearbox then turn at such high speeds that the gearbox will be severely damaged in a short time.

ⓘ Note

- **If it is not possible to tow the vehicle in the normal way, or if it has to be towed further than 50 km (30 miles), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.**
- **Should the power supply to the selector lever be interrupted in position P, the selector lever will be locked. Before the vehicle can be recovered/manoeuvred you must manually release the selector lever.**

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

In general, a fuse can be assigned to various electrical components. Likewise, an electrical component can be protected by several fuses.

Only replace fuses when the cause of the problem has been solved. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

The high voltages in the electrical system can give serious electrical shocks, causing burns and even death!

- **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
- **Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.**

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses or bridging a current circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injury.

- **Never use a fuse with a higher value. Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.**
- **Never repair a fuse.**
- **Never replace a fuse by a metal strip, staple or similar.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent damage to the vehicle's electric system, before replacing a fuse always turn off the ignition, the lights and all electrical elements and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **If you replace a fuse with higher-rating fuse, you could cause damage to another part of the electrical system.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to prevent the entry of dust or humidity as they can damage the electrical system.**
- **Always carefully remove the fuse box covers and refit them correctly to avoid problems with your vehicle.**

Note

- **One component may have more than one fuse.**
- **Several components may run on a single fuse.**
- **In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be changed by a specialised workshop.**
- **Positions not containing a fuse do not appear in the following tables.**
- **Some of the equipment listed in the tables below pertain only to certain versions of the model or are optional extras.**
- **Please note that the above lists, while correct at the time of printing, are subject to change.**

Fuses to the left of the instrument panel

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 50

Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.

No.	Consumer/Amps	
1	Tow Hook	20
2	Cigarette lighter /Power point	20
3	Sound amplifier	30
6	Central locking	40
8	Heating fan/Climatronic	30
10	Tow Hook	20
13	Lights switch, steering column LSS and SMLS, diagnostic port, rain/light sensor	7.5

»

No.	Consumer/Amps	
14	Steering Column LSS: wiper control	10
15	Instrument panel	7.5
16	Right Lights Power Supply	40
17	Right Door Window Control	30
18	Windscreen wipers	30
19	Radio, Multimedia System	25
20	Heated Rear Window	30
21	SCR Control Unit	30
23	Rear View Camera	7.5
24	Connectivity Box, external audio source wiring (Double USB-Aux IN), telephone amplifier, MIB display	5
25	Steering Column Electronics (MFL)	7.5
26	Gateway	7.5
27	Active Suspension Control Unit	7.5
28	DWA Sensor	7.5
29	DWA Horn	7.5
31	9AA/9AB climate control unit	7.5
	9AK Climatronic control unit	15
32	Steering Column LSS, without Kessy	7.5
33	Left Door Window Control	30
35	Left Lights Power Supply	40

No.	Consumer/Amps	
36	Signal Horn	20
37	Heated seats control unit	30
38	BCM Power C63	30
39	BSD, PDC, MRR	10
40	Light switch, diagnosis input, headlamp range regulator, LSS steering column: lamps, halogen lamps, switch, reverse gear, electrochromic mirror, RKA without radio.	7.5
41	Regulation of unfolded exterior mirrors,	7.5
42	Clutch pedal, ignition relays, AA pressure sensor	7.5
43	DWP relay coil, rear window wiper motor, heated nozzles	15
44	Airbag	7.5
45	Leimo Plus left headlight	7.5
46	Leimo Plus right headlight	7.5
48	Steering Column Lock, Kessy Control Unit	7.5
49	SCR Relay Coil	7.5
53	Automatic gearbox lever, ZSS	7.5
58	Double Water Pump	7.5
59	Heated rear view mirrors	10

No.	Consumer/Amps	
60	Tow Hook	30
61	Tow Hook	30

Fuse arrangement in engine compartment

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 50

Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.

No.	Consumer/Amps	
1	MPI Engine Injection Module	10
	TSI Engine Injection Module	15
	Diesel Engine Injection Module	30
2	Fuel metering valve (TJ4/T6P/TJ7), Low temperature coolant pump (TJ4/T6P/TJ7); Oil Pressure Regulating Valve (TJ1), Coolant Valve AGR (TJ1), High and Low Water Bumps (TJ1), SCR relay coil	7.5
3	Lambda probes	15
4	Petrol engine pump relay (MPI), Gauge control unit (TSI and diesel)	15

No.	Consumer/Amps	
5	Pressure transducer, EPW Solenoid Valve, TOG Sensor, PWM Electric fan, Camshaft Control Valve, Active Carbon Tank Valve and Oil Pressure Regulating Valve (TSI)	10
6	Ignition coils (MPI and TSI)	20
	Glow plug relay, Suction hose resistance (diesel)	7.5
7	Vacuum pump (TSI)	15
8	Injectors and EKP Relay Coil (MPI), Fuel metering valve (diesel)	10
9	Servo sensor	7.5
10	Vref Battery: Gateway, BDM and BCM	7.5
14	Engine Injection Module, Main Engine Relay, ESC	7.5
15	Automatic Gearbox DQ200 and AQ160	30
17	50 Diag	7.5
18	Starter Motor	30
20	ESC (Pump)	60
	ABS (Pump)	40
21	ESC/ABS (Valves)	25
24	TH4 Electric fan without A/C for moderate climate countries	30
25	TH4 fan with A/C or T5I for moderate climate countries	20
	PTC1	40
26	TJ1/TJ4/TJ7/T6P or TH4/T5I Electric fan for warm climate countries	50
27	TH4 fan with A/C or T5I for moderate climate countries	30
	PTC2	40
28	PTC3	40

Changing bulbs

General notes

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 51

Changing bulbs requires a certain degree of practical skill.

If you choose to change the engine compartment lamps yourself, remember that it is a dangerous area ››› in Safety notes for work in the engine compartment on page 316.

Always use identical bulbs with the same designation. The name can be found on the base of the bulb holder.

Depending on how equipped the vehicle is, there are different sets of headlights and tail lights:

- Halogen headlights.
- Full-LED main headlights*
- Halogen headlights with LED daytime running lights*
- Rear bulb light
- LED rear light*

Full-LED headlight system*

Full-LED headlights handle all light functions (daylight, side light, turn signal, dipped beam and route light) with light emitting diodes (LEDs) as a light source.

Full-LED headlights are designed to last the lifetime of the vehicle and the bulbs cannot be replaced. In case of headlight failure, go to an authorised workshop to have it replaced.

⚠ WARNING

- **Take particular care when working on components in the engine compartment if the engine is warm, there is a risk of burns.**
- **Bulbs are highly sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.**
- **When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp parts in the headlight housing.**

»

CAUTION

- Remove the ignition key before working on the electric system. Otherwise, a short circuit could occur.
- Switch off the lights or parking lights before you change a bulb.

For the sake of the environment

Please ask your specialist retailer how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.

Note

- Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the front lights, the fog lights, the tail lights and the turn signals may be temporarily misted. This has no influence on the useful life of the lighting system. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted. However, the edges may continue to be misted.
- Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also that of all other road users.
- Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands, use a cloth or paper towel instead. The residue left by the fingerprints would vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, they will be deposited on the reflector and will impair its surface.
- Depending on the level of equipment fitted in the vehicle, LEDs may be used for part or all of the interior and/or exterior lighting. LEDs have an estimated life that exceeds that of the vehicle. If an LED light fails, go to an authorised workshop for its replacement.

Change the front bulbs

Main beam headlight bulb

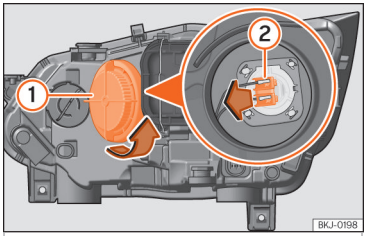


Fig. 101 In the engine compartment: main beam lamp.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the cover (1) anti-clockwise and take it out ››› Fig. 101.

– Remove the bulb connector (2) by pulling it outwards.

– Remove the bulb by pulling it out and fit the new one.

– Fit the bulb connector (2).

– Fit cover (1), turning it towards the right.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Dipped beam headlight

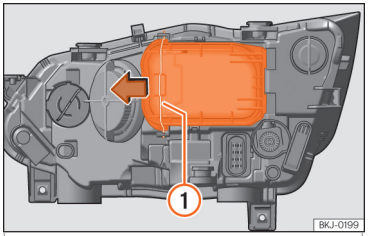


Fig. 102 In the engine compartment: remove the lid.

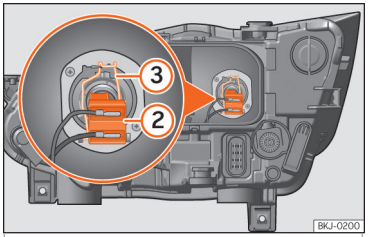


Fig. 103 In the engine compartment: dipped beam lamp.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Move the loop ››› Fig. 102 ① in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

– Remove the bulb connector ››› Fig. 103 ②.

– Unclip the retainer spring ››› Fig. 103 ③ pressing inwards to the right.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that the lug on the base fits into the recess on the reflector.

– Fit the connector.

– Fit the cover and close the strap. Make sure that the gasket sits well on the casing cover during the operation.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Turn signal light and DRL (daytime running light)[1)]

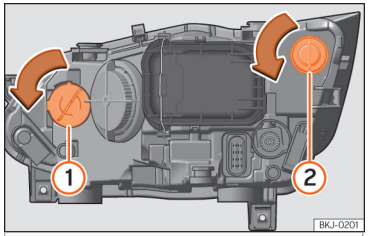


Fig. 104 In the engine compartment: turn signal light bulb ① and DRL (daytime running light) bulb ②.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the bulb holder ››› Fig. 104 ① or ② to the left and pull.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anticlockwise at the same time.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

[1)] In headlight versions with LED DRL, this light source cannot be replaced. It is designed to last the length of the vehicle's service life. In case of failure, go to an authorised workshop to have it replaced.

Fog light bulb

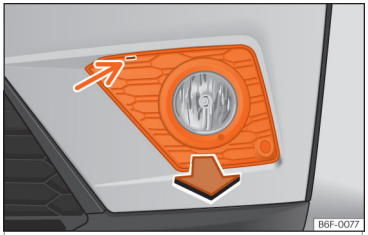


Fig. 105 Fog light: remove the grille

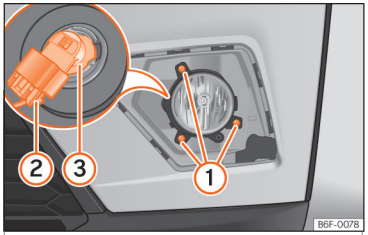


Fig. 106 Fog light: detach the bulb holder

Follow the steps indicated:

1. Lever the groove with a screwdriver ››› Fig. 105 (arrow). Next, unclip the clips located on the edge of the grille, pulling on it.
2. Remove the 3 screws ››› Fig. 106 (1) and remove the fog light.
3. Remove the bulb connector (2).
4. Turn the bulb holder (3) to the left and pull.
5. Remove the bulb by pressing on it and turning it anticlockwise at the same time.
6. Replace the bulb, making sure that the fixing guides are in the right position and then press it and turn it clockwise.
7. To install the headlight go back through the above steps in reverse.
8. Check that the bulb works properly.

Change the rear bulbs

Rear bulbs (in the side panel)

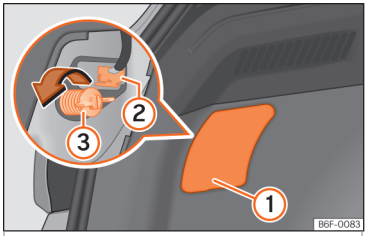


Fig. 107 Boot: access to the bolt securing the tail light unit.

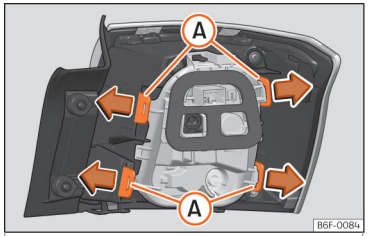


Fig. 108 Retaining tabs on reverse side of tail light.

Follow the steps indicated:

1. Check which of the bulbs is defective.
2. Open the rear lid.
3. Remove the lid, levering the flat side of a screwdriver into the recess ››› Fig. 107 (1).
4. Remove the bulb connector (2).
5. Unscrew the light securing bolt (3) by hand or using a screwdriver.
6. Remove the light from the body, gently pulling it toward you, and place on a clean, smooth surface.
7. Remove the bulb holder unlocking the retaining tabs ››› Fig. 108 (A).
8. Change the damaged bulb.
9. To refit follow the steps in reverse order, taking special care when fitting the bulb

holder. The securing tabs must click into place.

CAUTION

Take care when removing the rear light unit to make sure there is no damage to the paintwork or any of its components.

Note

- **Make sure you have a soft cloth ready to place under the glass on the rear light unit, to avoid any scratches.**
- **For LED lights, you can only change the turn signal and reverse light bulbs.**

Rear lights (in the rear lid)

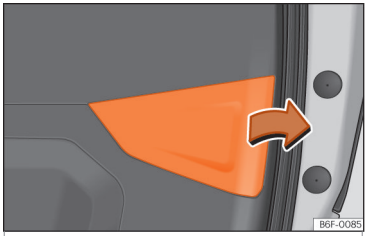


Fig. 109 Rear lid open: remove the lid.

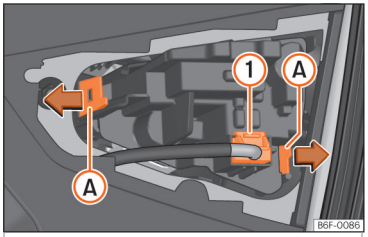


Fig. 110 Remove the bulb holder.

Follow the steps indicated:

1. Check which of the bulbs is defective.
2. Open the rear lid.
3. Remove the rear lid cover in the direction indicated ››› Fig. 109.
4. Remove the bulb connector ››› Fig. 110 (1).
5. Remove the bulb holder unlocking the retaining tabs (A).
4. Change the damaged bulb.
6. Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.
7. Check that the new bulb works properly.
8. Carry out the same actions in reverse order for assembly and pay special attention to placing the bulb holder, ensuring that the tabs are properly secured.

Note

- **For LED lights, you can only change the turn signal and reverse light bulbs.**

Number plate light

Note

Number plate lights use LED technology. LEDs have an estimated life that exceeds than that of the car. If a light with LEDs fails, go to an authorised workshop for replacement.

Side turn signals

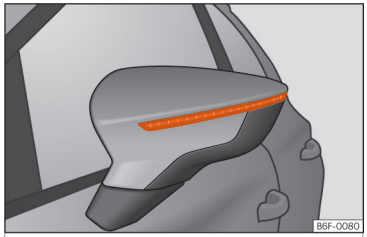


Fig. 111 Turn signal integrated in the rear view mirror

The side turn signals are LEDS and are integrated in the rear view mirrors. »

In case of failure, go to an authorised workshop to have it replaced.

Additional brake light

Given the difficulty involved in the replacement of this light it should be done by Technical Services.

Changing the interior bulbs

Interior light and front reading lights

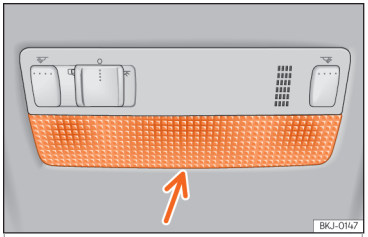


Fig. 112 Front reading light.

To remove the glass

– Insert a fine screwdriver between the casing and the glass ››› Fig. 112.

– Carefully remove the glass, levering it to avoid possible damage.

To replace the bulbs

– Pull the bulbs outwards.

– To remove the central bulb, hold and press to one side.

Assembly

– Proceed in the reverse order, pressing gently on the outer edge of the side light.

– First fit the glass with the fastening tabs over the frame of the switch. Next press the front part until the two long tabs click on the support.

Note

In LED courtesy lights it is not possible to replace the light sources. If the light does not work, take the vehicle to an official Service.

Luggage compartment light*

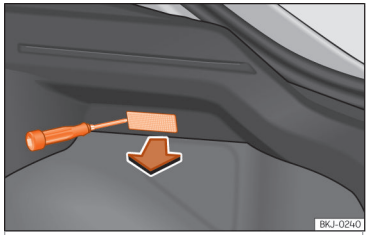


Fig. 113 Boot light.

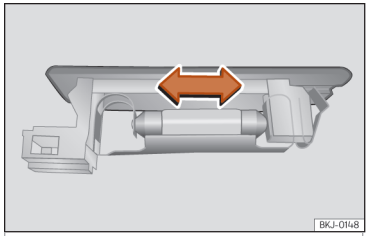


Fig. 114 Boot light.

– Extract the bulb by pressing on its inside edge using the flat side of a screwdriver ››› Fig. 113.

– Disconnect the cable.

– Press the bulb sideways and remove it from its housing ››› Fig. 114.

– Change the bulb.
– Connect the cable again.
– Refit the bulb and press it in until it engages.

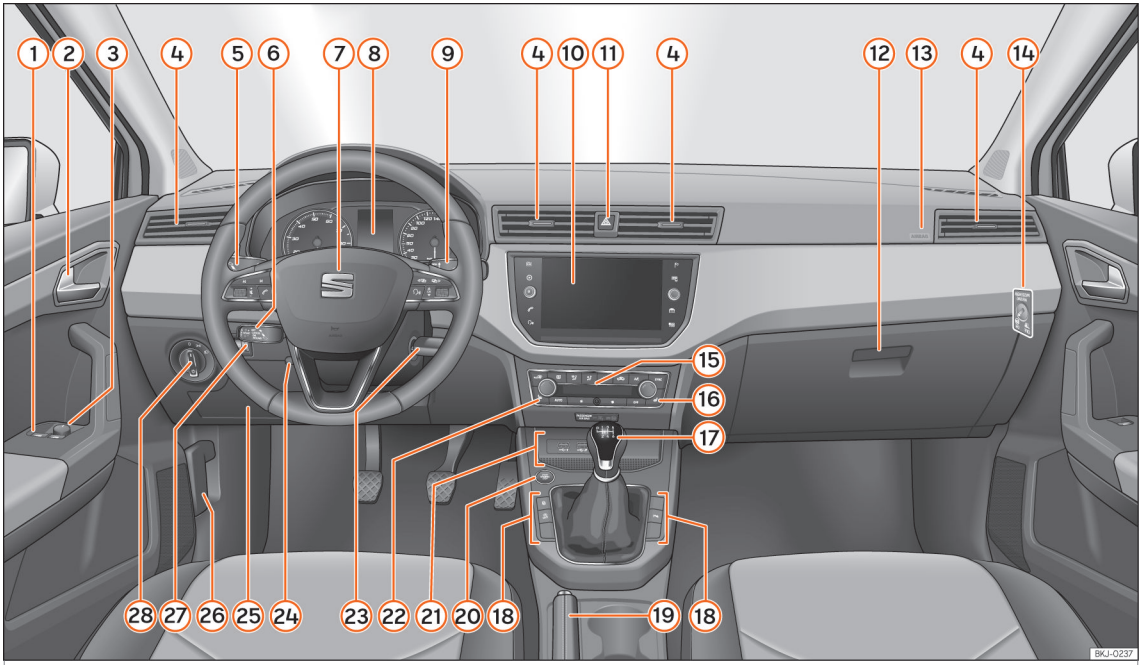


Fig. 115 Dash panel.

Operation

Controls and displays

General instrument panel

(1) Electric window controls 136
(2) Door release lever
(3) Control for adjusting electric exterior mirrors 147
(4) Air vents
(5) Lever for:
- Turn signals/main beam headlights 140
- Cruise control* 250

(6) Depending on equipment fitted:
- Lever for cruise control 250

(7) Steering wheel with horn and
- Driver airbag 74
- On-board computer controls 116
- Controls for radio, telephone, navigation and speech dialogue system 119
- Paddle levers for tiptronic gearshift (automatic gearbox) 236

(8) Instrument panel and warning lamps:
- Instruments 102
- Control and warning lamps 37

(9) Lever for:
- Windscreen wipers and washer ... 145
- Wipe and wash system* 145
- Multi-function display control* ... 108

(10) Infotainment system:
(11) Hazard warning lights 143
(12) Depending on the equipment, glove compartment with: 153
- CD player* and/or SD card* 194

(13) Front passenger airbag* 21
(14) Front passenger airbag disconnection switch* 78
(15) Switches for:
- Heating and ventilation 164
- Air conditioning* 166
- Climatronic* 168

(16) Front passenger seat heating control* 150
(17) Gear lever
- Manual gearbox 232
- Automatic gearbox 233

(18) Depending on the equipment, buttons for:
- Central locking* 129
- Start-Stop operation button 248
- SEAT Drive Profile 274
- Park assist system 276
- Tyre pressure monitoring* 329

(19) Handbrake lever 223
(20) Start-up push button (Keyless Access closing and start-up system) 220
(21) Depending on the equipment:
- USB/AUX-IN input 214
- Connectivity Box/Wireless Charger* 215

(22) Driver's seat heating control* 150
(23) Ignition lock (vehicles without Keyless Access) 217
(24) Steering column adjustment lever 20
(25) Fuse housing 91
(26) Lever for unlocking the bonnet 17
(27) Light range control* 144
(28) Light switch 139

Note

• Some of the equipment listed in this section is only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

• The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown in ››› page 101. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

Instruments and warning/control lamps

Dashboard

Introduction

Fig. 116 Related video: Dash panel

The vehicle can be fitted with a instrument panel digital lap timer or one Digital (SEAT Cockpit).

After switching the engine on with a 12-volt battery that is heavily discharged or newly changed some system settings (such as the time, the date, the personalised comfort settings and the programming) might be altered or deleted. Check and correct these settings once the battery is sufficiently charged.

⚠ WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury.

- **Do not operate the instrument panel controls when driving.**
- **To reduce the risk of accident and injury, only make adjustments to the instructions on the screen of the instrument panel and to the instructions on the screen of the Infotainment system when the vehicle is stationary.**

Analogue instrument panel

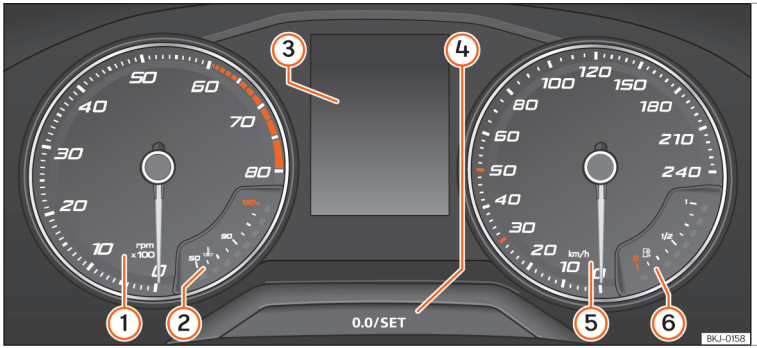


Fig. 117 Instrument panel, on dash panel.

Details of the instruments ››› Fig. 117:

① **Revolution counter** (with the engine running, in hundreds of revolutions per minute) ››› page 112.

② **Engine coolant temperature display** ››› page 114 or **natural gas gauge** in vehicles with natural gas engine (CNG) ››› page 114

③ **Displays on the screen** ››› page 106.

④ **Adjuster button and display.**

⑤ **Speedometer.**

⑥ **Fuel gauge** ››› page 113.

Digital instrument panel (SEAT Digital Cockpit)

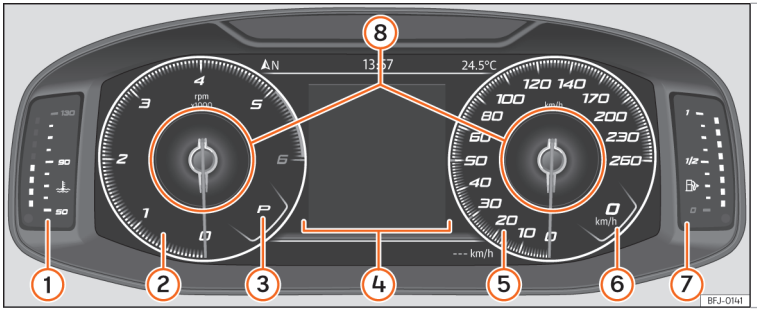


Fig. 118 SEAT Digital Cockpit on the instrument panel (classic view).

Details of the instruments:

① **Engine coolant temperature display** ››› page 114

② **Revolution counter**. Revolutions per minute the engine is running ››› page 112.

③ **Gear engaged or position of the selector lever currently selected**

④ **Screen display** ››› page 106

⑤ **Speedometer**

⑥ **Digital speed display**

⑦ **Fuel gauge** ››› page 113.

⑧ **Information Profile** ››› page 104.

The Digital SEAT Cockpit is an instrument panel digital with monochrome screen in colour high resolution. It has a 3 views accessible using the button VIEW of the multifunction steering wheel. By selecting different information profiles, indications other than the classic circular instruments can be displayed, such as navigation data, multimedia information or travel data.

The 3 views are:

- *Classic View*
- *Digital maps* (no information profiles)
- *Semicircular watches*

All views will display information on the screen about audio, phone, travel data, vehicle status, navigation[1] and driving aids[1].

In *Classic View* and *Semicircular watches* it is possible to customise the information displayed under **Information Profiles** ››› Fig. 118 ⑧.

Information profiles

With the option **INSTRUMENT PANEL** (Infotainment button CAR / 🚘 > **Vehicle function button > View > Instrument cluster**)

[1] Depending on the version.

you can choose between the different display options of the information that appears in the Digital SEAT Cockpit.

Classic View

The revolutions per minute and speedometer needles appear along the entire length ››› Fig. 118.

View 1, 2, 3 or AUTOMATIC*[1]

Personalisation of the information that appears in the Digital SEAT Cockpit. Only 2 of these items of information can be displayed at the same time, but the user chooses which to display, and in what order, by moving the finger vertically over the dials.

Depending on the version, the Views can be memorised by exiting the menu or keeping the **View** button pressed.

- **Consumption**. Graphic representation of the current consumption and digital display of the average consumption.
- **Audio**. Digital display of the current audio playback.
- **Altitude**. Digital display of the current altitude above sea level.
- **Compass**. Digital display of the compass.
- **Information about the final destination**. Digital display of the remaining travelling time, distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival.
- **Operating range**. Digital display of the remaining range.
- **Travel time**.
- **Route guidance**.
- **Journey**. Digital display of the distance travelled.
- **Assistance systems**. Graphic representation of different assistance systems.
- **Traffic signs**. Display of traffic signs detected.
- **Navigation**. Graphical representation of the navigation with arrows.

It may vary based on the features, the number and the contents of the selectable information profiles..

[1] Pre-set information depending on the "Driving mode" selected.

Navigation system in the SEAT Digital Cockpit*

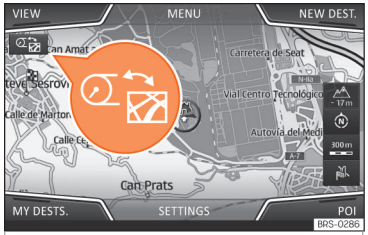


Fig. 119 Infotainment system: map transfer button

Depending on the features, the SEAT Digital Cockpit can display a detailed map. To do this, select the **Navigation** option in the menu menu on the instrument panel ››› page 107.

Depending on the features or the navigation map, it can be shown in the Digital SEAT Cockpit or on the Infotainment system or on both at the same time. If it is displayed only in the Infotainment system, the SEAT Digital Cockpit will only display the arrows for manoeuvres. »

Transfer of navigation map

Using the map transfer key ››› Fig. 119, the map is transferred from the Infotainment system to the Digital SEAT Cockpit and vice versa.

Using the right thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel, in the **Navigation** menu, you can transfer the map back to the Infotainment System.

Display indications

Possible indications on the instrument panel display

Different pieces of information can be displayed on the screen of the instrument panel, depending on the features of the vehicle.

- Doors, bonnet and rear lid open
- Warning and information messages
- Odometer
- Time ››› page 111
- Indications of the radio and navigation system
- Indications of the phone
- Outside temperature
- Indications of the compass
- Selector lever positions
- Gear-change recommendation ››› page 240
- Display of travel data (multifunction display) and menus for different settings ››› page 107
- Service interval display ››› page 115
- Speed warning ››› page 108
- Speed warning for winter tyres
- Start-Stop system status display ››› page 248
- Indication of the status of active cylinder management (ACT®) ››› page 244
- Low consumption driving
- Identifying letters on engine (LDM)
- Driver assistance system display ››› page 248
- Copyright

Doors, bonnet and rear lid open

When the vehicle is unlocked and while driving, the instrument panel display shows if any of the doors, the bonnet or rear lid are opened and, in some cases, it is also indicated by an audible warning. The display may vary according to the type of instrument panel fitted.

Selector lever positions (dual-clutch DSG®)

The current position of the selector lever is shown on the side of the lever and on the instrument panel display. When the lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position, in some cases, the gear engaged in each case is shown on the instrument panel display.

Outside temperature display

If the outside temperature is lower than approximately +4°C (+39°F), the "ice crystal symbol" ❄ on the outside temperature display also lights up. This symbol remains lit until the outside temperature exceeds +6°C (+43°F) ››› ⚠.

When the vehicle is stationary, when the auxiliary heater is switched on or when driving at very low speeds, the outside temperature indicated may be higher than the actual temperature due to the heat produced by the engine.

The margin of measurement ranges from -45°C (-49°F) to +76°C (+169°F).

Driving recommendation

While driving, the instrument panel of certain vehicles may indicate a gear recommendation for saving fuel ››› page 240.

Odometer

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

The *partial odometer* (**trip**) shows the distance travelled since the last time it was reset to zero.

Vehicles with analogue instrument panel:

- Briefly press the button 0.0/SET ››› Fig. 117 (4) to reset the trip recorder to 0.
- Keep the button 0.0/SET (4) pressed for about 3 seconds and the previous value will be displayed.

Vehicles with digital instrument panel:

- Set the odometer to zero via the Infotainment system or the multifunction steering wheel ››› page 108.

Speed warning for winter tyres

If the maximum speed set is exceeded, this is displayed on the instrument panel ››› page 107.

The speed warning can be adjusted on the Infotainment system: using button CAR / and the **SETTINGS > Driver Assistance** ››› page 34 button.

Compass indication

Depending on the equipment, when the ignition is on, the instrument panel display indicates the direction in which you are driving with a symbol, e.g. NW for Northwest.

When the Infotainment system is on and there is no route guidance active, the graphic representation of a compass is also shown.

Low consumption driving*

Depending on the equipment, when driving, the display appears on the instrument panel when the vehicle is in low consumption status due to active cylinder management (ACT®)* ››› page 244.

Identifying letters on engine (LDM)

Vehicles with analogue instrument panel:

- Switch the ignition on, but do not start the engine.
- Hold the button 0.0/SET ››› Fig. 117 (4) down for more than 15 seconds to display the identifying letters of the vehicle engine.

Copyright

Legal text about the property rights and copyrights of the instrument cluster.

⚠ WARNING

Even when the outside temperature is higher than freezing temperature, some roads and bridges could be frozen.

- **The "ice crystal symbol" indicates that there may be a risk of freezing.**
- **At outside temperatures above +4°C (+39°F), there may be ice even when the "ice crystal symbol" is not on.**
- **The outside temperature sensor takes a guideline measurement.**

Note

- **There are different instrument panels and therefore the versions and instructions on the display may vary. In the case of displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the control warning lamps.**
- **Some indications on the instrument panel screen may be concealed by a sudden event, e.g. an incoming call.**
- **Depending on the equipment, some settings and instructions can be carried out or displayed on the infotainment system as well.**
- **If there are several warnings at the same time, the symbols will be displayed one after the other for a few seconds. The symbols will stay on until you remove the cause.**
- **If when switching on the ignition warnings are shown about existing faults, it might not be possible to change the settings or show the information as described. In this case, go to a specialised workshop and request a repair.**

Instrument panel menus

The number of menus and information items available will depend on the vehicle's electronics and features. »

A specialised workshop can programme or modify additional functions, according to the vehicle equipment. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this.

Some menu options can only be read when the vehicle is stationary.

- **Driving data** ››› page 108
- **Assistance systems**.
  - Front Assist On/Off ››› page 255
  - ACC (only display) ››› page 259
- **Navigation.**
- **Audio.**
- **Telephone.**
- **Vehicle status** ››› page 110

Service Menu

✓ Applies to vehicles with Active Info Display (Digital SEAT Cockpit)

In the Service menu various settings can be adjusted depending on the features.

Open the Service menu

To open up the **Service** menu, select the **Driving range** information profile while in the **Travel data** menu, and keep the OK key pressed on the multifunction steering wheel for approximately 4 seconds. When it is released, the **Service** menu will be displayed. Now you can browse through the menu using the keys on the multifunction steering wheel as usual.

Restart the service interval display

Select the **Service** menu and follow the instructions on the screen of the instrument panel.

Restart the oil service

Select the **Restore Oil service** menu and follow the instructions on the instrument panel display.

Restart journey data

Select the **Reset trip** menu and follow the instructions on the instrument panel display to reset the value.

Identifying letters on engine (LDM)

Select the menu **Engine code**. The identifying letters of the engine will be shown on the instrument cluster display at the bottom left.

Setting the clock

Select the **Time** menu and set the correct time by turning the right thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel.

Travel data (multifunction indicator)

The display of the travel data (multifunction display) shows different values about the journey and the consumption.

Change from one display to another

Vehicles without multifunction steering wheel:

- press the rocker switch TRIP on the windscreen wiper lever ››› page 117.

Vehicles with multifunction steering wheel:

- Turn the right thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel ››› page 118.

Changing memory (vehicles with analogue instrument cluster)

Press the OK/RESET button on the windscreen wiper lever or the OK button of the multifunction steering wheel.

Changing memory (vehicles with digital instrument cluster)

While in **Travel data > General information** press OK on the multi-function steering wheel to switch between the 3 memories[1]:

Since start The memory is deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours.

Since refuelling Display and storage of the journey data and the consumption values collected. When refuelling, the memory is deleted.

Long-term This memory contains travel data up to a maximum of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes, or up to a maximum of 1999.9 km or 9999.9 km. When one of these values is exceeded (varies depending on the version of the instrument panel), the memory is deleted.

Delete journey data presets

- Select the memory that you wish to erase.
- Hold the OK/RESET button of the multifunction steering wheel or the OK button of the multi-function wheel pressed down for about 2 seconds.

Select the instructions

In the Infotainment system, in the menu Vehicle settings, you can display different travel data ››› page 34.

Current fuel consumption The current fuel consumption display operates throughout the journey, in litres/100 km; and with the engine running and the vehicle stopped, in litres/hour.

Average fuel consumption The average fuel consumption is displayed after driving for approximately 300 metres.

Travelling time This indicates the hours (h) and minutes (min) since the ignition was switched on.

Operating range Approximate distance in km that can still be travelled if the same driving style is maintained.

Adblue Autonomy or **Autonomy** Approximate distance in km that can still be travelled with the current level of the AdBlue® tank with the same driving style. The indication appears from a range of less than 2,400 km and cannot be deactivated.[2]

Distance travelled Distance covered in km (m) after switching on the ignition.

Average speed The average speed will be shown after driving for approximately 100 metres.

Digital speed Current speed displayed in digital format.

Convenience consumers Displays a list of the connected comfort systems that increase energy consumption, e.g. air conditioning.

Set a speed warning

- Select the display **Speed warning at --- km/h** or **Speed warning at --- mph**.
- Press the button OK/RESET on the windscreen wiper lever or the button OK on the multifunction steering wheel to store the current speed and activate the warning.
- *Activate:* adjust to the desired speed within 5 seconds using the rocker switch TRIP on the windscreen wiper lever or by turning the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel. Next, press the button OK/RESET or OK »

[1] This will show all data on the display at the same time: distance travelled, average consumption, average speed and autonomy.

[2] Not available in all countries.

again or wait several seconds. The speed is stored and the warning activated.

• *Deactivate:* press button OK/RESET or button OK. The stored speed is deleted.

The warning can be adjusted for speeds between 30 km/h (18 mph) and 250 km/h (155 mph).

Display Oil temperature

The engine reaches its operating temperature when, under normal driving conditions, the oil temperature is between **80 °C** and **120 °C**. If the engine is under a lot of stress and the outside temperature is high, the engine oil temperature can increase. This does not present any problem as long as the warning lamps or ››› page 318 do not appear on the display.

Warning and information messages (Vehicle status)

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Faults displayed on the instrument panel as red and yellow warning symbols accompanied with messages and ››› page 37, depending on the case, even an audible warning. The representation of the messages and symbols may vary depending on the version of the instrument panel.

Existing faults can also be checked manually. To do so, open the menu **Vehicle status** or **Vehicle** ››› page 107.

Priority 1 warning (red). The symbol lights up or flashes (in part accompanied by audible warnings). **Stop driving!** Danger! Check the fault and eliminate the cause. If necessary, seek professional assistance.

Priority 2 warning (yellow). The symbol lights up or flashes (in part accompanied by audible warnings). Operating faults or the lack of operating fluids can cause damage to the vehicle or a fault. Check the faulty function as soon as possible. If necessary, seek professional assistance.

Information message. It provides information about processes in the vehicle.

Note

• Depending on the equipment, some settings and instructions can be carried out or displayed on the infotainment system as well.

• If there are several warnings at the same time, the symbols will be displayed one after the other for a few seconds. The symbols will stay on until you remove the cause.

• If when switching on the ignition warnings are shown about existing faults, it might not be possible to change the settings or show the information as described. In this case, go to a specialised workshop and request a repair.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)*

Fig. 120 On the screen of the instrument panel: fatigue detection.

The Fatigue detection informs the driver when their driving behaviour shows signs of fatigue.

Function and operation

Fatigue detection determines the driving behaviour of the driver when starting a journey, making a calculation of tiredness. This is constantly compared with the current driving behaviour. If the system detects that the driver is

tired, an audible warning is given with a sound and an optic warning is shown with a symbol and complementary message on the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 120. The message on the instrument panel display is shown for approximately 5 seconds, and depending on the case, is repeated. The system stores the last message displayed.

The message on the instrument panel display can be switched off by pressing the OK/RESET button on the windscreen wiper lever or the button OK on the multi function steering wheel ››› page 116.

The message can be recalled to the instrument panel display using the multifunction display ››› page 108.

Conditions of operation

Driving behaviour is only calculated on speeds above about 65 km/h (40 mph) up to around 200 km/h (125 mph).

Switching on and off

Fatigue detection can be activated or deactivated in the Easy Connect system with the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS function button** ››› page 34. A mark indicates that the adjustment has been activated.

System limitations

The Fatigue detection has certain limitations inherent to the system. The following conditions can limit the Fatigue detection or prevent it from functioning.

- At speeds below 65 km/h (40 mph)
- At speeds above 200 km/h (125 mph)
- When cornering
- On roads in poor condition
- In unfavourable weather conditions
- When a sporty driving style is employed
- In the event of a serious distraction to the driver

Fatigue detection will be restored when the vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes, when the ignition is switched off or when the driver has unbuckled their seat belt and opened the door.

In the event of slow driving during a long period of time (below 65 km/h, 40 mph) the system automatically re-establishes the tiredness calculation. When driving at a faster speed the driving behaviour will be recalculated.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the comfort afforded by the Fatigue detection system tempt you into taking any risks when driving. Take regular breaks, sufficient in length when making long journeys.

- **The driver always assumes the responsibility of driving to their full capacity.**
- **Never drive if you are tired.**
- **The system does not detect the tiredness of the driver in all circumstances. Consult the information in the section ››› page 111, System limitations.**
- **In some situations, the system may incorrectly interpret an intended driving manoeuvre as driver tiredness.**
- **No warning is given in the event of the effect called microsleep!**
- **Please observe the indications on the instrument panel and act as is necessary.**

Note

- **Fatigue detection has been developed for driving on motorways and well paved roads only.**
- **If there is a fault in the system, have it checked by a specialised workshop.**

Time

Setting the time on the infotainment system

- Press the infotainment CAR / button.
- Press the **SETTINGS** function button.
- Select the menu option **Date and time** to set the time ››› page 34. »

Setting the time on analogue the instrument panel

- To set the time (for all vehicle clocks), press and hold the button 0.0/SET on the instrument panel until the **Time** is displayed.
- Release the button 0.0/SET. The time is displayed on the instrument panel display and the hours field is highlighted.
- Afterwards, press the button 0.0/SET until the desired time is displayed. To scroll quickly, hold the button 0.0/SET.
- When they have finished setting the hour, wait until the minute field is marked on the instrument panel display.
- Immediately after, press the button 0.0/SET as many times as required until the correct minute is displayed. To scroll quickly, hold the button 0.0/SET.
- Release the button 0.0/SET in order to finish setting the time.

Adjusting the time in the SEAT Digital Cockpit

- While on the **Driving data** menu select **Range** (Infotainment button CAR / 🚗 > **View > Driving data > Range**).
- Press the button OK on the multifunction steering wheel until the Service menu is displayed on the instrument panel display ››› page 108.
- Select the menu **Time**.
- Adjust the correct time by turning the right thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel.

Revolution counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Together with the gear-change indicator, the rev counter offers you the possibility of using the engine of your vehicle at a suitable speed.

The beginning of the red zone of the rev counter indicates the maximum speed in any gear after running-in and with the engine hot. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to **D** (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone ››› ❗.

We recommend that you avoid high revs and that you follow the recommendations on the gear-change indicator. Consult the additional information in ››› page 240, Gear-change recommendation.

CAUTION

- **To prevent damage to the engine, the rev counter needle should only remain in the red zone for a short period of time.**
- **When the engine is cold, avoid high revs and heavy acceleration and do not make the engine work hard.**

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise emissions and engine noise.

Fuel level indicator

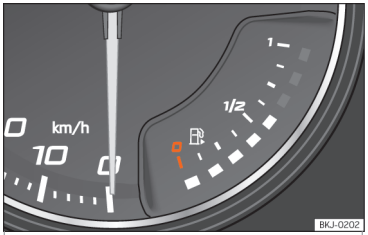


Fig. 121 Analogue instrument panel: fuel gauge

Fig. 122 Digital instrument panel: fuel gauge.

Control lamps

It lights up, and in addition, the lower diode lights up in red

Fuel tank almost empty. The fuel reserve level has been reached ››› ⚠. Refuel as soon as possible. When the fuel level is very low, the lower diode flashes in red.

It lights up yellow

Presence of water in the diesel.
Switch off the engine and request the assistance of specialised personnel.

The display only works when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel range is displayed on the instrument panel.

You can consult the tank capacity of your vehicle in the ››› page 46 section.

⚠ WARNING

When driving with low fuel, the vehicle may stall in traffic and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **If the fuel tank level is too low, fuel could reach the engine irregularly, particularly when driving up or down slopes.**
- **The steering system and the driver assistance systems and brakes do not work when the engine is running irregularly or switches off due to lack of fuel or an irregular supply thereof.**
- **Always refuel when there is only one quarter of fuel in tank to prevent the vehicle to stop due to lack of fuel.**

CAUTION

Never run the fuel tank completely dry. An irregular fuel supply can cause misfiring and unburnt fuel could enter the exhaust system. The catalytic converter or the particulate filter may get damaged!

Note

The small arrow on the fuel gauge next to the fuel pump symbol points out towards the side of the vehicle with the fuel tank flap.

Natural gas level (CNG)

✓ Valid in vehicles equipped with natural gas engine (CNG)

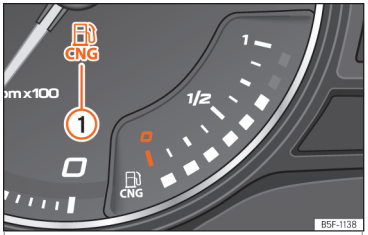


Fig. 123 Analogue instrument panel: natural gas gauge

Control lamp

It lights up green ››› Fig. 123 ①

The vehicle is running with natural gas.
The warning lamp turns off when the natural gas runs out. The engine changes to operate with petrol.

It lights up, and in addition, the lower diode lights up in red

The fuel reserve level has been reached.
When the fuel level is very low, the lower diode flashes in red.

The display only works when the ignition is switched on.

Things to note

If the vehicle is left parked for a long time immediately after refuelling, the natural gas level indicator may not accurately indicate the same level shown after refuelling when the vehicle is started up again. This is not due to a leak in the system, but to a drop in pressure in the gas tank for technical reasons after a cooling phase just after refuelling.

Engine coolant temperature display

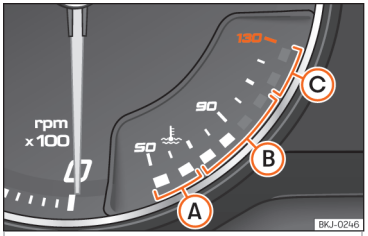


Fig. 124 Analogue instrument panel: engine coolant temperature display.

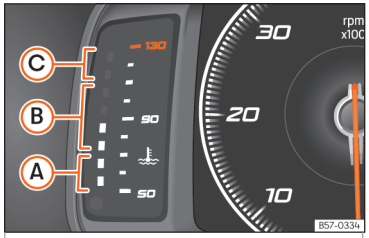


Fig. 125 Digital instrument panel: engine coolant temperature display.

››› Fig. 124, ››› Fig. 125:

Ⓐ **Cool zone.** The engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds and stressing the engine if it has not reached operating temperature.

Ⓑ **Normal zone.** At high outside temperatures and when making the engine work hard, the diodes may continue lighting up and reach the upper zone. This is no cause for concern, provided the control lamp does not light up.

Ⓒ **Warning area.** When the engine is working hard, especially at high outside temperatures, the diodes may light up in the warning area.

The coolant temperature gauge only works when the ignition is switched on.

Control and warning lamp

It lights up red

Do not keep driving!
Engine coolant level too low, coolant temperature too high

Flashes red

Fault in the engine coolant system.

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool down.
- Check the engine coolant level ››› page 320.
- If the warning lamp does not switch off even if the coolant level is correct, request assistance from specialised personnel.

CAUTION

- **To ensure a long useful life for the engine, avoid high revs, driving at high speed and making the engine work hard for approximately the first 15 minutes when the engine is cold. The phase until the engine is warm also depends on the outside temperature. If necessary, use the engine oil temperature* ››› page 110 as a guide.**
- **Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.**
- **The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Seek specialist assistance.**

Service intervals

The service interval indication appears on the instrument panel display and the Infotainment system.

There are different versions of instrument panels and infotainment systems, so the versions and instructions on the screens may vary.

SEAT distinguishes between services *with* engine oil change (e.g. Oil change service) and services *without* engine oil change (e.g. Inspection).

In vehicles with **Services established by time or mileage**, the service intervals are already pre-defined.

In vehicles with **LongLife Service**, the intervals are determined individually. Thanks to technological progress, maintenance work has been greatly reduced. Because of the technology used by SEAT, with this service you only need to change the oil when the vehicle so requires. To calculate this variation (max. 2 years), the vehicle's conditions of use and individual driving styles are considered. The advance warning first appears 20 days before the date established for the corresponding service. The kilometres (miles) remaining until the next service are always rounded up to the nearest 100 km (miles) and the time is given in complete days. The current service message cannot be viewed until 500 km after the last service. Prior to this, only lines are visible on the display.

Inspection reminder

If a service or an inspection has to be carried out soon, a **service reminder** will be displayed when the ignition is switched on.

The figure displayed are the kilometres that can still be travelled or the time until the next service.

Service due

When **the time for a service** or an **inspection** comes, an audible warning will be emitted when the ignition is switched on and the fixed key symbol may appear on the instrument panel for a few seconds, along with one of the following messages:

- **Service now!**
- **Request an inspection.**
- **Oil service required!**
- **Oil service and inspection required!**

»

Inspection of compressed natural gas tanks (CNG) reminder

When less than 90 days for the review of the compressed natural gas tanks (CNG), when the ignition is switched on, the instrument panel display will a **reminder for review of the gas tanks** and an audible warning will be emitted.

As approaches the service date of inspection of the gas tanks, the message and the audible warning will stop modify accordingly.

Check a service warning

With the ignition switched on, the engine off and the vehicle at a standstill, the current **service notification** can be read:

Check the date of the current service on the infotainment system

- Press the infotainment CAR / button.
- Press the **SETTINGS** function button ››› page 34.
- Select the **Service** menu option to display information about the services.

Vehicles with analogue instrument panel

- Press and hold the button 0.0/SET ››› Fig. 117 (4) for more than 5 seconds to consult the service message.

Vehicles with digital instrument panel

- The date of the service can only be read through the Service menu ››› page 108.

Resetting service interval display

If the service was not carried out by a SEAT dealership, the display can be reset as follows:

Vehicles with analogue instrument panel

- Switch off the ignition, press and hold the button 0.0/SET ››› Fig. 117 (4).
- Switch ignition back on.
- Release the button 0.0/SET and press it again for the next 20 seconds.

Vehicles with digital instrument panel

- The service interval display can only be reset through the Service menu ››› page 108.

Do not restart the indicator between the service intervals, otherwise the information displayed will be incorrect.

If the oil change service is reset manually, the service interval display changes to a fixed service interval, also in vehicles with **Flexible oil change service**.

Note

• The service message disappears after a few seconds, when the engine is started or when OK/RESET is pressed on the windscreen wiper lever, or OK on the multifunction steering wheel.

• In vehicles with the LongLife system in which the battery has been disconnected for a long period of time, it is not possible to calculate the date of the next service. Therefore the service interval display may not be correct. In this case, bear in mind the maximum service intervals permitted ››› page 333.

• If you reset the display manually, the next service interval will be indicated as in vehicles with fixed service intervals. For this reason we recommend that the service interval display be reset by a SEAT authorised Dealer.

• If the period of 48 months for an inspection at a specialised workshop of compressed natural gas tanks (CNG) is exceeded, the vehicle may not working in this mode.

Using the instrument panel

Introduction

With the ignition switched on, it is possible to read the different functions of the display by scrolling through the menus.

In vehicles with multifunction steering wheel, the multifunction display can only be operated with the steering wheel buttons.

Some menu options can only be read when the vehicle is at a standstill.

⚠ WARNING

Distracting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries.

- **Never use the menus on the instrument panel display while the vehicle is in motion.**

Note

After loading or changing the 12-volt battery, check the system settings. If the power supply is interrupted, the system settings might be incorrect or deleted.

Operation with the windscreen wiper lever

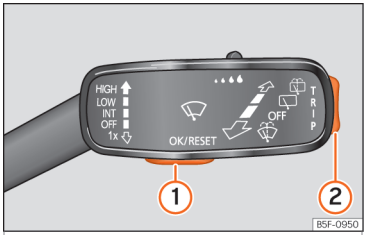


Fig. 126 Windscreen wipers lever: control buttons.

As long as a priority 1 **›››** **page 110** warning is active, it will not be possible to access any menu. Some warnings can be confirmed and hidden with the button **›››** **Fig. 126** ①.

Select a menu or an informative display

- Switch the ignition on.
- If a message or vehicle symbol is displayed, press button ①; if necessary, several times.
- To display the menus **›››** **page 107** or to return to the selection of menus from a menu or from an informative display, hold down the rocker button ②.
- To change from one menu to another, press the upper or lower part of the rocker switch.
- To open the menu or the informative display shown, press button ① or wait a few seconds until the menu or the informative display opens automatically.

Changing menu settings

- In the menu displayed, press the upper or lower part of the rocker switch ② until the required menu option is checked. The option appears framed.
- Press button ① to make the required modifications. A mark indicates that the system or function is activated.

Back to menu selection

Select **Back** on the corresponding menu to exit.

Note

If when switching on the ignition warnings are shown about existing faults, it might not be possible to change the settings or show the information as described. In this case, go to a specialised workshop and request a repair.

Using the multifunction steering wheel

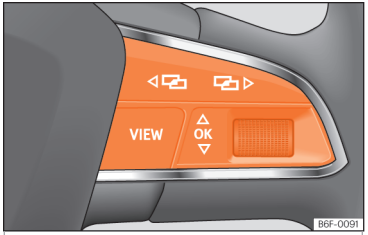


Fig. 127 Right side of multifunction steering wheel: buttons to the menus and informative indications on the instrument panel.

As long as a priority 1 ››› **page 110** warning is active, it will not be possible to access any menu. Some warnings can be confirmed and hidden with the button OK of the multifunction steering wheel ››› Fig. 127.

Select a menu or an informative display

- Switch the ignition on.
- If a message or vehicle symbol is displayed, press the button OK ››› Fig. 127; if necessary, several times.
- To change menus, use buttons ◁ or ▷ ››› Fig. 127.
- To open the menu or the information displayed, press the button OK ››› Fig. 127 or wait a few seconds until the menu or the informative display opens automatically.

Changing menu settings

- In the menu displayed, turn the right thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel ››› Fig. 127 until the desired option of the menu is highlighted. The option appears framed.
- Press the button OK ››› Fig. 127 to make the required modifications. A mark indicates that the system or function is activated.

Back to menu selection

Press the button ◁ or ▷ ››› Fig. 127.

Note

If when switching on the ignition warnings are shown about existing faults, it might not be possible to change the settings or show the information as described. In this case, go to a specialised workshop and request a repair.

Control and warning lamps

Warning symbols

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 37

The control and warning lamps are indicators of warnings, ››› ⚠, faults ››› ❗ or certain functions. Some control and warning lamps come on when the ignition is switched on, and switch off when the engine starts running, or while driving.

Depending on the model, additional text messages may be viewed on the instrument panel display. These may be purely informative or they may be advising of the need for action ››› **page 102, Dashboard**.

Depending upon the equipment fitted in the vehicle, instead of a warning lamp, sometimes a symbol may be displayed on the instrument panel.

When certain control and warning lamps are lit, an audible warning is also heard.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps and messages are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps or text messages.**
- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.**
- **Park the vehicle away from traffic and ensure that there are no highly flammable materials under the vehicle that could come into contact with the exhaust system (e.g. dry grass, fuel).**

- **A faulty vehicle represents a risk of accident for the driver and for other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put out the warning triangle to advise other drivers.**
- **Before opening the bonnet, switch off the engine and allow it to cool.**
- **In any vehicle, the engine compartment is a hazardous area and could cause severe injuries** **››› page 315****.**

CAUTION

Failure to heed the control lamps and text messages when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Multifunction steering wheel*

General information

The steering wheel includes a multifunction module from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone and radio/navigation functions without needing to distract the driver.

There are two versions of the multifunction module:

- **Voice-controlled audio, phone and navigation version**: for controlling the audio functions available (radio, audio CD, MP3, iPod®[1], USB[1], SD[1]) and Bluetooth system from the steering wheel.
- **Voice-controlled audio, phone and navigation version**: for controlling the audio functions available (radio, audio CD, MP3, iPod®[1], USB[1], SD[1]) and Bluetooth system from the steering wheel.

[1] Depending on the vehicle equipment.

Operating the audio, telephone and navigation system with voice control

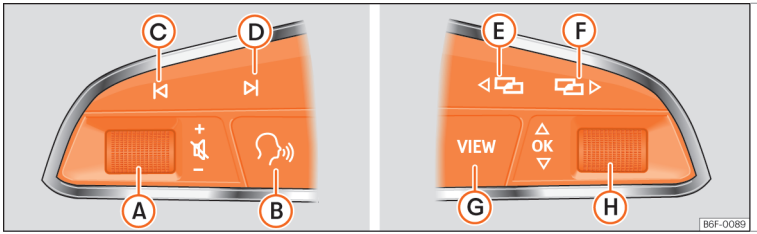


Fig. 128 Controls on the steering wheel.

Applies to vehicles with analogue instrument panel

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone*	Navigation*
Ⓐ *Turn*	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (radio).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (media).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (media).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in telephone mode.	Turn announcement volume up/down. You do not need to be in navigation mode but there has to be an announcement active when you adjust the volume.
Ⓐ *Press*	Mute volume.	Mute volume.	Mute volume.	Mute incoming call.	Mute the current navigation announcement.
Ⓑ[a]	Activate/deactivate voice control. This function can be used from any mode (audio, media, navigation, assistants, vehicle status, travel data). When the system is in telephone mode this button's function is deactivated during the ongoing call, and without Radio/Media functionality (except AUX).				
Ⓒ / Ⓓ	Search for the previous/next station[b].	*Short press:* Switch to the previous/next song. *Hold down:* Fast rewind/forward[c].	No function	– *There is no active call:* Radio/Media functionality (except AUX) – *Active call:* no function	No function for the other modes (navigation, assistants, vehicle status, travel data).
Ⓔ / Ⓕ[a]	Change instrument panel menu. This function can be used from any mode (audio, media, navigation, assistants, vehicle status, travel data).				

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone*	Navigation*
Ⓖ	*Coloured instrument panel:* change to the previous menu. *Monochrome Instrument panel:* switch to the previous function.				
Ⓗ *Turn*	*Coloured instrument panel:* List of stations available (only if the instrument panel is in audio menu).	*Coloured instrument panel:* next track (only if the instrument panel is in audio menu).	No function	– *There is no active call:* List of last calls. – *Active call:* access the call options list (call on hold, hang up, mute microphone, private number, etc.).	– *Active route:* access the view to halt guidance to destination. – *No active route:* list of previous destinations.
Ⓗ *Press*	Acts on the instrument panel or confirms the instrument panel menu option depending on the menu option.				

a) According to the vehicle's equipment package.

b) This action can be performed when you are listening to the radio; there is no need to be in audio-radio mode.

c) These actions can be performed when you are listening to media; there is no need to be in audio-radio mode.

Applies to vehicles with Active Info Display (Digital SEAT Cockpit)

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone*	Navigation*
Ⓐ *Turn*	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (radio).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (media).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (media).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in telephone mode.	Turn announcement volume up/down. You do not need to be in navigation mode but there has to be an announcement active when you adjust the volume.
Ⓐ *Press*	Mute volume.	Mute volume.	Mute volume.	Mute incoming call.	Mute the current navigation announcement.
Ⓑ[a]	Enable/disable voice control[b]. This function can be used from any mode, except with an active call.				
Ⓒ / Ⓓ	Search for the previous/next station[c].	*Short press:* Switch to the previous/next song. *Hold down:* Fast rewind/forward[d].	No function	– *No active call:* Radio/Media functions (except AUX) – *Active call:* no function	No function for the other modes (navigation, assistants, vehicle status, travel data).

»

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone*	Navigation*
Ⓔ / Ⓕ[a]	Change menu on instrument panel.[b]				
Ⓖ	*Short press*[b]: change views **Classic Info / Digital Maps / Semi-circular clocks** *Long press*[b]: access settings of "Individual Profiles".				
Ⓗ *Turn*	List of sources available (audio/media).	List of sources available (audio/media).	No function	– *There is no active call:* Recent calls list. – *Active call:* go to the call options list (call in standby, hang up, mute microphone, private number, etc.).	If there is a map on the Digital Scorecard: Zoom in-out (with or without an active route). If there is no map on the Digital Scorecard: the map is transferred from the Infotainment System display to the Digital Scorecard (with and without active route).
Ⓗ *Press*	No function	No function	No function	No function	Auto/Manual Zoom Zoom if the map on the DigitScorecard.

[a] According to the vehicle's equipment package.

[b] This function can be used from any mode (audio, media, navigation, vehicle status, travel data).

[c] This action can be performed when you are listening to the radio; there is no need to be in audio-radio mode.

[d] These actions can be performed when you are listening to media; there is no need to be in audio-radio mode.

Operating the audio, telephone and navigation system without voice control

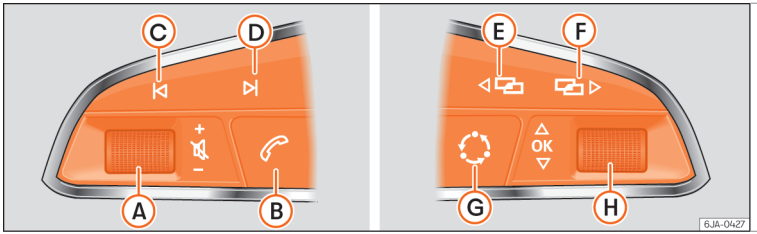


Fig. 129 Controls on the steering wheel.

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone*	Navigation*
Ⓐ *Turn*	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (radio).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (media).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in audio mode (media).	Turn volume up/down. You do not need to be in telephone mode.	Turn announcement volume up/down. You do not need to be in navigation mode but there has to be an announcement active when you adjust the volume.
Ⓐ *Press*	Mute volume.	Mute volume.	Mute volume.	Mute incoming call.	Mute the current navigation announcement.
Ⓑ[a]	– *Incoming call:* pick up (short press), reject (long press). – *Ongoing call:* hang up (short press). – *No incoming/ongoing call:* open phone menu (short press), repeat last ongoing call (long press). These functions can be carried out on any mode (audio, media, navigations, assistants, vehicle status, travel data).				
Ⓒ / Ⓓ	Search for the previous/next station[b].	*Short press:* Switch to the previous/next song. *Hold down:* Fast rewind/forward[c].	No function	– *There is no active call:* Radio/Media functionality (except AUX) – *Active call:* no function	No function for the other modes (navigation, assistants, vehicle status, travel data).
Ⓔ / Ⓕ[a]	Change instrument panel menu. This function can be used from any mode (audio, media, navigation, assistants, vehicle status, travel data).				

»

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone*	Navigation*
Ⓖ	Cycles through the audio source: FM/AM – CD – SD - USB - AUX - BT Audio (only those that are available). This function can be used from any mode (audio, media, navigation, assistants, vehicle status, travel data).				
Ⓗ *Turn*	*Coloured instrument panel:* List of stations available (only if the instrument panel is in audio menu).	*Coloured instrument panel:* next track (only if the instrument panel is in audio menu).	No function	– *There is no active call:* List of last calls. – *Active call:* access the call options list (call on hold, hang up, mute microphone, private number, etc.).	– *Active route:* access the view to halt guidance to destination. – *No active route:* list of previous destinations.
Ⓗ *Press*	Acts on the instrument panel or confirms the instrument panel menu option depending on the menu option.				

a) According to the vehicle's equipment package.

b) This action can be performed when you are listening to the radio; there is no need to be in audio-radio mode.

c) These actions can be performed when you are listening to media; there is no need to be in audio-radio mode.

Opening and closing

Keys

Set of keys

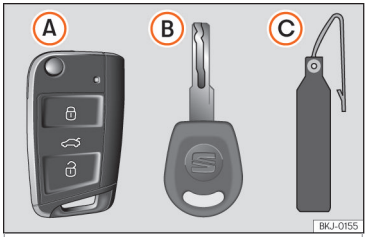


Fig. 130 Set of keys.

The set of keys may consists of the following, depending on the version of your vehicle:

- a remote control key ››› Fig. 130 Ⓐ
- a key without remote control Ⓑ,
- a plastic key tab* Ⓒ.

or

- two keys with remote control Ⓐ
- a plastic key tab* Ⓒ.

Duplicate keys

If you need a replacement key, go to a Technical Service with your vehicle identification number.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrect use of the keys can cause serious injuries.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle or manage on their own.**
- **An uncontrolled use of the key could start the engine or activate any electric equipment (e.g. electric windows), causing risk of accident. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could become an obstacle for assistance in an emergency situation.**
- **Never forget the keys inside the vehicle. An unauthorised use of your vehicle could result in injury, damage or theft. Therefore always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise, the steering could suddenly block and it would be impossible to steer the vehicle.**

ⓘ CAUTION

There are electronic components in the remote control key. Avoid wetting and hitting the keys.

Remote control*

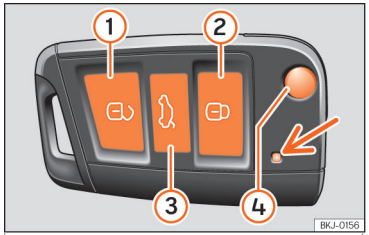


Fig. 131 Assignment of buttons on the remote control key.

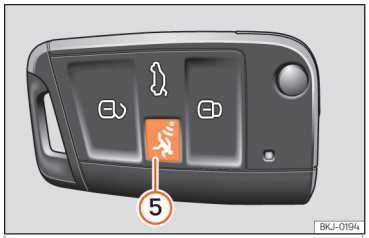


Fig. 132 Vehicle key with alarm button.

The radio frequency remote control key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle from a distance.

By using button ④ ››› Fig. 131 on the control, the key shaft is released.

Unlocking the vehicle ››› Fig. 131 ①. »

Locking the vehicle ››› Fig. 131 ②.

Unlocking the rear lid. Press button ››› Fig. 131 ③ until all the turn signals on the vehicle flash briefly. When the unlocking button ③ is pressed, you have 2 minutes to open the door. Once this time has passed, it will lock again.

Moreover, the battery indicator on the key ››› Fig. 131 (arrow), will flash.

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are integrated in the key. The receiver is inside the vehicle. The maximum range depends on different factors. The range is reduced as the batteries start to lose power.

Alarm button*

Only press alarm button in the event of an emergency ››› Fig. 132 ⑤! When the alarm button is pressed, the vehicle horn is heard and the turn signals are switched on for a short time. When the alarm button is pressed again, the alarm is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the relevant warnings ››› ⚠ in Set of keys on page 125.

Note

- **The remote control key works only when you are in its scope.**
- **If the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked by using the radio frequency remote control, the remote control key will have to be re-synchronised. For this, go to your technical services.**

Replacing the battery

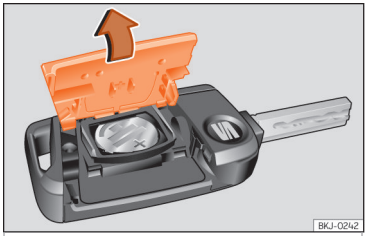


Fig. 133 Vehicle key: opening the battery compartment.

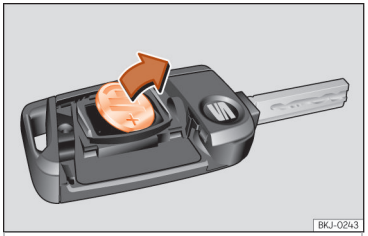


Fig. 134 Vehicle key: removing the battery.

SEAT recommends you ask a specialised workshop to replace the battery.

The battery is located to the rear of the vehicle key, under a cover.

Changing the battery

- Unfold the vehicle key blade ››› page 125.
- Remove the cover from the back of the vehicle key ››› Fig. 133 in the direction of the arrow ››› ❗.
- Extract the battery from the compartment using a suitable thin object ››› Fig. 134.
- Place the new battery in the compartment as shown ››› Fig. 134, pressing in the opposite direction to that shown by the arrow ››› ❗.
- Fit the cover as shown ››› Fig. 133, pressing it onto the vehicle key casing in the opposite direction to that shown by the arrow until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- **If the battery is not changed correctly, the vehicle key may be damaged.**
- **Use of unsuitable batteries may damage the vehicle key. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same voltage, size and specifications.**
- **When fitting the battery, check that the polarity is correct.**

For the sake of the environment

Please dispose of your used batteries correctly and with respect for the environment.

Synchronising the remote control key

If it is not possible to unlock or lock the door with the remote control, it should be re-synchronised.

While the vehicle is open:

– Press button ② ››› Fig. 131 on the remote control.

– Then close the vehicle using the key shaft **within one minute.**

While the vehicle is closed:

– Press button ① ››› Fig. 131 on the remote control.

– Then close the vehicle using the key shaft **within one minute.**

If the is pressed repeatedly outside the range of action of the remote control, the vehicle may not open or close when using the remote control. The remote control key will have to be resynchronised.

Spare remote control keys are available at your Technical Service, where they must be matched to the locking system.

Up to five remote control keys can be used.

Central locking system

Description

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 15.

The central locking system enables you to lock and unlock all doors and the rear lid by just pushing the button.

Central locking can be activated by using any of the following options:

- **the key**, by inserting it into the driver door cylinder and rotating it in the opening direction. Depending on the vehicle version, either all doors will be unlocked or only the driver door will be unlocked. All doors will be locked on locking the vehicle using the key.
- **the interior central lock button ››› page 129.**
- **the radio frequency remote control**, using the buttons on the key ››› page 125.

Various functions are available to improve the vehicle safety:

– Locking system “Safe*”

– Selective* unlocking system

– Self-locking system to prevent involuntary unlocking

– Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system*

– Emergency unlocking system

Unlocking the vehicle*

– Press the button ››› Fig. 131 on the remote control to unlock all the doors and the rear lid.

Locking the vehicle*

– Press the button ››› Fig. 131 on the remote control to lock all doors and the rear lid or turn the key in the door to lock all doors and the rear lid.

WARNING

- **Locking from the outside carelessly or without good visibility may lead to bruising, particularly in the case of children.**
- **When locking a vehicle, never leave children unaccompanied inside, as from the outside it will be difficult to provide assistance if required.**
- **Having the doors locked prevents intruders from getting in, for example when stopped at a traffic light.**

»

Note

For anti-theft security, only the driver door is fitted with a lock cylinder.

“Safe” security system*[1]

This is an anti-theft device which consists of a double lock for the door locks and a deactivation function for the boot in order to prevent forced entry.

Activation

The “safe” system is activated when the vehicle is locked using the key or the remote control.

To activate it with the key, rotate once it is inserted in the door lock cylinder in the locking direction.

To activate the system using the remote control, press the lock button once on the remote.

Once this system is activated, opening doors from the outside and the inside is not possible. The rear lid can not be opened. The central lock button does not work.

When the ignition is switched off, the instrument panel display indicates that the “Safe” system is on.

Deactivation

Rotate the key inserted in the lock cylinder twice towards the locking direction.

To activate the system using the remote control, press the lock button on the remote twice in less than 5 seconds.

On deactivating the “Safe” system, the alarm volumetric sensor is also deactivated.

With the “Safe” switched off, doors can be opened from the interior but not from the exterior.

See “Selective unlocking system*”

“Safe” status

On the driver door, there is warning lamp visible from outside the vehicle through the window which shows the “Safe” system status.

We will know that “Safe” system is activated by the flashing warning lamp. The indicator will flash on all vehicles, fitted and nor fitted with an alarm, until they unlock.

Remember:

Safe enabled with or without alarm: continuous flashing of warning lamp.

Safe disabled without alarm: the warning lamp stays off.

Safe disabled with alarm: the warning lamp stays off.

WARNING

No one should remain inside the vehicle if the “Safe” system is activated because opening the doors will not be possible in the event of an emergency neither from the inside nor the outside and help from the outside is made difficult. Danger of death. Passengers could become trapped inside in case of emergency.

Selective unlocking system*

This system allows to unlock either just the driver door or all the vehicle.

Driver door unlock button

Unlock once. Use either the key or the remote control.

Once the key is inserted in the lock cylinder, rotate once in the unlock direction. The driver door will remain without “Safe” and unlocked.

[1] Available depending on market and version.

In vehicles fitted with an alarm, see the Anti-theft Alarm section ››› page 133.

Using the remote control, press the unlock button on the remote once. The "Safe" system for all the vehicle is deactivated, only the driver door is unlocked and both the alarm and the warning lamp are also turned off.

Unlocking all doors and the luggage compartment

The unlock button on the remote control must be pressed twice so that all doors and the luggage compartment can be opened.

Press twice within 5 seconds to deactivate the "Safe" system for all vehicle, to unlock all doors and to use the luggage compartment. The warning lamp and the alarm (only vehicles fitted with one) are turned off.

Unlocking the luggage compartment

See ››› page 16.

Self-locking system to prevent involuntary unlocking

It is an anti-theft system and prevents the unintentional unlocking of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked and none of the doors (including the boot) are opened within 30 seconds, it re-locks automatically.

Automatic speed-dependent locking and unlocking system*

This is a safety system which prevents access to the vehicle from the outside when it is running (e.g. when stopped at a traffic light).

Locking

The doors will lock automatically if the speed of 15 km/h (9 mph) is exceeded. The rear lid will lock automatically if the speed of 6 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded.

If the vehicle is stopped and any of its doors open, when starting again and exceeding the mentioned speed, all doors will lock again.

Unlocking

On withdrawing the ignition key, the vehicle will returns to its status prior to self-locking.

Each door can be unlocked and opened independently from the inside (for example, when a passenger gets out). To do it, simply operate the lever inside the door.

⚠ WARNING

The door handles must not be operated when the vehicle is running: the door would open.

Note

If the airbags are triggered during an accident, the vehicle is unlocked, except for the luggage compartment. It is possible to lock the vehicle from inside with the central locking, after turning the ignition off and back on again.

Central lock button*

Fig. 135 Central lock button.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 15

The central lock button allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle from the inside.

The central lock button also works with the ignition switched off, except when the "safe" system is activated.

Please note the following if you lock your vehicle with the central lock button: »

- Locking the doors and rear lid prevents access from the *outside* (for safety reasons, e.g. when stopped at a traffic light).
- The driver door cannot be locked while it is open. This avoids the user from forgetting his key inside the vehicle.
- All doors can be unlocked separately from inside the vehicle. To do so, pull the door release lever *once*.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the vehicle is locked, children and disabled people may be trapped inside it.**
- **Repeated operation of central locking will prevent the central lock button from working for a few seconds. Then, it can only be unlocked in case it has been previously locked. After few seconds, the central locking becomes operative again.**
- **The central lock button is not operative when the vehicle is locked from the outside (with the remote control or the key).**

Related videos Keyless Access

Fig. 136 Convenience

Fig. 137 Technology

Unlocking and locking the vehicle with Keyless Access*

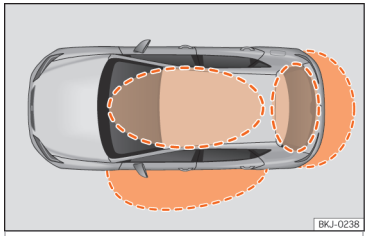


Fig. 138 Keyless Access locking and ignition system: In the proximity of the car.

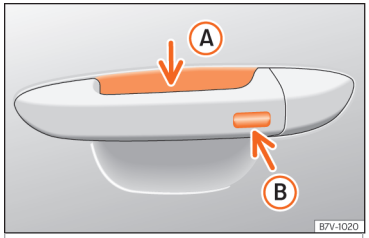


Fig. 139 Locking and ignition system without Keyless Access: sensor surface (A) for unlocking inside the door handle and sensor surface (B) for locking on the exterior of the handle.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may have the Keyless Access system.

Keyless Access is a key-free locking and ignition system to unlock and lock the vehicle without actively using its key. To do this, all that is required is to have a valid vehicle key in the detection area where you are attempting to access the vehicle ››› Fig. 138 and to touch one of the sensor surfaces on the door handles ››› Fig. 139 ››› ❗.

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked via the driver door only. When doing so, the remote control key must be no further than approx. 1.5 m away from the door handle.

It does not matter where you carry the key, for instance whether it is in your jacket pocket or in a briefcase.

Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

If you wish, when unlocking, you can unlock *only* the driver's door, the side being unlocked, or the entire vehicle. The necessary adjustments can be performed in vehicles with a driver information system ››› page 34.

General information

If a valid key is located in the proximity of the car ››› Fig. 138, the Keyless Access locking and starting system gives the key entry as soon as one of the sensor surfaces on the driver door handle is touched. The following features are then available without having to use the vehicle key actively:

- *Keyless-Entry*: unlocking the vehicle using the handle of the front driver's door or the *softtouch*/handle on the rear lid.
- *Keyless-Exit*: locking the vehicle using the sensor on the driver door handle.
- *Press & Drive*: keyless starting of the engine with the starter button ››› page 220.

The central locking and locking systems operate in the same way as a *normal* locking and unlocking system. Only the controls change.

Unlocking the vehicle is confirmed with a *double* flash of the indicator lights; locking by a *single* flash.

If the vehicle is locked and then all doors and the rear lid are closed leaving the last key used inside the vehicle and none outside, the vehicle will **not** lock **immediately**. All the vehicle's indicator lights will flash *four times*. The vehicle will lock after a few seconds if you do not open any door or the rear lid.

The vehicle will lock again after a few seconds if you unlock the vehicle but fail to open any door or boot hatch.

Unlocking and opening the doors (Keyless-Entry)

- Grip the driver door lever. In doing this, the sensor surface ››› Fig. 139 Ⓐ (arrow) on the handle is touched and the vehicle unlocks.
- Open the door.

On vehicles with selective opening or infotainment system configuration, pulling the door handle twice will unlock all doors.

In vehicles without safety system "Safe": closing and locking the doors (Keyless-Exit)

- Switch the ignition off.
- Close the driver's door.
- Touch (*once*) the locking sensor surface Ⓑ (arrow) on the driver door handle. The door that is used must be closed.

In vehicles with safety system "Safe": closing and locking the doors (Keyless-Exit)

- Switch the ignition off.
- Close the driver's door.
- Touch (*once*) the locking sensor surface Ⓑ (arrow) on the driver door handle. The vehicle locks with the "Safe" security system ››› page 128. The door that is used must be closed.
- Touch (*twice*) the sensor surface Ⓑ (arrow) of the driver door handle to lock the vehicle without activating the "Safe" security system ››› page 128.

Unlocking and locking the boot hatch

When the vehicle is locked, the rear lid automatically unlocks on opening if there is a valid vehicle key in the proximity ››› Fig. 138.

Open or close the rear lid *normally*.

After closing, the hatch locks automatically. If the complete vehicle is unlocked, the rear lid will **not** lock automatically after closing it. »

What happens when locking the vehicle with a second key

If there is a vehicle key inside the vehicle and it is locked from the outside with a second vehicle key, the key inside the vehicle is blocked for engine ignition ››› page 217. In order to enable engine ignition, press the button on the key inside the vehicle.

Automatically disabling sensors

If the vehicle is not locked or unlocked for a long period of time, the proximity sensors on the passenger doors are automatically disabled.

If one of the sensor surfaces on the door handles is often activated in an unusual manner with the vehicle locked (e.g. by the branches of a bush rubbing against it), all proximity sensors are disabled for a certain period of time.

Sensors will again be enabled:

- After a time.
- **OR:** if the vehicle is unlocked with the button on the key.
- **OR:** if the boot is opened.
- **OR:** if the vehicle is unlocked manually with the key.

Keyless Access temporary disconnection function*

You can deactivate the vehicle's Keyless Access unlocking for a locking and unlocking cycle.

- Move the gear lever to position **P** (if the vehicle has automatic gearbox), since otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
- Close the door.
- Push the central locking button on the remote control and touch the locking sensor surface of the driver door handle ››› Fig. 139 Ⓑ within the following 5 seconds. Do not grasp the door handle; otherwise the vehicle will not unlock. Deactivation is also possible if the vehicle is locked through the driver's door lock.
- To check that the function has been deactivated, wait at least 10 seconds, grip and pull on the door handle. The door should not open.

The next time the door can only be unlocked via the remote control or the lock cylinder. The next time the door is locked/unlocked, Keyless Access will be active again.

Convenience functions

To close all the electric windows using the **convenience function**, keep a finger on the locking sensor surface Ⓑ (arrow) of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows have closed.

The **doors opened** by touching the sensor surface of the door handle depend on the settings that have been activated in the Easy Connect system with the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS > Opening and closing** function buttons.

CAUTION

The sensor surfaces on the door handles could engage if hit with a water jet or high pressure steam if there is a valid vehicle key in the proximity. If at least one of the electric windows is open and the sensor surface Ⓑ (arrow) on the handle is activated continuously, all windows will close.

Note

- **If the vehicle battery has little or no charge, or the vehicle key battery is almost or entirely out of charge, you will probably not be able to lock or unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Access system. The vehicle can be unlocked or locked manually.**
- **To control the proper locking of the vehicle, the release function is disabled for approx. 2 seconds.**
- **If the message `Keyless access system faulty` is displayed on the screen of the dash panel, abnormalities may occur in the operation of the Keyless Access system. Contact a specialised workshop. SEAT**

recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this.

- Depending on the function set on the infotainment system for the mirrors, the exterior mirrors will unfold and the surround lighting will come on when unlocking the vehicle using the sensor surface on the driver door handle.
- If there is no valid key inside the vehicle or the system fails to detect one, a warning will display on the dash panel screen. This could happen if any other radio frequency signal interferes with the key signal (e.g. from a mobile device accessory) or if the key is covered by another object (e.g. an aluminium case).
- If the sensors are very dirty, e.g. have a layer of salt, the correct functioning of the sensors on the door handles may be affected. In this case, clean the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic gearbox, it may only be locked in the gear stick is in position P.
- To improve the safety of your vehicle, the remote control of the system is equipped with a position sensor. If this remote control does not detect movement for a certain length of time, the system will conclude that the vehicle cannot be opened (e.g. on a night table) so it will be disabled.

Childproof lock

Fig. 140 Childproof lock on the left hand side door.

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside. This system prevents minors from opening a door accidentally while the vehicle is running.

This function is independent of the vehicle electronic opening and locking systems. It only affects rear doors. It can only be activated and deactivated manually, as described below:

Activating the childproof lock

– Unlock the vehicle and open the door in which you wish to activate the childproof lock.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, anti-clockwise for the left-hand side doors ››› Fig. 140 and clockwise for the right-hand side doors.

Deactivating the childproof lock

– Unlock the vehicle and open the door whose childproof lock you want to deactivate.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, anti-clockwise for the right-hand side doors, and clockwise for the left-hand side doors ››› Fig. 140.

Once the childproof lock is activated, the door can only be opened from the outside. The childproof lock can be activated or deactivated by inserting the key in the groove when the door is open, as described above.

Anti-theft alarm*

Description of anti-theft alarm system*

The anti-theft alarm makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle or steal it. The system will initiate acoustic and optical warning signals when your vehicle is tried to be forced.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically switched on when locking the vehicle. The system is immediately activated and the turn »

signal light located on the driver door will flash along with the turn signals, indicating that the alarm and the locking security system (double lock) have been turned on.

If any of the doors or the bonnet are open, they will not be included in the protection zones of the vehicle when the alarm is connected. If the door or the bonnet are subsequently closed, they will be automatically included in the protection areas of the vehicle and the turn signals will flash accordingly when the doors close.

- The turn signal light will flash twice on opening and deactivating the alarm.
- The turn signal light will flash once on closing and activating the alarm.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The system triggers an alarm, if the following unauthorised actions are carried out when the vehicle is locked:

- Mechanical opening of the vehicle with the vehicle key without switching on the ignition in the next 15 seconds (in certain markets, such as the Netherlands, the alarm is activated immediately).
- A door is opened.
- Opening the bonnet.
- The rear lid is opened.
- Ignition switched on with a non-validated key.
- Movements in the driving compartment (vehicles with a volume sensor).
- Towing of the vehicle[1].
- Vehicle tilt angle[1].
- Undue manipulation of the alarm.
- Battery handling.

In this case, the acoustic signals will go off and the turn signal will flash for approximately 30 seconds. This cycle may be repeated up to 10 times depending on the country.

Opening all the doors in manual mode

In vehicles without an alarm, when opening the driver door manually, all doors are opened.

How to switch the alarm off

To deactivate the anti-theft alarm, turn the key in the opening direction, open the door and switch the ignition on, or press the unlock button on the remote control.

In vehicles equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, you have 15 seconds to insert the key in the ignition lock and activate the ignition if the vehicle is opened using the driver door key.

Otherwise, the alarm will trigger for 30 sec. and the ignition will be blocked.

Note

- **After 28 days, the indicator light will be switched off to prevent the battery from draining if the vehicle has been left parked for a long period of time. The alarm system remains activated.**
- **The alarm will trigger again if attempts are made to open another protection zone.**
- **The alarm system can be activated or deactivated using the radio frequency remote control** **››› page 125****.**
- **The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is locked from within using the central locking button.**
- **If the vehicle battery is run down or flat then the anti-theft alarm will not operate correctly.**
- **Vehicle monitoring remains active even if the battery is disconnected or not working for any reason.**
- **The alarm is triggered immediately if one of the battery cables is disconnected while the alarm system is active.**

[1] With vehicles fitted with a tow-away protection

Vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow system*

Monitoring or control function incorporated in the anti-theft alarm* which detects unauthorised vehicle entry by means of ultrasound.

Activation

– It is automatically switched on when the anti-theft alarm is activated.

Deactivation

– Open the vehicle with the key, either mechanically or by pressing the button on the remote control. If the vehicle is opened mechanically, the time period from when the door is opened until the key is inserted into the contact should not exceed 15 seconds, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.

– Press the button on the remote control twice. The volumetric sensor and tilt sensors will be deactivated. The alarm system remains activated.

The vehicle interior monitoring and the anti-tow system are automatically switched on again next time the vehicle is locked.

The vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow sensor (tilt sensor) are automatically switched on when the anti-theft alarm is switched on. In order to activate it, all the doors and the rear lid must be closed.

If you wish to switch off the vehicle interior monitoring and the anti-tow system, it must be done each time that the vehicle is locked; if not, they will be automatically switched on.

The vehicle interior monitoring and the anti-tow system should be switched off if animals are left inside the locked vehicle (otherwise, their movements will trigger the alarm) or when, for example, the vehicle is transported or has to be towed with only one axle on the ground.

False alarms

Interior monitoring will only operate correctly if the vehicle is completely closed. Please observe related legal requirements.

The following cases may cause a false alarm:

- Open windows (partially or fully),
- Movement of objects inside the vehicle, such as loose papers, items hanging from the rear vision mirror (air fresheners), etc.

Note

• If the vehicle is relocked and the alarm is activated without the volumetric sensor function, relocking will activate the alarm with all its functions, except the volumetric sensor. This function is reactivated when the alarm is switched on again, unless it is deliberately switched off.

• If the alarm has been triggered by the volumetric sensor, this will be indicated by a flashing of the warning lamp on the driver door when the vehicle is opened. The flash is different to the flash indicating the alarm is activated.

• The vibration of a mobile phone left inside the vehicle may cause the vehicle interior monitoring alarm to trigger, as both sensors react to movements and shakes inside the vehicle.

• If on activating the alarm, any door or the rear lid is open, only the alarm will be activated. The vehicle interior monitoring and the anti-tow system will only be activated once all the doors are closed (including the rear lid).

Deactivating the vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow system*

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered if movements are detected in the interior (e.g. by animals) or if the vehicle's inclination is changed (e.g. during transport). You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by switching off the vehicle interior monitoring and/or tow-away protection.

– To switch off the interior monitoring and tow-away protection, switch off the ignition »

and, using the Infotainment system, select: Infotainment button CAR / and then the **SETTINGS > Opening and closing > Central locking > Vehicle interior monitoring** button.

– When the vehicle is locked now, the vehicle interior monitoring and the tow-away protection are switched off until the next time the door is opened.

If the anti-theft security system (Safelock)* ››› page 128 is switched off, the vehicle interior monitoring and the tow-away protection are automatically switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Description on page 127.

Rear lid

Opening and closing

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 16

⚠ WARNING

- **Always close the rear lid properly. Risk of accident or injury.**
- **The rear lid must not be opened when the reverse or rear fog lights are lit. This may damage the tail lights.**
- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. The glass could smash. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the rear lid is locked after closing it. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the rear lid and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Closing the rear lid without observing and ensuring it is clear could cause serious injury to you and to third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of the rear lid.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, exhaust gases may enter into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **If you only open the rear lid, do not leave the key inside. The vehicle cannot be opened if the key is left inside.**

Controls for the windows

Opening and closing the electric windows

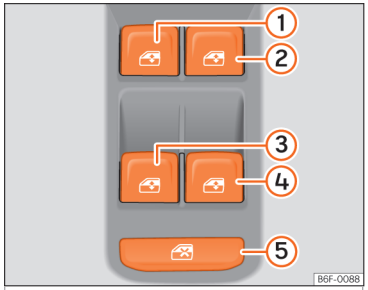


Fig. 141 Detail of the driver door: controls for the front and rear windows.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 18

The front and rear electric windows can be operated by using the controls on the driver door. The other doors each have a switch for their own window.

Always close the windows fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ››› ⚠.

You can use the electric windows for approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition if neither the driver door nor the front

passenger door has been opened and the key has not been removed from the ignition.

Safety switch

The safety switch ››› Fig. 141 ⑤ on the driver door can be used to disable the electric window buttons on the rear doors.

- *Safety switch not pressed*: buttons on rear doors are activated.
- *Safety switch pressed*: buttons on rear doors are deactivated. The safety control symbol lights up in yellow if the buttons on the rear doors are switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Set of keys on page 125.

- **Incorrect use of the electric windows can result in injury.**
- **Never close the rear lid without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **If the ignition is switched on, the electric equipment could be activated with risk of injury, for example, in the electric windows.**
- **The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could become an obstacle for assistance in an emergency situation.**
- **Therefore always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **The electric windows will work until the ignition has been switched off and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **If necessary, use the safety switch to disable the rear electric windows. Make sure that they have been disabled.**

Note

If the window is not able to close because it is stiff or because of an obstruction, the window will automatically open again ››› page 137. If this happens, check why the window could not be closed before attempting to close it again.

Roll-back function

The roll-back function reduces the risk of injury when the electric windows close.

- If a window is obstructed when closing automatically, the window stops at this point and lowers immediately ››› ⚠.
- Next, check why the window does not close before attempting it again.
- If you try within the following 10 seconds and the window closes again with difficulty or there is an obstruction, the automatic closing will stop working for 10 seconds.
- If the window is still obstructed, the window will stop at this point.
- If there is no obvious reason why the window cannot be closed, try to close it again by pulling the tab within ten seconds. The window closes with maximum force. **The roll-back function is now deactivated.**

If more than 10 seconds pass, the window will open fully when you operate one of the buttons. One-touch closing is reactivated.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle, even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Please ensure that children are never left alone inside the vehicle.**
- **The electric windows will work until the ignition has been switched off and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **Closing the windows without observing and ensuring it is clear could cause serious injury to you and third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **Never allow people to remain in the vehicle when you close the vehicle from the outside. The windows cannot be opened even in an emergency.**
- **The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body getting pinched against the window frame. Risk of accident.**

Convenience opening and closing

Use the convenience opening/closing function to easily open/close all the windows from the outside.

Convenience open function

– Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all the windows have reached the desired position, or

– First unlock the vehicle using the button on the remote control key and then keep the key in the driver door lock until all the windows have reached the required position.

Convenience close function

– Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all the windows are closed ››› ⚠, or

– Lock the driver's door with the key and hold the key in the lock position until all the windows are closed

Programming convenience opening in the Easy Connect*

– Select: CAR / SETTINGS> **Opening and closing > Electric windows > Convenience opening**, to choose between all the windows (**All**), only the driver's window (**Driver**) or none (**Deactivated**).

⚠ WARNING

- **Never close the windows without due care or proper control. There is a risk of suffering injury.**
- **For safety reasons, you should only use the remote control open and close functions within about 2 metres of the vehicle. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows when pressing the button to close them. The windows stop moving as soon as the button is released.**

One-touch opening and closing*

One-touch opening and closing means you do not have to hold down the button.

Buttons ››› Fig. 141 ①, ②, ③ and ④ have two positions for opening windows and two for closing them. This makes it easier to open and close windows to the desired position.

One-touch closing

– Pull up the window button briefly up to the second position. The window closes fully.

One-touch opening

– Push down the window button briefly up to the second position. The window opens fully.

Resetting one-touch opening and closing

– The automatic open and close function will not work if the battery has been temporarily disconnected. The function can be restored as follows:

– Close the window as far as it will go by lifting and holding the electric window switch.

– Release the switch and then lift it again for 1 second. This will re-enable the automatic function.

If you push (or pull) a button to the first stage, the window will open (or close) until you release the button. If you push or lift the button briefly to the second stage, the window will open (one-touch opening) or close (one-touch closing) automatically. If you operate the button while the window is opening or closing, it stops at this position.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Control lamps

It lights up
Driving light totally or partially faulty.
Fault in the cornering light system.

It lights up
Rear fog light switched on ››› page 140.

It lights up
Left or right turn signal. The control lamp flashes twice as fast when a turn signal is faulty.
Hazard warning lights on ››› page 143.

It lights up
Trailer turn signals

It lights up
Main beam on or flasher on ››› page 140.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Warning symbols on page 118.

Switching lights on and off

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 31

The driver is personally responsible for the correct use and adjustment of the lights in all situations.

Note

- **The legal requirements regarding the use of vehicle lights in each country must be observed.**
- **The dipped beam headlights will only work with the ignition on. The side lights come on automatically when the ignition is turned off.**
- **If the lights are left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, an audible warning sounds while the driver door remains open. This is a reminder to switch the lights off.**
- **The use of the lighting described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements.**

Automatic dipped beam control AUTO*

The automatic dipped beam control is merely intended as an aid and is not able to recognise all driving situations.

When the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the vehicle lights and the instrument panel and switch lighting switch on and off automatically in the following situations ››› ⚠ **in Daytime running lights on page 140**:

Automatic switching on	Automatic switching off
The photo sensor detects *darkness*, for example, when driving through a tunnel.	When adequate lighting is detected.
The rain sensor detects rain and activates the windscreen wipers.	When the windscreen wipers have been inactive for a few minutes.

⚠ WARNING

If the road is not well lit and other road users cannot see the vehicle well enough or at all, accidents may occur.

- **The automatic dipped beam control (AUTO) only switches on the dipped beam when there are no changes in brightness, and not, for example when it is foggy.**

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights consist of individual lights, integrated in the front headlights. By connecting the daytime running lights, these lights are switched on[1] ››› ⚠.

The daytime running lights switch on every time the ignition is switched on, if the switch is in positions **0** or **AUTO**, according to the level of exterior lighting.

When the light switch is in position **AUTO**, a light sensor automatically switches dipped beam on and off (including the control and instrument lighting) or the daytime running lights depending on the level of exterior lighting.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never drive with daytime lights if the road is not well lit due to weather or lighting conditions. Daytime lights do not provide enough light to illuminate the road properly or be seen by other road users.**
- **On vehicles with rear lights with bulbs, when activating the daytime running light the rear lights are not switched on. A vehicle which does not have the rear lights on may not be visible to other drivers in the darkness, in the case of heavy rain or in conditions of poor visibility.**

[1] On vehicles equipped with rear LED lights, the rear side light is switched on as well.

Fog lights

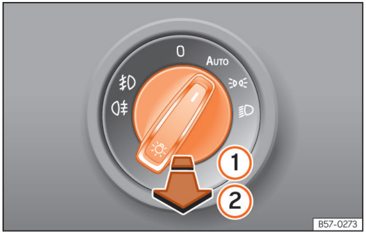


Fig. 142 Instrument console: light panel.

Switching on the front fog lights*

- Pull the light switch to the first point ››› Fig. 142 (1), from positions ⁼D0⁼, ≣D or **AUTO**. The symbol ≢D in the light switch lights up.

Switching on the rear fog light (vehicles with front fog lights)

- Completely pull the light switch (2) from position ⁼D0⁼, ≣D or **AUTO**. The 0≢ lamp on the instrument panel lights up.

Switching on the rear fog light (vehicles with no front fog lights)

- Completely pull the light switch (2) from position ⁼D0⁼, ≣D or **AUTO**. This type of switch only has one position. The 0≢ lamp on the instrument panel lights up.

Turn signal and main beam lever

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 32

Parking lights

- Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the lock.
- Move the turn signal lever up or down to turn the right or left-hand parking lights on, respectively.

Convenience turn signals

For the one-touch signalling, when the ignition is switched on, move the lever as far as possible upwards or downwards and release the lever. The turn signal will flash three times.

One-touch signalling is activated and deactivated in the Easy Connect system via the CAR / button and the function button `SETTINGS > Lights > One-touch signalling` ››› page 34.

In vehicles that do not have the corresponding menu, this function can be deactivated in a specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

- **If the convenience turn signals are operating (three flashes) and the other convenience turn signals are switched on, the active part stops flashing and only flashes once in the new part selected.**
- **The *turn signals* only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning lamp ⇦ ⇨ flashes in the instrument panel. The control lamp ⇳ flashes when the turn signals are operated, provided a trailer is correctly attached and connected to the vehicle. If a turn signal bulb is defective, the control lamp flashes at double speed. If the trailer turn signal bulbs are defective, the control lamp ⇳ does not light up. Change the bulb.**
- **The *main beam headlights* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the instrument panel.**
- **The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as you pull the lever – even if no other lights are switched on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the instrument panel.**
- **When the *parking lights* are switched on, the headlight and the tail light on the corresponding side of the vehicle light up. The parking lights will only work with the ignition off. If said light is on, an audible warning will be emitted while the driver door is open.**
- **If the turn signal lever is left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, an acoustic signal sounds when the driver door is opened. This is intended as a reminder to switch off the turn signal, unless you wish to leave the parking light on.**

Coming Home/Leaving Home Function*

Fig. 143 Related video

The Leaving Home function is controlled with a photosensor.

If the Coming Home or Leaving Home function is connected, the front side and dipped lights, the tail lights and the number plate light will light up to provide assistance.

Coming Home function

The Coming Home function is activated by switching off the ignition. When the driver door is opened, the Coming Home lighting comes on.

The Coming Home lighting switches off in the following cases:

- If, 30 seconds after being connected, any doors or the rear lid remain open.
- If the light switch is turned to position **0**.
- If the ignition is switched on.

Automatic Leaving Home function

The Leaving Home function is activated when the vehicle is unlocked if:

- the light control is in position **AUTO** and
- the photosensor detects “darkness”.

The Leaving Home lighting switches off in the following cases:

- If the time period for the delay in switching off the headlights has ended
- If the vehicle is locked again.
- If the light switch is turned to position **0**.
- If the ignition is switched on.

»

Note

• To activate the Coming/Leaving home function, the rotary light switch must be in position AUTO and the light sensor must detect darkness.

Fog lights with cornering light function*

✓ Not available on vehicles equipped with full-LED headlights and bulb fog lights.

The *cornering* light function is an additional function to the dipped beam headlights to improve lighting of the side of the road when taking a sharp turn at low speed.

The *cornering* light function works when the dipped beam headlights are already on and it is enabled when driving at speeds below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Forward gear

- If the steering wheel is turned to the right or the right-hand turn signal switched on, the right-hand fog lamp is gradually switched on.
- If the steering wheel is turned to the left or the left-hand turn signal switched on, the left-hand fog lamp is gradually switched on.
- After the turn, the *cornering* light function is gradually switched off.

Reverse gear

- When engaging the reverse gear, both fog lights turn on.

Motorway light*

The motorway light is available on vehicles equipped with full-LED lights.

The function is connected/disconnected via the corresponding Easy Connect system menu.

- **Activation:** when going above 110 km/h (68 mph) for more than 10 seconds, the dipped beam raises slightly to increase the driver's visibility distance.
- **Deactivation:** when reducing the speed of the car below 100 km/h (62 mph), the dipped beam returns to its normal position.

Driving abroad

The light beam of the dipped beam lights is asymmetric: the side of the road on which you are driving is lit more intensely.

When a car that is manufactured in a country that drives on the right travels to a country that drives on the left (or vice versa), it is normally necessary to cover part of the headlight bulbs with stickers or to change the adjustment of the headlights to avoid dazzling other drivers.

In such cases, the regulations specify certain light values that must be complied with for designated points of the light distribution. This is known as “Tourist light”.

The light distribution of the halogen and full-LED headlights allows the specific “tourist light” values to be met without the need for stickers or changes in the settings.

Note

“Tourist light” is only allowed temporarily. If you are planning a long stay in a country that drives on the other side, you should take the vehicle to an Authorised Technical Service to change the headlights.

Headlight range control

Fig. 144 Instrument panel: headlight range control.

The lights range control adapts according to the value of the headlight beam and the vehicle load status. This offers the driver optimum visibility and the headlights do not dazzle oncoming drivers ››› ⚠.

The headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam is switched on.

To reset, turn switch ››› **Fig. 144**:

Value	Vehicle load status[a)]
–	Two front occupants, luggage compartment empty
1	All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty
2	All seats occupied, luggage compartment full. With trailer and minimum drawbar load.
3	Driver only, luggage compartment full With trailer and maximum drawbar load.

a) If the vehicle load does not correspond to those shown in the table, it is possible to select intermediary positions.

Dynamic headlight range control

The control is not mounted in vehicles with dynamic headlight range control. The headlight range is automatically adjusted according to the vehicle load status when they are switched on.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle may mean that the headlights dazzle and distract other drivers. This could result in a serious accident.

- **Adjust the light beam to the vehicle load status so that it does not blind other drivers.**

Hazard warning lights ⚠

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 32

The hazard warning lights are used to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle in emergencies.

If your vehicle breaks down:

1. Park your vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic.
2. Press the button to switch on the hazard warning lights ››› ⚠.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Apply the handbrake.
5. For a manual gearbox, engage 1st gear; for an automatic gearbox, move the gear lever to **P**.
6. Use the warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
7. Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.

All turn signals flash simultaneously when the hazard warning lights are switched on. The two turn signal turn signal lamps ⇦⇨ and the turn signal lamp in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The simultaneous hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Always use the hazard warning lights and a warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle.**
- **Due to the high temperatures that the catalytic converter can reach, never park** »

in an area where the catalytic converter could come into contact with highly inflammable materials, for example dry grass or spilt petrol. This could start a fire.

Note

- **The battery will run down if the hazard warning lights are left on for a long time, even if the ignition is switched off.**
- **The use of the hazard warning lights described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements.**

Interior lights

Lighting of the instrument panel, screens and controls

Fig. 145 Related video

Depending on the model, the lighting of the instrument panel and controls can be adjusted in the Easy Connect system, using the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS** function button ››› page 34.

With the ignition on and without light activation, the analogue instrument panel lighting remains activated in daytime light conditions. The lighting is reduced as the exterior light diminishes. In some cases, e.g. when driving through a tunnel without the **AUTO** function active, the instrument panel lighting may even switch off. The objective of this function is to provide the driver with a visual indication that he or she should activate the dipped beam.

If your vehicle is equipped with a digital instrument panel (Digital SEAT Cockpit), the following message will appear **`Turn on the lights`** on the instrument panel.

Interior and reading lights

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 33

Luggage compartment lighting

The light is activated when the rear lid is open, even when the ignition and lights are turned off. For this reason, ensure that the rear lid is always closed.

Ambient light*

The ambient light lights up the area of the centre console and the footwell area and, depending on the version, the front door panels as well.

It will be switched on at full brightness when the doors are opened and the lights will be dimmed during driving, when the light selector is in , or **AUTO**.

The brightness of the ambient light* can be adjusted through the Easy Connect menu, as can colour, in versions with lighting on the front door panel (the CAR / button and the function button **`SETTINGS > background lighting`** ››› page 34).

Note

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the ignition key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery from discharging.

Visibility

Heated rear window

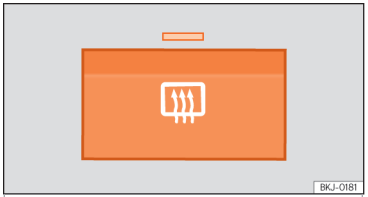


Fig. 146 With the air conditioning controls: heated rear window.

The heated rear window only works when the engine is running. When it is switched on, a lamp lights up on the switch.

After approximately 8 minutes, the heating device of the rear window switches off automatically.

For the sake of the environment

The heated rear window should be switched off as soon as the glass is demisted. By saving electrical power you can also save fuel.

Note

To avoid possible damage to the battery, an automatic temporary disconnection of this function is possible, coming back on when normal operating conditions are re-established.

Sun visors

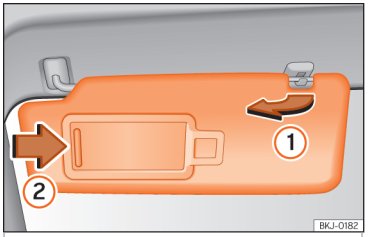


Fig. 147 Sun visor on the driver side.

Options for adjusting driver and front passenger sun visors:

- Lower the sun visor towards the windscreen.
- The sun visor can be pulled out of its mounting and turned towards the door ››› Fig. 147 (1).
- Swing the sun visor towards the door, longitudinally backwards.

Vanity mirror

There is a vanity mirror, with a cover (2), on the rear of the sun blind.

WARNING

Folded sun blinds can reduce visibility.

- **Always store sun blinds and visors in their housing when not in use.**

Windscreen wiper and rear window wiper systems

Windscreen wiper and window wiper

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 33

WARNING

- **Worn and dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and safety levels while driving.**
- **In cold conditions you should not use the wash/wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. The windscreen washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.**
- **Always note the corresponding warnings ››› page 61.**

»

⚠ WARNING

The rain sensor* may not detect enough rain to switch on the wipers.

- If necessary, switch on the wipers manually when water on the windscreen obstructs visibility.

CAUTION

In icy conditions, always check that the windscreen wipers and the window wiper are not frozen. If you switch on the windscreen wipers when the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen, you could damage both the wiper blades and the wiper motor.

Note

- The wipers and washers will work only when the ignition is switched on.
- The heat output of the heated jets* is controlled automatically when the ignition is switched on, depending upon the outside temperature.
- In certain versions of vehicles with alarms, the windscreen wiper will only work in interval/rain sensor mode when the ignition is on and the bonnet closed.
- When the interval wipe function is on, the intervals are directly proportional to the speed. This way, the higher the vehicle speed the shorter the intervals.
- If you stop the vehicle with the windscreen wiper in position 1 or 2, it will automatically change to a lower position speed. The set speed will be resumed when the vehicle pulls away.
- The windscreen will be wiped again after approximately five seconds once the "automatic wash/wipe system" has been activated, provided the vehicle is moving (drip function). If you activate the wipers less than 3 seconds after the drip function, a new wash sequence will begin without performing the last wipe. For the "drip" function to work again, you have to turn the ignition off and then on again.
- Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the rain sensor*. This may cause sensor disruption or faults.
- Depending on the version of the model, when you engage reverse gear and with the headlight wiper activated, this can start a wipe.

Rear view mirrors

Interior mirror

It is dangerous to drive if you cannot see clearly through the rear window.

Interior mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function*

The anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.

When the anti-dazzle function is enabled, the interior rear vision mirror will darken **automatically** according to the amount of light it receives. The anti-dazzle function is cancelled if reverse gear is engaged.

Note

- The automatic anti-dazzle function will only work properly if the sun blind* for the rear window is retracted and there are no other objects preventing light from reaching the interior rear vision mirror.
- If you have to stick any type of sticker on the windscreen, do not do so in front of the sensors. Doing so could prevent the anti-dazzle function from working well or even from working at all.

Folding in the exterior mirrors manually

The exterior mirrors of the vehicle may be folded in. For this, press the mirror housing towards the vehicle.

Note

Before washing the vehicle with an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors to avoid damage.

Electric exterior mirrors*

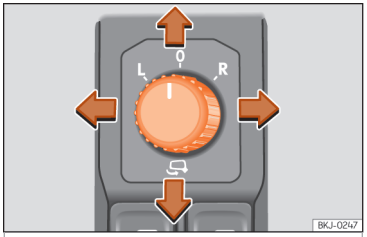


Fig. 148 Exterior mirror controls.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 20

The exterior mirrors can be adjusted using the rotary knob in the driver door.

Basic setting of exterior mirrors

1. Turn knob ››› Fig. 148 to position **L** (**left exterior mirror**).
2. Turn the rotary knob to position the exterior mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.
3. Turn the knob to position **R** (**right exterior mirror**).
4. Swivel the rotary knob to position the exterior mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle ››› ⚠.

Heated exterior mirrors*

– Press the demisting button ››› Fig. 146

– The mirrors demist for some minutes to prevent draining the battery unnecessarily.

– If necessary, press the button again to repeat the function.

– The exterior mirror heating is not activated in temperatures above approximately +20°C (+68°F).

Folding in the exterior mirrors electrically*

– Turn the control ››› Fig. 148 to position to fold in the exterior mirrors. You should always fold in the exterior mirrors if you are driving through an automatic car wash. This will help prevent damage.

Folding exterior mirrors back out to the extended position*

– Turn the knob to position L or R to return the exterior mirrors to their original position ››› ⚠.

Fold the rearview mirrors when locking the vehicle*

The Easy Connect system, the CAR / button and the function buttons **SETTINGS > Mirrors and windscreen wipers** can be used to have the exterior mirrors fold in when the vehicle is parked and locked ››› page 34.

When the vehicle is locked with the remote control, the exterior mirrors are retracted automatically. When the vehicle is opened with the remote control, the exterior mirrors are deployed automatically.

⚠ WARNING

- **Convex or aspheric mirrors increase the field of vision however the objects appear smaller and further away in the mirrors. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could make a mistake. Risk of accident.**
- **If possible, use the rear vision mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you.**
- **Make sure that you do not get your finger trapped between the mirror and the mirror base when folding back the mirrors. Risk of injury!**

»

For the sake of the environment

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Otherwise, it is an unnecessary fuel waste.

Note

- If the electrical adjustment ever fails to operate, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.
- In vehicles with retractable external rear-view mirrors, the following must be considered: if, due to an external force (e.g. being knocked while manoeuvring), the adjustment of the mirror housing is altered, the mirror will have to be fully folded electrically. Do not readjust the rear vision mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
- The fold-in function on the exterior mirrors will not activate at speeds over 40 km/h (25 mph).

Seats and head restraints

Adjusting the seat and head restraints

Adjusting the front seats

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 19

WARNING

The safe driving chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and observe for your own safety and the safety of your passengers ››› page 63.

WARNING

- Never adjust the driver or front passenger seat while the vehicle is in motion. While adjusting your seat, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. Risk of accidents. Adjust the driver or front passenger seat only when the vehicle is stationary.
- To reduce the risk of injury to the driver and front passenger in case of a sudden braking or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted towards the rear. The maximum protection of the seat belt can be achieved only when the backrests are in an upright position and the driver and front passenger have properly adjusted their seat belts. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to improper positioning of the belt web!
- Exercise caution when securing the seat height into forwards/backwards position. Injuries can be caused if the seat height is adjusted without due care and attention.
- To move the seat forwards and backwards, pull upwards and not sideways on the lever, as the force exerted on it in that direction could damage it.

Adjusting the front head restraints

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 19

Adjust the head restraint ››› page 19 so that as far as possible the top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head. When this is not possible, try to get as close as possible to this position.

WARNING

- Never drive if the head restraints have been removed. Risk of injury.
- After refitting the head restraint, you must always adjust it properly for height to achieve optimal protection.
- Please observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Correct adjustment of front head restraints on page 67.

Note

• When fitting the head restraints again, insert the tubes as far as possible into the guides without pressing the button.

Adjustment of the rear head restraints

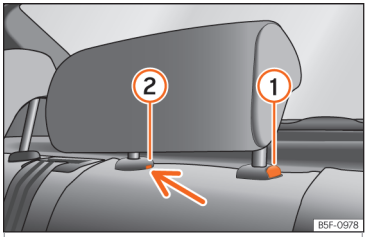


Fig. 149 Rear centre head restraint: release point.

When transporting people in the back seat, place the head restraints of the occupied seats at a minimum of the next socket up ››› ⚠.

Adjusting the head restraints

– To set the head restraint higher, grasp the sides with both hands and move it upwards, until you see it engage.

– To set the head restraint lower down, press the ① ››› Fig. 149 button and move it downwards.

Removing the head restraint

To remove the head restraint, the corresponding backrest must be partially folded forward.

– Unlock the backrest ››› page 151.

– Move the head restraint upwards until it arrives to the top.

– Press button ①, while simultaneously pressing on the security hole ② with a flat screwdriver a maximum of 5 mm wide, and remove the head restraint.

– Move the backrest until it engages properly ››› ⚠.

Fitting the head restraint

To mount the external head restraints, the corresponding backrest must be partially folded forward.

– Unlock the backrest ››› page 151.

– Insert the head restraint bars into the guides until they perceptibly engage. It should not be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest.

– Move the backrest until it engages properly ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

• Please observe the general notes ››› page 68.

• Remove the rear head restraints only when it is necessary for the placement of a child seat ››› page 80. After removing a child seat, remount the head restraint immediately. Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.

Seat functions

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Inappropriate use of the seat functions can cause severe injuries.

• Assume the proper sitting position before your trip and remain in it throughout. This also applies to the other occupants.

• Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other parts of the body away from the operating radius and the adjustment of seats.

Heated seats*

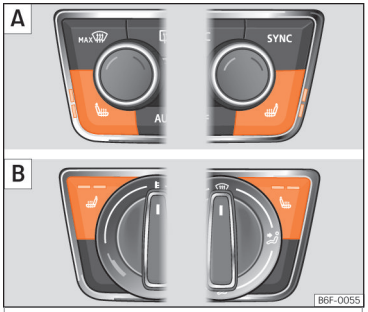


Fig. 150 On the centre console: front seats heating switch A: version with Climatronic. B: version with manual air conditioning.

The seat cushions can be heated electrically when the ignition is switched on. The backrest is also heated in some versions.

The seat heating should not be engaged in any of the following conditions:

- The seat is unoccupied.
- The seat has a covering.
- There is a child seat installed in the seat.
- The seat cushion is wet or damp.
- The indoor or outdoor temperature is greater than 25°C (77°F).

Activate

Press the button or . Seat heating is switched on fully.

Adjusting the heating output

Press the button or repeatedly until the desired temperature is reached.

Deactivating

Press the button or until all the warning lamps switch off.

⚠ WARNING

Children and people who cannot perceive pain or temperature because of medications, paralysis or chronic diseases (e.g. diabetes) or have a limited perception of these, may suffer burns to the back, buttocks or legs when using seat heating, an occurrence that may entail a very lengthy recovery period or from which it may not be possible to recover fully. Seek medical advice if you have doubts regarding your health.

- **People with limited pain and temperature thresholds must never use seat heating.**
- **If an abnormality in the device's temperature control is detected, have it checked by a specialist workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

If the fabric of the cushion is wet, this can adversely affect the operation of the seat heating, increasing the risk of burns.

- **Make sure the seat cushion is dry prior to using the seat heater.**
- **Do not sit on the seat with clothing that is wet or damp.**
- **Do not leave clothing that is wet or damp on the seat.**
- **Do not spill liquid on the seat.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heaters, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure to a single point on the seat cushion or backrest.**
- **Liquids, sharps objects and insulating materials (e.g. covers or child seats) can damage the seat heating.**
- **In the event of smells, switch off the seat heating immediately and have it inspected by a specialised workshop.**

For the sake of the environment

The seat heating should remain on only when needed. Otherwise, it is an unnecessary fuel waste.

Fold down the rear seats

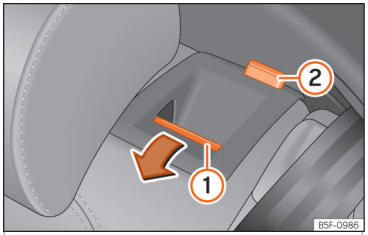


Fig. 151 On the rear seat backrest: release button (1); red mark (2).

Folding the backrest forwards

- Completely lower the rear headrests ››› page 148.
- Press the unlock button ››› Fig. 151 (1) forwards and at the same time fold the backrest down. The rear seat backrest is not engaged when the red marking of the button (2) is visible.

Converting the table to a seat

- Raise and lock in the back rest. The red marking on the tab (2) should no longer be visible when the backrest is properly secured.

On split rear seats*, the backrest can be lowered in two sections.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please be careful when folding back the backrest! Injuries can be caused if the seat height is adjusted without due care and attention.**
- **Do no trap or damage seat belts when raising the backrest.**
- **After raising the backrest, check it has engaged properly in position. Do this by pulling on the central seat belt or directly on the backrest and check that the position lever is in the neutral position.**
- **The three point automatic seat belt only works correctly when the backrest of the central seat is correctly engaged.**

Removable seat covers

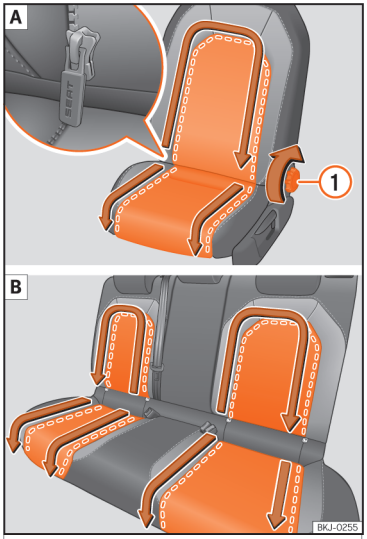


Fig. 152 Remove the covers. A Left front seat; B Rear seats »

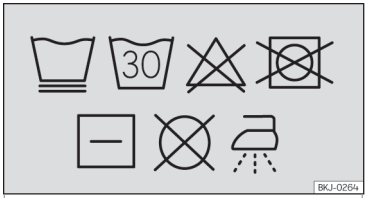


Fig. 153 Label on the covers: washing instruction symbols

Seasonal seats are seats with removable, reversible, exchangeable and washable covers.

Removing the cover

It is suggested to move the rear seats to their rearmost position so it is easier to remove and put the covers.

- Move the seat backwards until the handle of the zip is completely accessible ››› Fig. 152 ①[1].
- Move the handle of the zip in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› Fig. 152. The removable cover is released.
- Pull the cover off.
- Move the seat back to driving position[1].

Putting the cover

- Move the seat backwards until the anchor point of the zip is completely accessible[1].
- Place the removable cover on the anchor of the zip (the pillows have 2 anchor points).
- Move the handle of the zip against the direction indicated by the arrow ››› Fig. 152.
- Insert the excess fabric in the joint between pillow and backrest, ensuring that the removable cover is firm[1].
- Move the seat back to driving position[1].

CAUTION

- **Washing instructions for removable covers ››› Fig. 153:**
  - **Wash the covers in a washing machine using a delicate program, with water at 30°C and separately.**
  - **Do not use bleach, centrifuge or dry-clean.**
  - **Hang out the covers horizontally.**
  - **Iron the covers with steam, placing a piece of fabric between cover and iron.**
  - **Avoid contact between the iron and the Alcantara leather parts.**

Note

- **If using the seats without removable covers, the handle of the zip must be at the start of the zip.**
- **To clean the upholstery of the seats, see the fabric cleaning section ››› page 339.**

[1] Only in font seats.

Transport and practical equipment

Practical equipment

Glove compartment

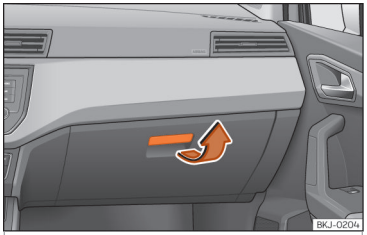


Fig. 154 Passenger side: glove compartment.

The compartment can be opened by pulling the lever ››› Fig. 154.

This compartment can hold documents in A4 format, a water bottle of 1.5 L, etc.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the CD player is located in the glove compartment. Separate operating instructions are enclosed for this equipment in the corresponding Instruction Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Always keep the storage compartment cover closed while the vehicle is in motion in order to reduce the risk of injury caused by a sudden braking or by an accident.

Storage compartment under the front seats*

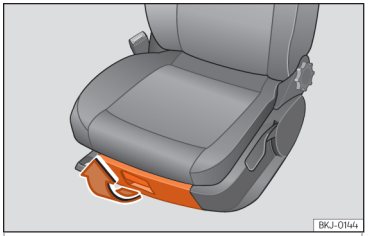


Fig. 155 Storage compartment under the right front passenger seat.

To open

– The compartment is opened by pulling on the lever and guiding it with your hand.

To close

– Press the cover inwards until the closed drawer “clicks” into position.

Note

The storage drawer will hold a maximum weight of 1.5 kg.

Storage pocket in the seat*

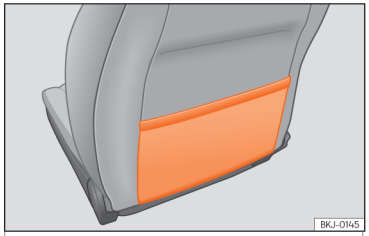


Fig. 156 Storage pocket.

There is a storage pocket on the rear of the front seats.

Storage compartment in front door panel*

In this storage compartment a 1.5l water bottle, etc. can be stored.

Front drink holder*

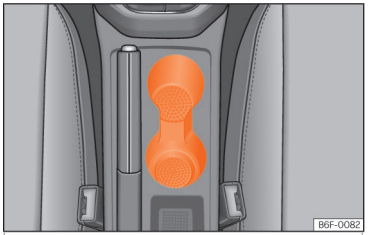


Fig. 157 Front drink holders in the centre console.

In the central console, next to the hand brake, there are two drinks holders ››› Fig. 157.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not put hot drinks in the drink holders. During sudden or normal driving manoeuvres, when braking suddenly or in case of an accident, the hot drink could spill. Risk of scalding.**
- **Never use rigid materials (for example, glass or ceramic), since they could cause injury in the case of an accident.**
- **When travelling, the drinks holder should always be closed to prevent risk in the event of sudden breaking or accident.**

Front ashtray*

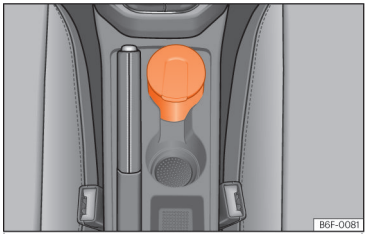


Fig. 158 Ashtray in the centre console.

Opening and closing the ashtray

- To open the ashtray, lift the cover ››› Fig. 158.
- To close, push the cover down.

Emptying the ashtray

- Extract the ashtray and empty it.

⚠ WARNING

Never put paper in the ashtray. Hot ash could ignite the paper in the ashtray and cause a fire.

Electrical power socket

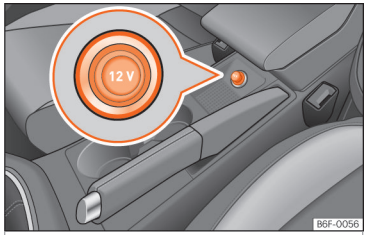


Fig. 159 Front power socket.

The 12 Volt cigarette lighter power socket can also be used for other electrical components with a power rating of up to 120 Watt. When the engine is switched off, however, the vehicle battery will discharge. For further information see ››› page 307.

⚠ WARNING

The power sockets and the connected accessories will only operate when the ignition is on or when the engine is running. Improper use of the sockets or electrical accessories can lead to serious injuries or cause a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children alone inside the vehicle.

ⓘ CAUTION

Always use the correct type of plugs to avoid damaging the sockets.

Note

- The use of electrical appliances with the engine switched off will cause a battery discharge.
- Before using any electrical accessories, see the instructions in ››› page 307.

Cigarette lighter*

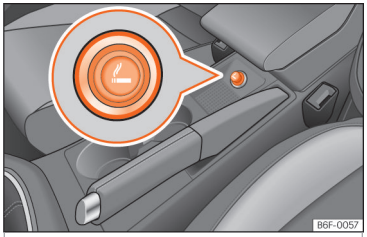


Fig. 160 Lighter.

– Press on the cigarette lighter ››› Fig. 160 to activate it ››› ⚠.

– Wait for the lighter to spring out.

– Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil.

⚠ WARNING

- Improper use of the cigarette lighter can lead to serious injuries or start a fire.
- Using the lighter carefully. Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns and serious injuries.
- The lighter only works when the ignition is turned on or the engine is running. To avoid the risk of fire, never leave children alone inside the vehicle.

Luggage compartment

Loading the luggage compartment

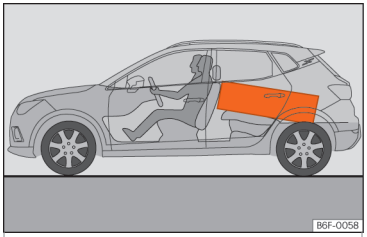


Fig. 161 Position heavy items as far forward as possible.

All luggage and other loose objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. Unsecured objects which shift back and forth could affect safety or driving characteristics of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Place heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment ››› Fig. 161.

– Place the heavy objects first.

– Secure heavy objects to the fitted fastening rings* ››› page 157.

– Secure loose loads with a luggage net* or with non-elastic straps secured to the fastening* rings.

⚠ WARNING

- Loose luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment could cause serious injuries.
- Always stow objects in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings*.
- During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects can be thrown forward, injuring vehicle occupants or even third parties. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag. If this happens, objects may shoot outward like a missile. Risk of fatal injury.
- Always keep all objects in the luggage compartment and use appropriate grips to secure them, particularly in the case of heavy objects. »

- Never exceed the allowed axle weights or allowed maximum weight. If said weights are exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.
- Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect vehicle handling and lead to an accident. Therefore, it is essential to adjust your speed and driving style accordingly, to avoid accidents.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially when the rear lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment, closing the door behind them; they will be trapped and run the risk of death.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Close and lock all the doors and the rear lid when you leave the vehicle. Before you lock the vehicle, make sure that there are no adults or children in the vehicle.
- Please observe the notes on the ››› page 63.

CAUTION

Hard objects on the rear shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the heated rear window and cause damage.

Note

- The tyre pressure must be adjusted according to the load. When necessary, check the tyre pressures on the adhesive label stuck to the back of the front left door frame ››› page 326.
- Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slits in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Ensure that the ventilation slots are never covered.
- Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings* are commercially available from accessory shops.

Luggage compartment shelf

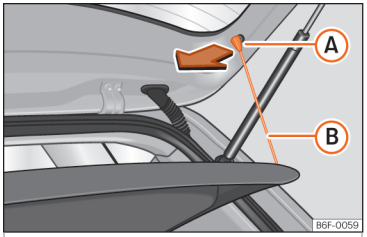


Fig. 162 In the boot: removing and installing the shelf.

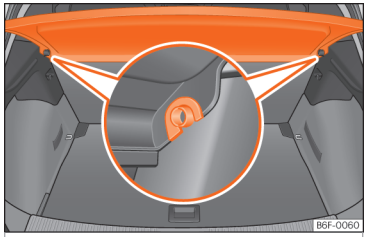


Fig. 163 In the boot: removing and installing the shelf.

Removing

- Detach the cord loops ››› Fig. 162 Ⓑ from their hooks Ⓐ.
- Remove the rear shelf from the side supports ››› Fig. 163 by pulling it upwards and then take it out.

Storing the rear shelf

Depending on the equipment, once the luggage compartment shelf has been removed, it can be stored under the boot's variable floor ››› page 158.

- Remove the side cover sliding it upwards and place the shelf in the bottom.
- Replace the side cover.

To remove it proceed in reverse order.

Fitting

- Insert the cover horizontally so that the "recess" fits onto the axis of the supports ››› Fig. 163 and press down until it engages.
- Hook the loops ››› Fig. 162 Ⓑ to the rear lid.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place heavy or hard objects on the rear shelf, because they will endanger the vehicle occupants in case of sudden braking.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Before closing the rear lid, ensure that the rear shelf is correctly fitted.**
- **An overloaded luggage compartment could mean that the rear shelf is not correctly seated and it may be bent or damaged.**
- **If the luggage compartment is overloaded, remove the tray.**

ⓘ Note

- **Ensure that, when placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, rear visibility is not reduced.**

Fastening rings*

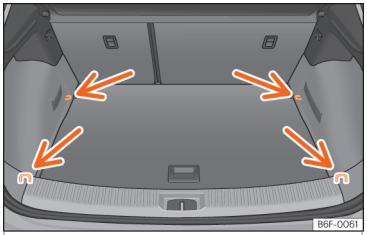


Fig. 164 Location of fastening rings in luggage compartment.

There may be some fastening rings included in the luggage compartment for fastening luggage and other objects ››› Fig. 164 (arrows).

– Always use suitable and undamaged straps to secure luggage and other objects to the fastening rings ››› **⚠ in Loading the luggage compartment on page 155.**

Example: An object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (31 mph), this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to approximately 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this "object" strikes an occupant as it flies through the interior of the vehicle. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag.

⚠ WARNING

- **If pieces of baggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged retaining cords, injuries could result in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.**
- **Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.**

Luggage compartment variable floor

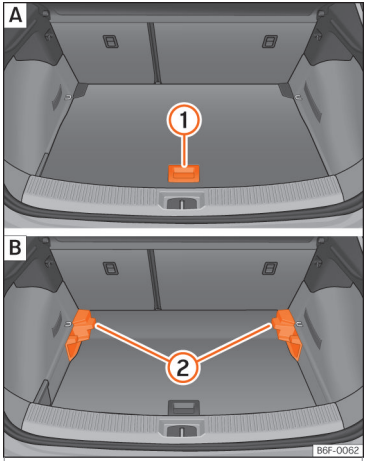


Fig. 165 Variable boot floor: A raised position; B lowered position.

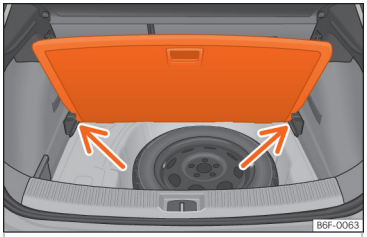


Fig. 166 Variable boot floor: tilted position.

Variable floor in high position

- Lift the floor using handle ››› Fig. 165 (1) and pull it back until the front of the floor has fully passed the supports (2).
- Move the floor forward over the supports as far as the rear seat backrest and then lower the floor with the handle (1).

Variable floor in low position

- Lift the floor using handle (1) and pull it back until the supports (2) have fully passed the front part of the floor.
- Now match the front part with the lower grooves of the supports and slide the floor forwards as far as the rear seat backrest and lower the floor at the same time with the handle (1).

Variable floor in the tilted position

When the variable floor is tilted you can access the spare wheel/anti-puncture kit area.

- Lift the variable floor in the high position using handle (1), pull it up and push it towards the backrest of the rear seats until the floor folds along the hinge line and the movable part of the floor is resting on itself.
- Rest the floor on its housings ››› Fig. 166 (arrows).

⚠ WARNING

During a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident, objects could be flung though the interior and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- **Always secure objects, even when the luggage compartment floor is properly lifted.**
- **Only objects that do not protrude more than 2/3 the height of the floor may be carried between the rear seat and the raised luggage compartment floor.**
- **Only objects that do not weigh than approximately 7.5 kg may be carried between the rear seat and the raised luggage compartment floor.**

CAUTION

- The maximum weight that can be loaded on the luggage compartment variable floor in the top position is 150 kg.
- Do not let the luggage compartment floor fall when closing it. Always carefully guide it downwards in a controlled manner. Otherwise, the lining and the floor of the luggage compartment could be damaged.

Note

SEAT recommends the use of straps to secure objects to retaining rings.

Roof carrier*

Introduction

The vehicle roof has been designed to optimise aerodynamics. For this reason, cross bars or conventional roof carrier systems cannot be secured to the roof water drains.

As the roof water drains are integrated in the roof to reduce air resistance, only SEAT-approved cross bars and roof carrier systems can be used.

Cases in which cross bars and the roof carrier system should be disassembled.

- When they are not used.
- When the vehicle is washed in a car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the maximum height, for example, in some garages.

WARNING

When heavy or bulky loads are transported on the roof carrier system, car driving performance is affected, as the centre of gravity shifts and there is greater wind resistance.

- Always secure the load properly using belts or retaining straps that are suitable and in a good condition.
- Bulky, heavy, long or flat loads have a negative effect on aerodynamics, the centre of gravity and driving performance.
- Avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.
- Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

CAUTION

- Remove the cross bars and the roof carrier system before entering a car wash.
- Vehicle height is increased by the installation of cross bars or a roof carrier system and the load secured on them. For this purpose, check that your vehicle's height does not surpass the headspace limit, for example, for underpasses or for entering garage doors.
- Any cross bars, roof carrier systems or loads secured to them must not interfere with the roof aerial or block the path of the rear lid.
- On opening the rear lid make sure that it does not knock into the roof load.

For the sake of the environment

When cross bars and a roof carrier system are installed, the increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more fuel.

Attach the cross bars and the roof carrier system

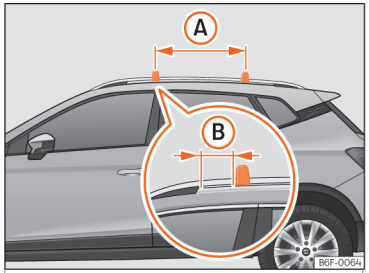


Fig. 167 Attachment points for the roof railings for the roof carrier system.

The crossbars are the basis of a series of special roof carrier systems. For safety »

reasons, special fixtures must be used to safely transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surf boards or boats on the roof. Suitable accessories can be acquired at SEAT dealerships.

Always secure the crossbars and the roof carrier system properly. Always take the assembly instructions that come with the crossbars and the roof carrier system in question into account.

The crossbars are assembled on the roof railings. The distance between cross bars ››› Fig. 167 Ⓐ should be 75 cm and the distance between the cross bars and the brackets of the roof railings Ⓑ should be 5 cm.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect attachment and use of the crossbars and the roof carrier system may cause the whole system to detach from the roof and cause an accident and injuries.

- **Always take the manufacturer assembly instructions into account.**
- **Use only crossbars and the roof carrier system when they are in perfect condition and are properly secured.**
- **Secure the crossbars and the roof carrier system properly.**
- **Check threaded joints and attachments travelling and if necessary tighten them after you have travelled a short distance. When making long trips, check the threaded joints whenever you stop for a rest.**
- **Always fit the special roof carrier systems correctly for wheels, skis and surfboards, etc.**
- **Do not modify or repair the crossbars or roof carrier system.**

Note

Always read the assembly instructions that come with the crossbars and the roof carrier system carefully and keep them in the vehicle.

Loading the roof carrier system

The load can only be secured if the crossbars and the roof carrier system are properly installed ››› ⚠.

Maximum authorised roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is **75 kg**. This figure comes from the combined weight of the roof carrier, the cross bars and the load itself on the roof ››› ⚠.

Always check the weight of the roof carrier system, the cross bars and the weight of the load to be transported and weigh them if necessary. Never exceed the maximum authorised roof load.

If you are using cross bars and a roof carrier with a lower weight rating, you will not be able to carry the maximum authorised roof load. In this case, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof carrier which is listed in the fitting instructions.

Distributing a load

Distribute loads uniformly and secure them correctly ››› ⚠.

Check attachments

Once the cross bars and roof carrier system have been installed, check the bolted connections and attachments after a short journey and subsequently with a certain frequency.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum authorised roof load can result in accidents and considerable vehicle damage.

- **Never exceed the maximum authorised load on the roof and on the axles or the vehicle's maximum authorised weight.**
- **Never exceed the load capacity of the cross bars and the roof carrier system, even if the maximum authorised roof load has not been reached.**
- **Secure heavy items as far forward as possible and distribute the vehicle load uniformly.**

⚠ WARNING

If the load is loose or not secured, it could fall from the roof carrier system or cause accidents and injuries.

- **Always use belts or retaining straps that are suitable and in a good condition.**
- **Secure the load properly.**

Air conditioning

Heating, ventilation and cooling

General notes

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 41

Pollution filter

The pollution filter (a combined particulate filter and active carbon filter) serves as a barrier against impurities in the outside air, including dust and pollen.

For the climate control system to work with maximum efficiency, the pollution filter must be replaced at the specified intervals in the Maintenance Programme.

If the filter loses efficiency prematurely due to use in areas reaching very high pollution levels, the pollen filter must be changed more frequently than stated in the Service Schedule.

⚠ WARNING

Reduced visibility through the windows increases the risk of serious accidents.

- **Always ensure that all windows are free of ice and snow, and that they are not fogged, so as to maintain good visibility of everything outside.**
- **The maximum heat output required to defrost windows as quickly as possible is only available when the engine has reached its normal running temperature. Only drive when you have good visibility.**
- **Always ensure that you use the heating system, fresh air system, air conditioner and the heated rear window to maintain good visibility to the outside.**
- **Never leave the air recirculation on for a long period of time. If the cooling system is switched off and air recirculation mode switched on, the windows can mist over very quickly, considerably limiting visibility.**
- **Switch air recirculation mode off when it is not required.**

⚠ WARNING

Stuffy or used air will increase fatigue and reduce driver concentration possibly resulting in a serious accident.

- **Never leave the fresh air fan turned off or use the air recirculation for long periods of time; the air in the vehicle interior will not be refreshed.**

CAUTION

- **If you suspect that the air conditioner is damaged, switch it off with the A/C button** »

to prevent further damage and have it checked by a specialised workshop.

• Repairs to the air conditioner require specialist knowledge and special tools. Therefore, we recommend you to take the vehicle to a specialised workshop.

Note

• If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, condensation can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

• Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling are not impaired, and to prevent the windows from misting over.

• The air from the vents flows through the vehicle interior and is extracted by slots in the luggage compartment designed for this purpose. Therefore, you should avoid obstructing these slots with any kind of object.

• The air conditioner operates most effectively with the windows closed. However, if the temperature inside the vehicle is excessive because of the sun, the air inside can be cooled faster by opening the windows for a short time.

• Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the air conditioning system leaves residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odour.

• At low outside temperatures, the compressor switches off automatically and cannot be switched on even with the AUTO button.

• It is advisable to turn on the air conditioning at least once a month, to lubricate the system gaskets and prevent leaks. If a decrease in the cooling capacity is detected, a Technical Service should be consulted to check the system.

• To ensure correct operation, the grilles on both sides of the screen must not be obstructed.

• When the engine is under extreme strain, switch off the compressor for a moment.

Economic use of the air conditioning

When the air conditioning is switched on, the compressor consumes engine power and has influence on fuel consumption. Consider the following points in order to have the system operating in the minimum possible time.

• If the vehicle interior has overheated due to an excessive solar radiation, it is best to open the windows or doors to allow the hot air to escape.

• While in motion, the air conditioning should not be switched on if the windows are open.

Air outlets

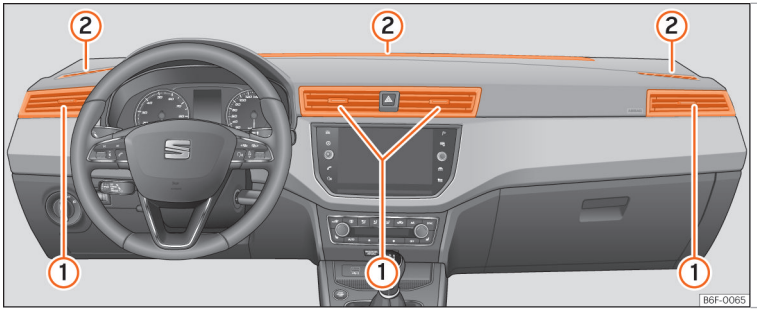


Fig. 168 Air vents.

To ensure proper heating, cooling and ventilation in the vehicle interior, air vents ››› Fig. 168 ① should remain open.

- The outlets can be closed or opened separately using the slats and the air flow directed according to need.

There are other additional, non-adjustable air vents in the dash panel ②, in the footwell and in the rear area of the interior.

Note

Food, medicine and other heat or cold sensitive objects should never be placed in front of the air outlets as they may be damaged or made unsuitable for use by the air coming from the air vents.

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

If the air distribution is in the thaw position, the recirculation flap will always be open (indicator light off).

If the air distribution is switched from any position to the thaw position, recirculation will be automatically deactivated.

Connecting the recirculation

In any air distribution position except thaw:

- Press the button, the button's lamp will light up, indicating that air recirculation inside the vehicle has been activated.

Disconnecting the recirculation

In any air distribution position except thaw:

- Press the button again and the button's lamp will go off, indicating that air entry from the outside has been activated.

In the thaw position the entry of air into the vehicle interior is always from the outside.

WARNING

In air recirculation mode, no cold air from the outside enters the vehicle interior. If the air conditioner is switched off, the windows »

can quickly mist over. Therefore, never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for a long time (risk of accident).

Note

- Activating air recirculation automatically activates the A/C button (to prevent the windows from fogging). If the temperature regulator is turned to the coldest setting (blue point), the air recirculation function and the A/C button are automatically activated.
- If the function is not deactivated by pressing the button, it will deactivate after approximately 20 minutes.

Heating and fresh air

Controls

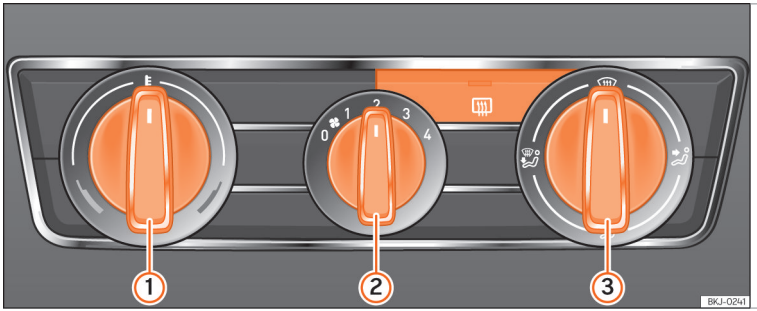


Fig. 169 Heating controls on the dash panel.

① Temperature regulator ››› page 165.

② Blower control. There are four speed settings for the blower. The blower should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

③ Air distribution regulator.

Heated rear window.

Air distribution

Control ③ for setting the flow of air in the required direction.

– Air distribution towards the windscreen in order to demist.

– Air distribution to upper body.

– Air distribution to footwell.

– Air distribution to the windscreen and the footwell.

⚠ WARNING

• For your safety, the windows should never be fogged up or covered with snow or ice. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the demist/defrost functions for the windows.

Note

• Please consider the general notes ››› page 161.

Functions

Ventilating the vehicle interior

The desired temperature inside the vehicle cannot be lower than the ambient temperature.

• Turn the temperature selector ››› Fig. 169 (1) anti-clockwise.

• Turn blower switch (2) to any of the levels 1-4.

• Set the airflow to the desired direction using air distribution control (3).

• Open the relevant air outlets.

Interior heating

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

• Turn the temperature selector ››› Fig. 169 (1) clockwise to select the required temperature.

• Turn blower switch (2) to any of the levels 1-4.

• Set the airflow to the desired direction using air distribution control (3).

• Open the relevant air outlets.

Defrosting the windscreen

• Turn the temperature regulator ››› Fig. 169 (1) clockwise to reach the maximum temperature.

• Turn the blower switch (2) to level 4.

• Turn air distribution control to .

• Close the central outlets.

• Open and turn the side outlets towards the windows.

Keeping the windscreen and the side windows demisted

• Turn the temperature regulator ››› Fig. 169 (1) to the heating zone.

• Turn blower switch (2) to any of the levels 2-3.

• Turn air distribution control to .

• Close the central outlets.

• Open and turn the side outlets towards the windows.

Once the windows are demisted and as a preventive measure, the control (3) can be set in position greater comfort while preventing the windows from misting again.

Note

Remember that the temperature of the engine coolant should be optimum to ensure that the heating system functions correctly (except in vehicles fitted with additional heating*).

Manual air conditioning*

Controls

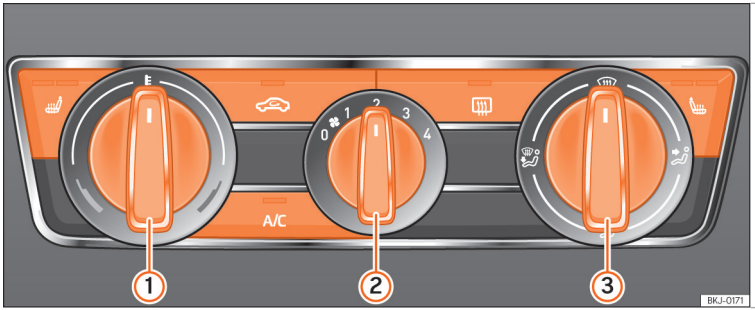


Fig. 170 Air conditioning controls on the dash panel.

(1) Temperature selector ››› page 166

(2) Blower control. There are four speed settings for the blower. At low speed, it is recommended to set the blower to a minimum of 1 to improve the intake of fresh air.

(3) Air distribution regulator.

Air recirculation button ››› page 163. When the function is activated, a warning light on the button is turned on.

Heated rear window.

A/C Button to switch on air conditioning ››› page 166. The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the fan is switched on.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, the windows should never be fogged up or covered with snow or ice. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the demist/defrost functions for the windows.

Note

Please consider the general notes.

Functions

Interior heating

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

- Turn off the cooling system using the **A/C** button ››› Fig. 170 (the button light turns off).
- Turn the temperature regulator (1) to set the desired temperature inside the vehicle.
- Turn the blower switch to any of the settings 1-4.

- Set the air distribution regulator (3) to the air flow configuration desired: (towards the windscreen), (towards the chest), (towards the footwell) and (towards the windscreen and footwell).

Interior cooling

When the air conditioning is switched on, the temperature and the air humidity go down. This way, if the outside humidity is extreme, the air conditioning prevents the misting of the windows and therefore, comfort is improved.

- Turn on the cooling system using the **A/C** button (the button light turns on).
- Turn the temperature control switch until the desired interior temperature is reached.
- Turn the blower switch to any of the settings 1-4.
- Set the air distribution control to the air flow configuration desired: (towards the windscreen), (towards the chest), (towards the footwell) and (towards the windscreen and footwell).

Demisting the windscreen

- Turn air distribution to .
- Turn the fan control to one of the two levels depending on the speed required.
- Rotate the temperature control to the desired level of comfort.
- Close the central outlets.
- Open and turn the side outlets towards the windows.

If the air conditioning does not work, this may be due to the following reasons:

- The engine is stationary.
- The fan blower is switched off.
- The outside temperature is lower than +3°C (+37°F).
- The air conditioning system compressor has been temporarily switched off because of an increased engine coolant temperature.
- The air conditioner fuse is faulty.
- Another fault in the vehicle. Have the air conditioning checked by a specialised workshop.

Climatronic*

General notes

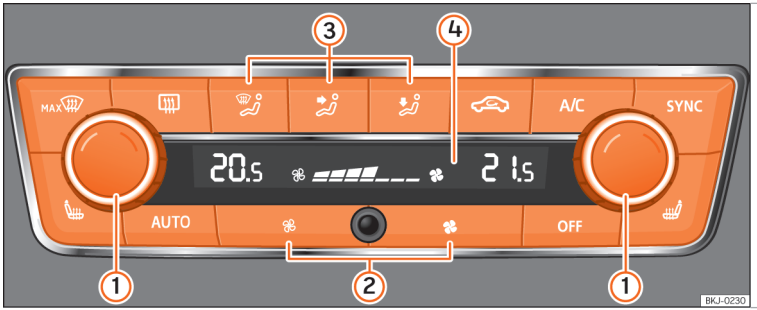


Fig. 171 Climatronic: controls.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 42

Climatronic automatically maintains a comfortable temperature. To do so, it automatically regulates the supplied air temperature and the blower and air distribution levels. The system also allows for the effect of sunlight, so there is no need for manual adjustment.

Automatic operation guarantees maximum comfort any time of year ››› page 169.

Climatronic description

Cooling only works if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running
- the outside temperature is above +2°C (+36°F);
- **A/C** turned on.

Starting the Climatronic

When a button is pressed, the corresponding function will be activated (except for the recirculation button), switching on the air conditioning if it was switched off.

Switching off the Climatronic

- Adjust fan power to zero ››› Fig. 171 ② or press the **OFF** button.

In order to ensure engines subject to heavy loads are cooled, the air conditioning compressor is switched off in the event of high coolant temperatures.

Recommended setting for all seasons of the year

- Set the required temperature. We recommend +22°C (+72°F).
- Press the button **AUTO** ››› Fig. 171.

- Adjust the vents so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Change between degrees Centigrade and degrees Fahrenheit

The units of degrees can be changed via the Easy Connect system using the CAR / button and the function button **SETTINGS > Units > Temperature**.

Automatic mode

Automatic mode is used to maintain a constant temperature and demist the windows inside the vehicle.

- Set a interior temperature between +16°C (+64°F) and +29°C (+84°F).
- Adjust the vents so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.
- Press the **AUTO** button, **AUTO** is displayed on the screen.

Automatic mode is switched off by pressing the air distribution buttons or increasing or decreasing the blower speed. However, the temperature remains regulated.

Adjusting the temperature

- When you switch on the ignition, control (1) ››› Fig. 171 can be used to set the required interior temperature.

It is possible to select interior temperatures from +16°C (+64°F) to +29°C (+84°F). In this range the temperature is regulated automatically. If a temperature below +16°C (+64°F) is selected, "LO" is displayed on the screen. If a temperature above +29°C (+84°F) is selected, "HI" is displayed on the screen. At both extremes, Climatronic works at maximum cooling or heating power, respectively. The temperature is not regulated.

In the event of prolonged, irregular distribution of the air flow from the outlets (particularly the footwells) and significant differences in temperature, e.g. on leaving the vehicle, sensitive people may catch cold.

Fan regulation

Climatronic automatically regulates blower speed according to the interior temperature. It is possible, however, to set the blower speed to suit requirements.

- Press the (2) buttons to increase or reduce fan speed.

Climatronic will switch off when the blower switches off.

Turn on windscreen defrost

- Press the button MAX ››› Fig. 171.

Switching off windscreen defrosting

- Press the MAX button several times or press the **AUTO** button.

The temperature is regulated automatically. The air output from the vents ››› Fig. 168 (2) is increased.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in General notes on page 161.

Note

- **A visit to the specialised service once a year is recommended to clean the Climatronic system.**
- **The interior temperature sensor is at the bottom. Do not cover it with stickers or the like, as this could have a negative effect on Climatronic operations.**

Infotainment System

Introduction

Safety warnings

Infotainment system safety instructions

Travelling on today's roads requires the driver's full attention at all times.

Only operate the radio and its various functions when the traffic situation really permits this.

⚠ WARNING

- Before starting the trip, you should familiarise yourself with the different radio functions.
- High audio volume may represent a danger to you and to others.
- Adjust the volume in a way that you can distinguish surrounding noise, for example, horns and sirens, etc.
- Changes to the Infotainment system settings should be made when the car is stopped, or by a passenger.

⚠ WARNING

Distracting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries. Operating the Infotainment system can distract your attention from the traffic.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.
- Select volume settings that allow you to easily hear signals from outside the vehicle at all times (e.g. emergency services sirens and horns).
- Hearing may be impaired if using too high a volume setting, even if only for short periods of time.

⚠ WARNING

The volume level may suddenly change when you switch audio source or connect a new audio source.

- Lower the base volume before connecting or switching audio sources.

⚠ WARNING

The driving recommendations and traffic indications shown on the navigation system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Traffic signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the navigation system.
- Adjust your vehicle speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Connecting, inserting or removing a data medium while driving can distract your attention from the traffic and cause an accident.

⚠ WARNING

Connecting leads for external devices may obstruct the driver.

- Arrange the connecting leads so that they do not obstruct the driver.

⚠ WARNING

External devices that are loose or not properly secured could move around the passenger compartment during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident and cause damage or injury.

- Never place or fit external devices to the doors, windscreen, steering wheel, dash panel, the backs of the seats, on top of or near the area marked “AIRBAG” or between these areas and the occupants. External devices can cause serious injury in an accident, especially when the airbags inflate.

⚠ WARNING

The armrest may obstruct the driver's arm movements, which could cause an accident and severe injuries.

• Always keep the armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Opening a CD player's housing can lead to injuries from invisible laser radiation.

• Have CD players repaired only by a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

The Infotainment system can be damaged by the incorrect insertion of a data storage device or the insertion of an incompatible data storage device.

• When inserting a data storage device, make sure it is correctly positioned ››› page 191.

• Applying force may irreparably damage the memory card slot locking mechanism.

• Only use compatible memory cards.

• When inserting and removing CDs, always hold them at right angles to the front of the CD drive without tilting so as not to scratch them.

• If a CD is inserted while another is already in the unit or being ejected, the CD drive may be irreparably damaged. Always wait until the data medium is completely ejected.

CAUTION

Any foreign objects stuck to a data storage device and non-round media may damage the CD player.

• Only clean, standard 12-cm CDs should be used.

– Do not affix stickers or other items to the data medium. Stickers may peel off and damage the drive.

– Do not use printable data media. Printed labels and coverings may peel off and damage the CD drive.

– Do not insert 8-cm “single” CDs or irregularly shaped CDs.

– Do not insert DVD-Plus discs, Dual Discs or Flip Discs, as these are thicker than normal CDs.

CAUTION

The vehicle loudspeakers may be damaged if the volume is too high or the sound is distorted.

Note

For the proper functioning of the Infotainment system it is important that the date and time set in the vehicle are correct.

Overview of the unit

Media System Touch / Media System Colour

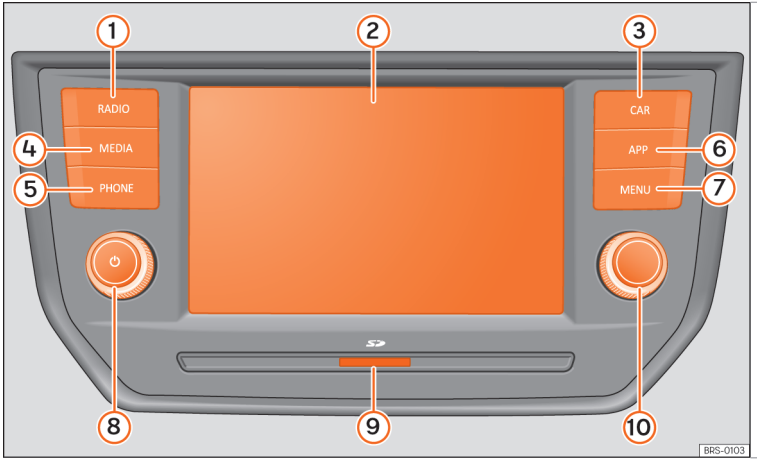


Fig. 172 Overview of the controls (this configuration depends on the version).

1. Radio Mode (change of band frequency **››› page 190**
2. Touchscreen **››› page 175**
3. Vehicle settings **›››** **page 34**, **››› page 208**
4. Media mode (audio sources) **››› page 191**
5. Phone Mode **››› page 209**
6. Full Link **››› page 179**
7. Selecting the main menu **››› page 174**
8. Volume. Off/on **››› page 174**
9. Slot for memory cards **››› page 194**
10. Settings button (search and selection) **››› page 174**

Media System Plus / Navi System

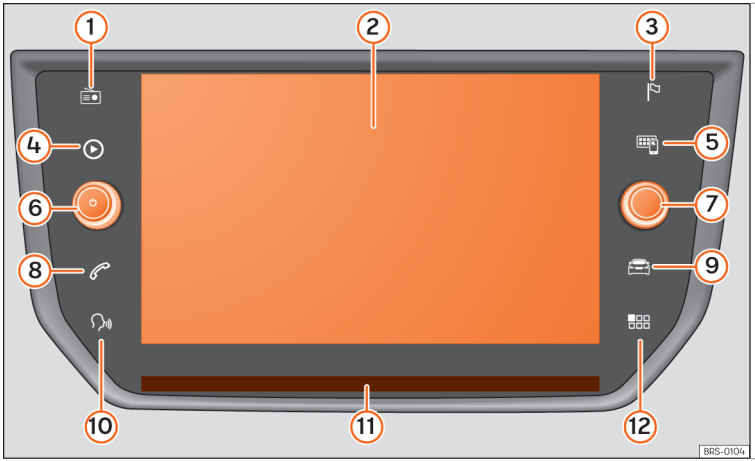


Fig. 173 Overview of the controls (this configuration depends on the version).

1. Radio Mode (change of band frequency **››› page 190**
2. Touchscreen **››› page 175**
3. Navigation Mode **››› page 198**
4. Media mode (audio sources) **››› page 191**
5. Full Link **››› page 179**
6. Volume. Off/on **››› page 174**
7. Settings button (search and selection) **››› page 174**
8. Phone Mode **››› page 209**
9. Vehicle settings **››› page 34, ››› page 208**
10. Voice control
11. Proximity sensor **››› page 178**
12. Selecting the main menu **››› page 174**

General instructions for use

Introduction

Fig. 174 Related video

If the setup is changed, this may change the display on the screen and in some cases, the Infotainment system may behave in a manner different to that described in this manual.

Note

- **Lightly pressing the buttons or briefly pressing the touchscreen is sufficient to operate the Infotainment system.**
- **Not all listed function buttons and functions described may be available due to the device software used in your market. The equipment is not faulty if a function button is missing from the screen.**
- **Due to country-specific legislation, certain functions may not be available on the screen when the vehicle is travelling above a certain speed.**
- **Using a mobile telephone in the vehicle may cause noise from the vehicle loudspeakers.**
- **Restrictions on the use of devices using Bluetooth® technology may apply in some countries. For further information, contact the local authorities.**
- **On some vehicles with ParkPilot, the volume of the audio source is automatically lowered when reverse gear is selected. The volume can be lowered in the menu Sound > `Volume`.**

Diagram of the menus

The Infotainment system touchscreen can be used to select the different main menus.

Press the infotainment button MENU ››› Fig. 172 ⑦, **or** button ››› Fig. 173 ⑫ to open the menu summary.

The display of the touchscreen's main menu can be switched between "grid" and "carousel" via the **`Settings/System > Display`** menu.

Infotainment rotary/push knobs

Rotary/push knobs

The left-hand rotary knob ⏻ is the volume control or the on/off button.

The right-hand rotary knob is the setup button.

Infotainment buttons

The buttons on the unit are shown in this manual with the word "infotainment button" and their function within a rectangle, for example, the infotainment button MENU.

The Infotainment buttons are used by *pressing them* or *pressing and holding*.

Switching on and off

To manually switch the Infotainment system on and off, briefly *press* the rotary knob ⏻ ››› Fig. 172 ⑧, ››› Fig. 173 ⑥.

When switching on, the system starts-up with the last set volume, provided that this does not exceed the preset maximum start-up volume. Select **Sound > `Volume`**.

The unit will switch off automatically when the key is removed from the ignition or when the on/off button is pressed (depending on the equipment fitted or the vehicle). If the Infotainment system is switched on again, it will switch off automatically after approximately 30 minutes (switch-off delay).

Note

- **The Infotainment system is a part of the vehicle. It cannot be used in any other vehicle.**

• If the battery has been disconnected, the ignition must be activated before switching on the Infotainment system.

Changing the basic volume

Increasing or decreasing the volume or muting the sound

Raise the volume: turn the volume control ⏻ clockwise or move the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel upward △.

Lower the volume: turn the volume control ⏻ clockwise or move the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel downward ▽.

Changes in volume are indicated by a volume bar on the screen. The volume can be controlled using the steering wheel controls. In this case, the changes in volume are displayed on the instrument panel by a volume bar.

It is possible to preset certain volume settings and adjustments. Select **Menu** > **Sound** > **Volume**.

Muting the Infotainment system sound

• Turn the volume control ⏻ anti-clockwise until it displays 🔇.

Muting the Infotainment system sound stops the media source that is playing The screen displays 🔇.

Note

If the base volume has been considerably increased to play a certain audio source, lower the volume again before switching to another audio source.

Handling the function buttons and display instructions

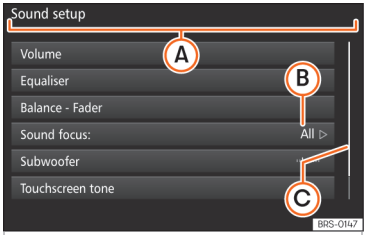


Fig. 175 View of some of the function buttons on the screen.

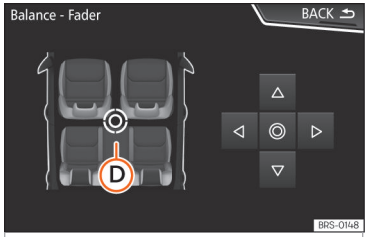


Fig. 176 Sound setup menu

The Infotainment system comes equipped with a touchscreen.

Active areas of the screen that call up a certain function are called “function buttons”. These buttons are operated by *briefly pressing* the screen or by *pressing and holding*.

The function buttons appear in the instructions with the label “function button” and a button symbol (inside a rectangle).

Function buttons start functions or open submenus. The currently selected menu is displayed in the title bar ››› **Fig. 175** Ⓐ of the submenus.

Inactive (grey) function buttons cannot be selected.

Increase or decrease the size of the images displayed on the screen

The size of the navigation map image ››› **page 198** and, for example, photos when »

viewing images ››› page 191 can be enlarged or reduced. To do so, enlarge or reduce the image displayed by moving two fingers.

Overview of screen and function buttons

Display and function buttons: operation and effect	
Ⓐ	The title bar shows the selected menu and, where applicable, other function buttons.
Ⓑ	Press it to open another menu.
Ⓒ	The scroll bar is shown on the right and its size depends on the entries in the list. Move the bar on the screen by pressing lightly and without lifting the finger, see ››› page 176, Opening list entries and searching in lists.
Ⓓ	**Movable cursor**: Move the cursor around the screen by pressing lightly and without lifting the finger.
	OR: To move the cursor to a particular position, press that spot on the screen.
	Fixed crosshair: Press the up, down, left and right arrows to move the sound according to preference. The cursor Ⓓ will move.
	OR: Press the central button to centre the stereo sound in the centre of the passenger compartment

Display and function buttons: operation and effect	
🗀	Press it on some lists to move up a level, one by one.
BACK ⮌	Press to return from the submenus one at a time to the main menu or to undo the entries made.
▽	When pressed, a pop-up window opens (options window) which displays other setup options.
☑ / ☐	Some functions or messages are accompanied by a check box and are activated ☑ or deactivated ☐ by pressing said check box.
OK	Press to confirm an entry or a selection.
×	Press to close a pop-up window or an input window.
+ / –	Press them to change the setup adjustments one at a time.
⊏⊐	Move the slider around the screen by pressing it lightly and without lifting your finger.

Opening list entries and searching in lists

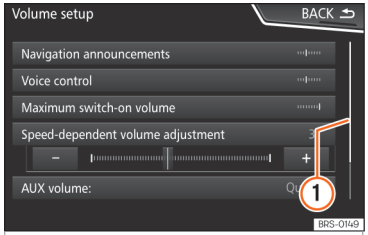


Fig. 177 Entries on a setup menu list.

The entries on a list can be activated by pressing them on the screen directly or by using the adjustment button ››› Fig. 172 ⑩, ››› Fig. 173 ⑦.

Mark list entries using the setup button and open them

- *Turn* the setup button to mark the entries on the list with a rectangle one by one and continue searching the list in this manner.
- *Press* the setup button to activate the marked entry on the list.

Search lists (scrolling the screen)

The scroll bar is shown on the right and its size depends on the entries in the list ››› Fig. 177 ①.

- *Briefly press* the screen above or below the scroll marker.
- **OR:** Place a finger over the scroll marker and *without lifting it*, move it around the screen. Lift your finger off the screen when you reach the desired position.
- **OR:** Place your finger in the centre of the screen and *without lifting it*, move it around the screen. Lift your finger off the screen when you reach the desired position.

Input masks with on-screen keypad

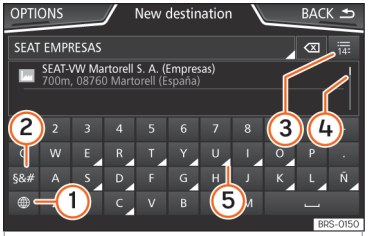


Fig. 178 Input window with on-screen keypad.

Input windows with on-screen keypad are used for functions such as entering an entry name, selecting a destination address or entering a search term for searching long lists.

The function buttons listed below are not available in all countries or for all topics.

Subsequent chapters only explain those functions that differ from those in the screen shown in the figure.

The input line with cursor is located in the top bar of the screen. All inputs are displayed here.

Input windows for “free text input”

In the input masks for open text, you may enter letters, numbers and special characters in any combination.

Input windows for selecting a saved entry (e.g. selection of a destination address)

It is only possible to select a sequence of letters, numbers and special characters that matches a stored entry.

Suggestions for matching destinations appear depending on the characters entered in the input line ››› Fig. 178 ④. In the case of compound names, it is necessary to enter a space.

If there are fewer than 99 selectable entries, the number of remaining entries is displayed after the input line ③. Pressing this function button displays these remaining entries in a list.

Overview of the function buttons

Function icon and text: operation and effect	
Letters and digits	Press them to copy them into the input line.
①	Press to change the keypad to another language. Keypad languages can be selected from the menu **System settings > Language**.
②	Press to show symbols on the keypad.
③	Displays the number and opens the list of remaining selectable entries that match the entered text.
④	Scroll bar, the size of which depends on the number of matching entries.
⑤	Hold and press to display a pop-up window with the special characters based on said letter. Press the desired character to enter it. Some special characters can be written out instead (e.g. “AE” for “Ä”).
␣	Press to enter a space.
⌫	Press to delete characters in the input line from right to left. Press and hold to delete several characters.
BACK ⮌	Press to close the input window.

Proximity sensors

✓ Valid for: Media System Plus/Navi System

The Infotainment system is equipped with an integrated proximity sensor ››› Fig. 173 (11).

The image on the screen changes from display mode to automatic operation when your hand moves toward it. In operation mode, the function buttons are automatically highlighted to facilitate their use.

Additional information and display options

The displays appearing on the screen may vary depending on the settings, and may differ from those described here.

The status bar on the screen can display, for example, the current time and outside temperature.

All displays can be viewed only after completely restarting the Infotainment system.

Initial configuration wizard

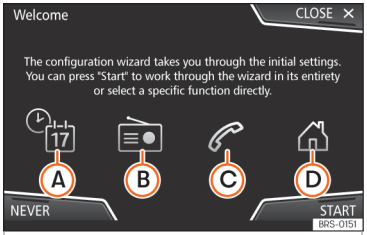


Fig. 179 Initial configuration wizard

The initial configuration wizard will help you to set up your Infotainment system the first time you switch it on.

Every time you switch on the Infotainment system, the initial setup screen will appear ››› Fig. 179 if any parameters have not been set or if the **NEVER** function button has not been pressed.

Function button: function	
CLOSE	Closes the Configuration Wizard, and the main menu or last mode in which you used the Infotainment system will appear. The next time you switch on the system, the Configuration Wizard will start up again.

Function button: function	
NEVER	Disables the possibility of changing the settings of the Infotainment system. If you want to perform the initial system setup, you must enter via **System setup** and select **Configuration Wizard**.
START	Starts up the Configuration Wizard.
Ⓐ	Press to configure the time and date (if it has a navigation system it will be configured automatically with the GPS).
Ⓑ	Press to search and store to memory the radio stations that have the best reception at that moment on all available bands (AM, FM and DAB).
Ⓒ	Press to link your mobile telephone to the Infotainment system.
Ⓓ[a]	Press to select your home address using your current position or by manually entering an address.
PREVIOUS **NEXT**	To go to the previous or next parameter to set. When a parameter has been set, the only way to reset it is from the main menu, clicking on it, and not using the Previous/Next buttons. When setting any parameter, a confirmation mark will appear on it ☑.

Function button: function	
FINISH	Once one or more settings have been applied, click on this in the main menu of the wizard to confirm and finalize the settings. If there are any parameters you have not set, the next time you connect the Infotainment system, the Initial Configuration Wizard will start up.

a) Only valid for Navi System.

Connectivity

Data transfer

This communication can allow data to be read and/or written.

From the SETTINGS menu > **Data transfer for SEAT apps**, there is a checkbox to activate/deactivate the function and a dropdown menu called **Operation via apps** which controls the level of interaction between the apps and the system.

Full Link*

Full Link technology description

Fig. 180 Related video

The Full Link system provides a way of bringing together technologies that allow communication between the Infotainment System and mobile devices:

- MirrorLink®
- Android Auto™
- Apple CarPlay™

Interfaces

To access the Full Link system, press the infotainment button APP / or press the infotainment button MENU / and then press Full Link.

The connection to Full Link is made through a USB interface.

⚠ WARNING

If a mobile terminal is not secured or is incorrectly secured in the vehicle, it could move around the passenger compartment in the event of a sudden driving manoeuvre, emergency stop or accident, resulting in injury.

- **While driving, mobile terminals must be securely fastened in position, outside the airbag deployment zones, or safely stowed away.**

⚠ WARNING

Any applications that are not suitable or execute incorrectly may cause damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- **SEAT recommends the use of the Apps that SEAT provides for this vehicle.**
- **To make full use of SEAT Apps, you must activate the option , Settings/System > Data transfer for SEAT apps.**

»

- The interaction level of the Apps on the system must be: ALLOW.
- Protect the mobile terminal with its applications from improper use.
- Never make modifications to the applications.
- Consult the instruction manual for the mobile terminal.

⚠ WARNING

The use of applications while driving can distract your attention from the traffic. Distracting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

CAUTION

- In areas where special regulations apply or the use of mobile terminals is forbidden, the mobile terminal must be switched off at all times. The radiation produced by the mobile terminal when switched on may interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction or damage to the equipment.
- SEAT cannot be held liable for any damage caused to the vehicle as a result of the use of applications that are of poor quality or are defective, the inadequate programming of the applications, the insufficient coverage of the network, the loss of data during transmission or the improper use of mobile terminals.

Note

- Use of Full Link technology may result in high consumption of your 3G/4G data plan.
- SEAT recommends having a high battery charge on the device when connected to Full Link.
- SEAT recommends that to use Full Link, the “Date and time” should be correctly configured. Select Menu > Settings/System > Date and Time.
- SEAT applications are designed to communicate with the vehicle and interact with it via the Full Link connection, therefore its functionality is linked to the mobile device being connected via USB.
- You can find further information on the technical requirements, compatible devices, suitable applications and availability at www.seat.com or at SEAT dealers.

Is Full Link blocked?

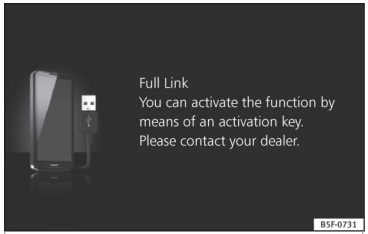


Fig. 181 Message on Infotainment system screen.

To unblock this feature, you must obtain the accessory from your SEAT dealer. Otherwise, a message like this will appear on the screen whenever you select the feature ››› Fig. 181.

Requirements for Full Link

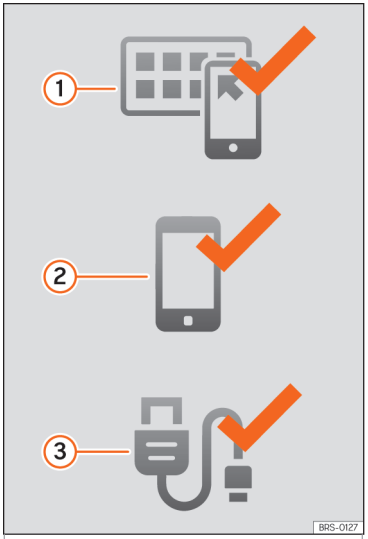


Fig. 182 Full Link Requirements

① **Full Link Activated**: If you do not have Full Link in your vehicle you can acquire it as an accessory at your Authorised Service.

② **Compatible Phones**. Go to the MirrorLink®, Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™ websites to confirm whether your phone is compatible with the system.

Mirror Link

- Check smartphone compatibility: www.mirrorlink.com/phones
- MirrorLink® 1.1 or higher
- Some of the Apps certified by SEAT or the CCC must be installed in the device.

Android Auto

- Check smartphone compatibility. Android Auto™: www.android.com/auto/
- Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or higher
- Install Android Auto™ app

Apple CarPlay

- Check smartphone compatibility. Apple CarPlay™:www.apple.com/ios/carplay
- iPhone 5 or higher and iOS 7.1 or higher
- Turn on the SIRI personal assistant (see phone settings)

③ **USB cable connecting car to phone**: use the USB cable approved and supplied by the phone's official distributor.

Activation of Full Link

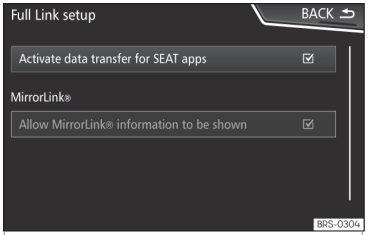


Fig. 183 Full Link Setup

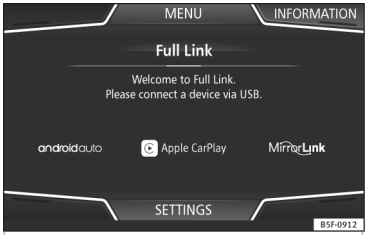


Fig. 184 Full Link menu

Data connection via Wi-Fi or SIM is not necessary to establish the connection between the smartphone and Full Link.

Data connection via Wi-Fi or SIM is necessary to enable all of the app features[1].

Proceed as follows to use Full Link:

- Switch on the Infotainment system
- Connect the smartphone to the vehicle's USB port using a USB cable ››› page 214.
- In the main menu for the Full Link setup, select **`Activate data transfer for SEAT apps`** ››› Fig. 183:

Finally, a message will appear stating that data transfer will commence when the device is connected. Please note that data is transferred over connections between your vehicle and mobile device. Press **OK**. Once selected, the technology compatible with your device can be used.

Note

Depending on your smartphone, it may have to be unlocked for the connection to occur.

What should I do if it does not connect?

Restart the mobile device	
Check the USB cable visually. Make sure that the USB cable is not damaged. Check that both connections (USB/micro USB) are not damaged or worn.	
Visually check that the USB ports are properly connected. Check that the vehicle and device USB connections are not damaged and/or worn.	Clean the USB ports (device and vehicle).
	Try another compatible mobile device.
	Have the USB port replaced at a SEAT Authorised Service.
	Have the mobile device repaired or replace it.
Try another compatible mobile device.	

[1] Using the data connection to transfer the smartphone apps to Full Link may involve additional charges. Please check the charges with your operator.

Pairing of portable devices supporting the MirrorLink®, Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™ technologies

Fig. 185 Full Link menu

Carousel

When you enter the Full Link context for the first time, the technologies available for pairing the portable device are displayed.

Once the device connects via USB, the system will offer you the technologies available for establishing a connection with your mobile phone.

In the event of simultaneous connections between two devices with different operating systems, a choice will be presented for which one to make the connection with ››› **Fig. 185**.

View of the device list

iPhone™ devices only support Apple CarPlay™.

There are some Android devices that support MirrorLink® and Android Auto™.

Bear in mind that once the device is connected it will not be available as an audio source.

Full Link setup

Function button: function
☑ Activating data transfers for SEAT applications: allows the exchange of information between the vehicle and applications authorised by SEAT.

Last Mode

If a session using one technology ends without the disconnection being made from the Infotainment system (simply by disconnecting the cable) then when the device is next connected to it, the session will start without the user being required to take any action[1].

Information

Consult the mobile device manual.

Depends on each technology:

1. Availability in a country
2. Third party applications

For further information:

MirrorLink®:
www.mirrorlink.com

Apple CarPlay™:
www.apple.com/ios/carplay

Android Auto™:
www.android.com/auto

Note

- **In order to use Android Auto™ technology it is necessary to download the Android Auto™ application, located on Google Play™.**
- **Only compatible applications can be used, in accordance with the technology connected.**

[1] Unless the device requires the screen to be unlocked in order to establish the connection.

MirrorLink®

Fig. 186 Function buttons in the general view of compatible applications.

Fig. 187 Other MirrorLink function buttons.

MirrorLink® is a protocol which enables communication between a portable device and the Infotainment system via USB.

Using it makes it possible to display and manage the content and functions displayed on the portable device on the Infotainment system screen.

To avoid distracting the driver while driving, only specially adapted applications can be used ››› ⚠ **in Full Link technology description on page 179**.

Requirements

In order to use MirrorLink®, the following requirements must be met:

- The mobile device must be compatible with MirrorLink®.
- The mobile device must be connected to the Infotainment system via USB.
- Depending on the mobile device used, a suitable application must be installed for the use of MirrorLink® on the device.

Initiating the connection

- In order to initiate the connection with the mobile device, it is simply necessary to connect it to the Infotainment system via the USB connection.
- A pop-up screen will appear, which will request that you accept the device.

Function buttons and possible messages

Function button: function	
`Full Link`	To return to the Full Link main menu.
`CLOSE APPS`	Press to close the open apps. Then press the apps to be closed or the Close all function button to close all the open applications.
`1 : 1`	Press to change to the mobile device screen.
`SETTINGS`	To open the Full Link setup
››› Fig. 187 ①	Press to return to the MirrorLink® main menu.
››› Fig. 187 ②	Press to display all the function buttons in the lower or upper right-hand margin of the screen.
››› Fig. 187 △ / ▷	Allows buttons ① and ② to be hidden or shown.
››› Fig. 173 ⑫	

MirrorLink® setup

Function button: function
☑ Activate MirrorLink pop-up windows: Allows MirrorLink® pop-up windows in applications that support it.

Apple CarPlay™*

✓ Valid for compatible iPhone™ mobile telephones. Also, iPhone™ mobile telephones only support Apple CarPlay™

Apple CarPlay™ is a protocol which enables communication between a mobile telephone and the Infotainment system via USB.

This makes it possible to display and operate the mobile telephone on the Infotainment system screen.

Requirements

In order to use Apple CarPlay™, the following requirements must be met:

- Make sure that you do not have Apple CarPlay™ restricted on your device, at: **Settings > General > Restrictions > CarPlay > ON**.
- The mobile device must be compatible with Apple CarPlay™.
- The mobile device must be connected to the Infotainment system via USB.

Initiating the connection

In order to initiate the connection with the mobile device, it is simply necessary to connect it to the Infotainment system via the USB connection.

- A pop-up screen will appear, which will request that you accept the device.
- If you start the session using Apple CarPlay™ technology, it will not be possible to pair another device via Bluetooth®. The following message will appear in the main *Phone* menu:

Please disconnect Apple CarPlay first, before you can connect another mobile telephone.

Holding down the button will start the Apple™ voice "engine".

To return to the basic contents of the Infotainment system, press the **SEAT** icon.

Android Auto™*

✓ Valid for compatible Android mobile phones.

Android Auto™ is a protocol which enables communication between a portable device and the Infotainment system via USB.

This makes it possible to display and operate the mobile telephone on the Infotainment system screen.

Requirements

In order to use Android Auto™, the following requirements must be met:

- The mobile device must be compatible with Android Auto™.
- The mobile device must be connected to the Infotainment system via USB.
- The Android Auto™ application should already be downloaded and installed on the mobile device.

Initiating the connection

In order to initiate the connection with the mobile device, it is simply necessary to connect it to the Infotainment system via the USB connection, and to be sure to follow the instructions of the device being paired.

- The first connection to Android Auto™ must be done while the vehicle is stationary.
- Once the first pop-up window about accepting data transfer between the car and the device has been accepted, a message will appear requesting that you check your mobile device for the confirmations needed to pair it with the Infotainment system.
- If you are initiating the session using Android Auto™ technology via USB, the mobile telephone connects automatically via Bluetooth® to the Infotainment system telephone and it will not be possible to pair another mobile telephone via Bluetooth®.

Holding down the button will start the Android™ voice "engine".

To return to the basic contents of the Infotainment system, press the **Return to SEAT** button. »

Note

Some mobile devices require a change in the USB connection mode in order to use Android Auto™.

- **Make sure that your mobile is in "Media Transfer Protocol (MTP)" mode before it is connected by USB to the Infotainment system.**

Note

Android Auto™ requires the use of Google™ services, as well as certain basic applications of the Android system.

- **Make sure that you always have Google™ services updated in order to use this technology.**

Frequently asked questions about Full Link

What is the connection method?

USB Cable.

Will the USB cable be supplied with the vehicle?

No. The USB cable supplied with the device should be used.

Is there a navigation option?

Navigation is possible in each one of the Full Link technologies if the technology is available in your country and if you have the Navigation app.

What is the difference between using the Full Link system navigator (via telephone) instead of another navigator?

Benefits: Daily updates.
Issues: data consumption, reception problems.

Can I send voice messages?

With certified apps, you can answer but not send voice messages.

What apps are visible while driving?

Depending on the technology:
– for MirrorLink®: SEAT-certified apps and CCC,
– for Android Auto™: Apps selected by Google™,
– for Apple CarPlay™: Apps selected by Apple™.

Where can I find compatible apps?

Compatible apps can be found on the following links:
www.mirrorlink.com/
www.android.com/auto/
www.apple.com/ios/carplay/

Where can I download apps?

On Google Play™ for Android Auto™/MirrorLink® and on Apple Store™ for Apple CarPlay™.

If Full Link stops working, where can I have it repaired?

If the problem is in the car, you should go to the dealer. If the problem is in the mobile device, you should see your mobile telephone vendor.

Will WhatsApp be certified?

This depends on the technology.

Is MirrorLink® available in my country?

Yes, MirrorLink® is available in all the countries and regions where SEAT operates.

What are the differences between MirrorLink®, Android Auto™ and Apple CarPlay™?

MirrorLink® is not compatible with Android Auto™ and Apple CarPlay™, as they are different technologies. They all coexist in Full Link, although Android Auto™ is designed for mobile devices with the Android™ operating system, and Apple CarPlay™ for iPhone.

Can MirrorLink® be installed in a previous SEAT model?

No, this is not possible.

Where can I find more information about Full Link?

If you have any questions, please see our *Innovation/Connectivity* sections on our website: www.seat.es or www.seat.com or e-mail seat-response@seat.es

SEAT Media Control*

Introduction

✓ Not available for model: Media System Touch / Colour

Fig. 188 Related video

The **SEAT Media Control**[1] app can be used to remotely operate some partial functions in *Radio* mode, *Media* mode and *Navigation* mode. Information can be exchanged between a device and the Infotainment System.

Each one of the functions is operated by means of a Tablet or partially by means of a mobile phone.

Operating requirements:

- A tablet or mobile phone.
- The app must be available on the corresponding device.
- There must be a WLAN connection between the Infotainment System and the device. Select **Menu > Media > Settings > WLAN > Share connection via WLAN > Configuration**.

Make sure that data transfer for apps is activated:

- From the SETTINGS menu > **Data transfer for SEAT apps**, there is a checkbox to activate/deactivate the function and a drop-down menu called **Operation via apps** which controls the level of interaction between the apps and the system. Select **Menu > Settings/System > Transfer data from mobile devices**.

You can obtain information about technical requirements on the SEAT website or at SEAT dealerships.

Telephone functions are not part of the functions of this app.

Data transmission and control functions

Fig. 189 SEAT Media Control Main menu

The Infotainment System can be operated from other seats in the vehicle as follows, with the help of **SEAT Media Control**:

- Radio remote control.
- Multimedia playback remote control.

The following information can be exchanged between a device and the Infotainment System, depending on the country and the equipment:

- Navigation destinations.
- Traffic information.
- Social media contents.
- Audio transmission.

»

[1] Availability depends on the country.

- Vehicle data.
- Location-specific information, for example, POIs.

WLAN access point*

Introduction

✓ Not available for model: Media System Touch / Colour

The Infotainment System can be used to share a WLAN connection with up to 8 devices **››› page 188, Setting up WLAN connection sharing**.

The Infotainment System can also use the WLAN hotspot of an external wireless device to provide Internet to the devices connected to the hotspot (WLAN client) **››› page 189, Setting up Internet access**.

Note

• Data transmission may incur charges. Due to the high volume of data exchanged, SEAT recommends the use of a flat rate mobile phone deal for data transmission. Mobile phone operators can provide the relevant information.

• The exchange of data packages over the internet may generate additional costs, depending on your mobile phone rate, particularly if you are abroad (for example, roaming rates).

Setting up WLAN connection sharing

The Infotainment System can be used to share a WLAN connection with 8 wireless devices.

Establishing the connection with the wireless network (WLAN)

- Press the Infotainment button and then press the Settings / System menu.
- Activate the wireless network (WLAN) on the Infotainment System. To do so, press the *WLAN* function button.
- Activate the wireless network (WLAN) on the wireless device that is to be connected. If necessary, refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.
- Activate the mobile device assignment on the Infotainment System. To do so, press the Enable WLAN connection button and activate the checkbox.
- Enter and confirm the network key displayed on the wireless device.

The following settings can also be made on the menu **Share connection**:

Security level: WPA2 encryption automatically generates a network key.

Network key: Network key automatically generated. Press the function button to manually change the network key. The network key must have a minimum of 8 characters and a maximum of 63.

SSID: WLAN Network name (maximum of 32 characters).

Do not send network name (SSID): Activate the checkbox to deactivate the visibility of the wireless (WLAN) network.

The wireless (WLAN) connection is established. To complete the connection, it may be necessary to enter other data into the wireless device.

Repeat this process to connect other wireless devices.

Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)[1]

Wi-Fi Protected Setup can be used to create a ciphered local wireless network quickly and simply.

- Establish the connection with the wireless network (WLAN) ››› page 197.
- Press the WPS button on the WLAN router[2] until the warning light on the router starts flashing.
- **OR:** Press and hold the WLAN button on the WLAN router until the WLAN light on the router starts flashing.
- Press the WPS button on the WLAN device. The wireless (WLAN) connection is established.

Repeat this process to connect other wireless devices.

Setting up Internet access

The Infotainment System can use the WLAN hotspot of an external wireless device to establish an internet connection.

Establishing the connection with the wireless network (WLAN)

- Activate and check the wireless hotspot on the external device. If necessary, refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.
- Press the Infotainment button and then press the Settings menu; **OR** access Media or SEAT Media Control mode and press the *SETTINGS* menu.
- Press the *WLAN* menu and then enter *Internet access settings on your phone* and activate the checkbox.
- Press the *Find* function button and select the wireless device you want from the list.
- If necessary, enter the network key of the wireless device in the Infotainment System and confirm with *OK*.

Manual settings: To manually enter the network settings of an external wireless (WLAN) device.

The wireless (WLAN) connection is established. To complete the connection, it may be necessary to enter other data into the wireless device.

Note

Due to the large number of different wireless devices in existence, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all functions.

[1] This function depends on the equipment and the country in question.

[2] If the WLAN router does not support WPS the network must be configured manually.

Operating modes

Radio

Related video

Fig. 190 Radio mode

Radio main menu

Fig. 191 Radio main menu.

Fig. 192 Radio mode: station list (FM).

Press the infotainment button RADIO / ››› **Fig. 172** ①, ››› **Fig. 173** ① to open the *Radio* main menu ››› **Fig. 191**.

Radio main menu function buttons

Function button: function	
①	To change the group of memory buttons slide a finger over the memory buttons from left to right or vice-versa
BAND	Allows you to select the frequency band.
STATION LIST	Opens the list of currently receivable radio from the active frequency band.
MANUAL	Allows you to select the frequency manually.
VIEW	Allows you to select the information shown on the screen. Only available in DAB mode.

Function button: function	
SETTINGS	Opens the setup menu of the active frequency band (FM, AM or DAB).
⏮ / ⏭	Selects the previous or next stored station or of the station list. This setting can be changed in the Radio settings menu (FM, AM, DAB).
1 to **18**	Memory buttons ››› **page 191**.
SCAN	Stops the scan function (only visible when the function is under way). It can be activated in the settings menu (FM, AM and DAB).

Information and possible icons

Display: Meaning	
Ⓐ	View the frequency or the name of the station and, where applicable, the radio text. The name of the radio station and the radio text will only be displayed if equipped with RDS and if it is active.
RDS Off	The RDS radio data service is deactivated.
TP	Traffic information can be retrieved: select **Radio > Settings > Traffic station**.
	No stations with traffic news are available.
☆	The radio station is stored on a memory button.

Display: Meaning	
AF off	The tracking of alternative frequencies is disabled.

Note

- **The availability of AM and DAB bands depends on the country and/or equipment. In the event that the AM and DAB bands are not available, the BAND function button text will not be shown.**
- **Bear in mind that being underground, in tunnels, in areas with tall buildings or mountains can interfere with radio signals.**
- **Foil or metal-coated stickers attached to the windows may affect reception on vehicles with a window aerial.**

Memory buttons

Fig. 193 Radio main menu.

In the *Radio* main menu, you can store stations from all available frequency wavelengths on the numbered function buttons. These function buttons are called “memory buttons”.

Functions of the memory buttons	
Selecting the station from the memory buttons	Press the memory button corresponding to the desired station. The stored stations can only be played by pressing the corresponding memory button provided it can be received at your current location.
Change memory bank	Move your finger over the screen from left to right or vice-versa. **OR:** Press one of the function buttons ››› Fig. 193 Ⓐ The memory buttons are displayed in three memory banks.
Storing the station on the memory buttons	Keep and hold the desired memory button until an audible signal is heard, the station will be stored on this memory button. You can also store a station from a station list.

Functions of the memory buttons	
Storing the station logo on the memory buttons	A station logo can be assigned to the stations stored on the memory buttons. A logo is automatically assigned from the database if the Advanced radio settings option is enabled[a]. A logo can also be assigned manually from an external data source (USB/SD card).

[a] Not available for the Media System Touch/Colour model.

Media

Introduction

Fig. 194 Related video

“**Media sources**” are audio sources containing audio files on various different data storage devices (e.g. CD, memory card, external MP3 player). These audio files can be played »

by the Infotainment system via their corresponding drives or audio input sockets (internal CD drive, memory card slot, AUX-IN multimedia socket etc.).

Copyright

Audio and video files on data storage devices are usually protected by intellectual property rights, as per the corresponding national and international laws. Be aware of the current legal provisions!

Note

- **Do not use memory card adapters.**
- **SEAT assumes no liability for any deterioration or loss of files on data storage devices.**

Media main menu

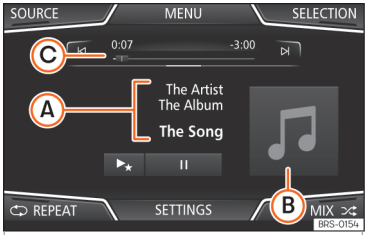


Fig. 195 Media main menu.

Using the *Media* main menu, different media sources can be selected and played.

- Press the infotainment button MEDIA / ▶ ››› **Fig. 172** ④, ››› **Fig. 173** ④ to open the *Media* main menu ››› **Fig. 195**.

It will continue playing the last media source selected from the same point.

The media source being played is indicated on the dropdown list when pressing the SOURCE function button ››› **Fig. 195**.

If there is no available media source, the *Media* main menu is displayed.

Function buttons of the main Media menu

Function button: function	
SOURCE	Indicates the media source being played. Press to select another media source ››› **page 193**.
	CD: Internal CD drive ››› **page 194**.
	SD CARD 1, SD CARD 2*: SD memory card ››› **page 194**.
	USB 1, USB 2*: External data storage device connected to the USB port ››› **page 195**.
	AUX: External audio source connected to the AUX-IN multimedia socket ››› **page 195**.
	BT AUDIO: Bluetooth® audio ››› **page 196**.
SELECTION	Opens the track list. Depending on the level, track list, folders or source.
⏮ / ⏭	Changes track in Media mode or fast forward/rewind ››› **Fig. 195**.
⏸	Playback stops. The ⏸ function button changes to ▶.
▶	Playback is resumed. The ▶ function button changes to ⏸.
SETTINGS	Opens the **Media Settings** menu.

Function button: function	
	Repeat all tracks.
REPEAT	Repeats all the tracks that are on the same memory level as the track being played at that moment. If in the **Media Settings** menu the ☑ Mix/Repeat including subfolders option is enabled, it also includes the subfolders.
REPEAT	The current track will be repeated.
	Random play.
MIX	Includes all the tracks that are on the same memory level as the track being played at that moment. If in the **Media Settings** menu the ☑ Mix/Repeat including subfolders option is enabled, it also includes the subfolders.

Messages and symbols on the Media main menu

Display: Meaning	
Ⓐ	Displays information about the artist name, album name and song title (CD text, ID3 tag on compressed audio files).
	Audio CD: displays track information. If no data is available, it only displays **Track** and the number corresponding to the position it occupies on the data storage device.
Ⓑ	Album cover display: If there are various covers within the same folder/album, the system only displays one of them. It prioritizes displaying the covers in the following manner: 1. Cover embedded in the file(s). 2. Image in file folder. 3. Default icon of the connected device.
Ⓒ	The playing time so far and time remaining in minutes and seconds. In the case of audio files with variable bit rates (VBR) the remaining time may vary.
TP[a]	The TP function is active and can be used: select **Radio > Settings > Traffic programme (TP)**.
TP[a]	There are no traffic stations available: select **Radio > Settings > Traffic programme (TP).**

[a] Depends on the market and unit in question.

Note

• When the media source is inserted, playing will not start automatically; it is necessary for the user to select the source. Nor will the media source change when it is ejected.

Changing the Media source

Fig. 196 MEDIA mode: change media source.

• From the *Media* main menu, press the MEDIA / ⊙ ››› Fig. 172 ④, ››› Fig. 173 ④ Infotainment button repeatedly to cycle through the available media sources.

• **OR:** From the *Media* main menu, press the SOURCE function button ››› Fig. 196 and select the desired media source.

In the pop-up window, the Media sources not selected are shown as deactivated (in grey). »

When a Media source that has already been played is selected again, playback is resumed from the point at which it was stopped.

Optional Media playback sources

Function button: media source	
CD	Internal CD drive ››› page 194.
SD CARD 1 SD CARD 2*	SD memory card ››› page 194.
USB 1 USB 2*	External data storage device connected to the USB port ››› page 195.
AUX	External audio source connected to the AUX-IN multimedia socket ››› page 195.
BT AUDIO	Bluetooth® audio ››› page 196.
WLAN*a)	External audio source connected by WLAN ››› page 197

a) Not available for the Media System Touch/Colour model.

Note

The Media source can be changed in the *Track list* view: select `Media > View`.

Insert or eject a CD

✓ Valid for the model: Media System Plus/Navi System

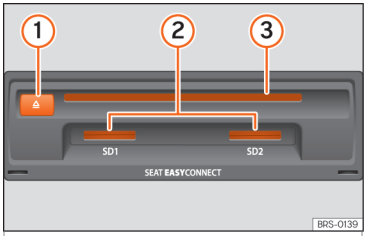


Fig. 197 Slots for data storage devices in the glove compartment.

The driver should refrain from operating the unit while the vehicle is in motion. Insert or change the data storage device before moving off!

The CD drive can play audio CDs and audio data CDs.

Inserting a CD

- Hold the CD with the printed side facing up.
- Push the CD into the slot ››› Fig. 197 ③ to the point where it is drawn in automatically.

Ejecting a CD

- Press button ⏏ ①.
- The CD in the drive will be ejected and must be removed within approximately 10 seconds.

Insert or eject a memory card

Depending on the features and the country, the vehicle may have one or two slots for SD cards.

Inserting a memory card

Insert the compatible memory card, bevelled edge first and with the label face up (contacts face down), into slot ››› Fig. 197 ②, until properly inserted.

If a memory card cannot be inserted, make sure it is positioned correctly and is compatible with the unit.

Removing a memory card

The inserted memory cards **must** be prepared for removal.

- From the main *Media* menu, press the SETTINGS button to open the **`Media Settings`** menu or press the infotainment button MENU / ▦ ››› Fig. 172 ⑦, ››› Fig. 173 ⑫ and then press Settings / System, to open menu **`System settings`**.
- Press the Remove safely function button. A dropdown menu appears with the following options: SD1 Card, SD2 Card*, USB1 and

USB2*. After correctly ejecting the memory card from the system, the function button becomes inactive (grey colour).

- Press the inserted memory card. The memory card "jumps" to the eject position.
- Remove the memory card.

Unreadable memory card

If a memory card is inserted and the data cannot be read, the relevant warning appears.

External data storage device connected to the USB port

Depending on the features and the country, the vehicle may have one or two USB connections ››› page 214.

Audio files on an external data storage device connected to the USB port can be played and controlled via the Infotainment system.

Where this manual refers to external data storage devices, this means USB mass storage devices containing supported audio files, such as MP3 players, iPods™ and USB sticks.

Only supported audio files are displayed and played. Other files are ignored.

Instructions and restrictions

Compatibility with Apple™ devices and other media players depends on the unit.

The USB port supplies the usual USB voltage of 5 volts for a USB connection.

External hard disks with a capacity greater than 32 GB must be reformatted for the FAT32 file system in some circumstances. You will find the necessary software and information on the Internet.

Take into account all other instructions and limitations regarding requirements for media sources.

Disconnecting

Any connected data storage devices **must** be prepared before their disconnection in order to remove them.

- From the main *Media* menu, press the SETTINGS button to open the **Media Settings** menu or press the infotainment button MENU / ››› Fig. 172 (7), ››› Fig. 173 (12) and then press Settings / System, to open menu **System settings**.
- Press the Remove safely function button. A dropdown menu appears with the following options: SD1 Card, SD2 Card*, USB1 and USB2*. After correctly ejecting the data storage device from the system, the function button becomes inactive (grey colour).
- Now the data storage device can be disconnected.

Note

- **Do not connect an external media player at the same time to play music via Bluetooth® and via the USB port with the Infotainment system, as this could cause playback limitations.**
- **If the external player is an Apple™ device, it cannot be simultaneously connected by USB and by Bluetooth®.**
- **If a connected device is not recognised, disconnect all the connected devices and try connecting the device again.**
- **Do not use memory card adaptors, USB extension cords or USB hubs!**

External audio source connected to the AUX-IN multimedia socket

Depending on the equipment and country there may be an AUX-IN multimedia socket ››› page 214.

The connected external audio source is played over the vehicle speakers and **cannot** be controlled via the Infotainment system controls.

The connection of an external audio source is indicated by **AUX** on the screen. »

Connecting an external audio source to the AUX-IN multimedia socket

- Lower the base volume on the Infotainment system.
- Connect the external audio source to the AUX-IN multimedia socket.
- Start playback on the external audio source.
- In the MEDIA main menu, press the SOURCE function button and select AUX.

Connecting an external audio source via Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® Audio mode allows you to listen to audio files being played on a Bluetooth® audio source (e.g., a mobile telephone) connected via Bluetooth® (audio playback by Bluetooth®) over the vehicle speakers.

Conditions

- The Bluetooth® audio source must support the A2DP Bluetooth® profile.
- In the **Bluetooth Settings menu** the ☑ Bluetooth Audio (A2DP/AVRCP) function must be on. Select **Phone > Settings > Bluetooth**.

Starting Bluetooth® audio transfer

- Activate Bluetooth® visibility on the external Bluetooth® audio source (e.g., mobile telephone).
- Lower the base volume on the Infotainment system.
- In the MEDIA main menu, press the SOURCE function button and select BT audio.
- Press Search for new device in order to connect an external Bluetooth® audio source for the first time ››› page 210.
- **OR:** Select a Bluetooth® external audio source from the list.
- Please refer to the instructions on the screen of the Infotainment system and on the Bluetooth® audio source regarding the rest of the procedure.

You may still need to manually start playback on the Bluetooth® source.

When playback on the Bluetooth® audio source is stopped, the Infotainment system remains in Bluetooth® Audio mode.

Controlling playback

The extent to which the Bluetooth® audio source can be controlled via the Infotainment system depends on the connected Bluetooth® audio source.

The available functions will depend on the Bluetooth® Audio profile that the connected external player supports.

With media players that support the AVRCP Bluetooth® profile, playback on the Bluetooth® audio source can be automatically started or stopped when the unit is switched to Bluetooth® Audio mode or to a different audio source. In addition, it is possible to view or change the track via the Infotainment system.

Note

- **Due to the large number of possible Bluetooth® audio sources, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all described functions.**
- **Do not connect an external media player to play music via Bluetooth® and via the USB port ››› page 195 at the same time with the Infotainment system, as this could cause playback limitations.**
- **If the external player is an Apple™ device, it cannot be simultaneously connected by USB and by Bluetooth®.**

Connecting an external audio source through WLAN*

✓ Not available for model: Media System Touch/Colour

WLAN allows wireless connection between an external audio source (for example a smart phone) and the Infotainment system.

To use this connection, the device being connected must have an app compatible with the UPnP (Universal Plug and Play) communication protocol, allowing the app to provide the system with the available media content.

Conditions

- Having a compatible (UPnP) app installed on the mobile device.
- Having the **Enable WLAN connection** option active, which can be found in the wireless connection configuration.
- Pairing the mobile device to the Infotainment system using a password generated by the system. The pairing must be done from the mobile device that you wish to connect to the Infotainment system.

Starting the WLAN audio transfer

- Lower the base volume on the Infotainment system.
- Start the UPnP app or the app for the playback of the WLAN audio source.
- In the MEDIA main menu, press the SOURCE function button and select WLAN.
- Please refer to the instructions on the screen of the Infotainment system and on the WLAN audio source regarding the rest of the procedure.

Controlling playback

The extent to which the WLAN audio source can be controlled via the Infotainment system depends on the connected WLAN audio source and the application used.

Note

• The Infotainment system does not provide an internet connection, it only establishes a wireless connection between the mobile device and said system.

• Via the WLAN, only the connection between the device and the Infotainment system can be guaranteed, its operation depends on the application itself.

Images

✓ Valid for the model: Media System Plus/Navi System

Using the *Images* menu, image files can be viewed (e.g. photos) individually or as a slideshow.

The image files must be stored on a compatible data storage device (e.g., a *CD* or an *SD card*).

- Press the Infotainment button ▪▪▪ ››› Fig. 173 ⑫ and then press the Images function button.
- Press the SOURCE function button to select the source where the pictures in question are located.

Function button: function	
SOURCE	Viewing and selecting the source.
SELECTION	Opens a list of image files.
⚑	The image viewed was obtained via GPS localisation and upon pressing this function button, the navigator menu opens to start a route to this destination.
↶ / ↷	Rotate the view of the image to the left or the right.
⛶	Reset the view of the image.
⏸	To stop the playback of a slideshow. The ⏸ function button changes to ▶.
▶	To continue the playback of a slideshow. The ▶ function button changes to ⏸.

»

Function button: function	
◁/▷	To change to the **PREVIOUS** or **NEXT** image.
	The same function can be performed by sliding your finger horizontally across the screen.
SETTINGS	Open the Image settings menu.

Enlarging or reducing the view

To enlarge or reduce the view of the image displayed:

- Turn the adjustment knob.
- **OR:** Stretch or reduce the image on the screen using 2 fingers.

Rotating the view/image

To rotate an image, in addition to the buttons provided for this (↶ / ↷), you can also press on the screen (e.g. with your thumb) and, while continuing to press with your thumb, slide another finger (e.g. your index finger) around it like a compass either clockwise (to rotate the image to the right) or anti-clockwise (to turn the image to the left). This will rotate the image 90° with respect to its current position.

Requirements for viewing images

Image files	Maximum resolution
BMP	4MP
JPEG	4MP (Progressive Mode)
JPG	64MP
GIF	4MP
PNG	4MP

Navigation[1]

Introduction

Fig. 198 Related video

General information

Using all the data available, the Infotainment system calculates the optimum route to the destination.

The destination is defined by entering an address or a point of interest, e.g. a petrol station or hotel. Traffic reports, if any, will also be taken into account in the route calculation (dynamic route guidance **››› page 206**).

Spoken instructions and visual guidance on the navigation unit and on the instrument panel will direct you to your destination.

⚠ CAUTION

The navigation announcements played may be inaccurate (e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data).

Instructions for navigation

When the Infotainment system is unable to receive any data from GPS satellites (due to a dense tree canopy, underground car park), navigation can still continue using the vehicle sensors.

Possible limitations in navigation

In areas that are not or are only partially digitised on the data storage device, the Infotainment system will still attempt to provide route guidance.

[1] Only available for the model: Navi System

Navigation area and updating navigation data

Roads and streets are subject to constant change (e.g. new roads, changes to street names and building numbers). Therefore, if the navigation data is not updated, then errors or inaccuracies may occur during guidance.

SEAT recommends updating navigation data on a regular basis. Up to date navigation data can be downloaded from www.seat.com or acquired at a SEAT dealer.

Updating and using navigation data from an SD card

The Infotainment system always requires the navigation data that is currently valid for this unit in order to allow all functions to be used in full. Using an old version may lead to errors during navigation.

Updating navigation data

The current navigation data can be downloaded in the internet at www.seat.com and stored in a SD card compatible with the unit.

Suitable SD Cards can be acquired at SEAT dealerships.

The procedure is described on the internet at www.seat.com.

Using navigation data

- Insert the memory card ››› page 194.
- Do not remove the memory card while testing. Wait for the testing icon to disappear.

If the inserted memory card contains valid navigation data, the following message appears: "**`The source contains a valid navigation database`**". It is now possible to navigate with the memory card data. When the memory card is no longer needed by the hardware, it will be prepared for removal ››› page 194.

Note

- **The inserted memory card must be prepared before it is ejected ››› page 194.**
- **Press the Infotainment button ››› Fig. 173 ⑫; then press `Settings/System` to open the `System settings` menu.**
- **Navigation is not possible without the SD card.**
- **Do not remove the memory card while the navigation data is in use. This could damage the memory card!**
- **The navigation memory card may not be used as memory for other files. The infotainment system will not recognise the files saved.**
- **SEAT recommends only using original SEAT memory cards to use navigation data. The use of other memory cards could limit its operation.**

Navigation main menu

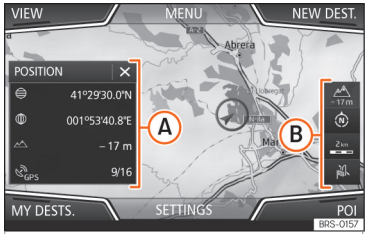


Fig. 199 Navigation main menu

The *Navigation* main menu allows you to select a new destination, call up a previously used or stored destination and search for points of interest.

Opening the main Navigation menu

- Press the Infotainment system button  ››› Fig. 173 ③ to open the last menu that was open in navigation.

Function buttons and messages on the main Navigation menu

Function button: function	
Ⓐ	The split screen is displayed ››› page 204.
Ⓑ	Messages and function buttons on the map display ››› page 205.

»

Function button: function
NEW DESTINATION: To enter a new destination ››› page 200.
ROUTE: During route guidance ››› page 201.
MY DESTS.: To activate or manage stored destinations ››› page 202.
POI: Search for points of interest (car parks, fuel stations and restaurants) within a particular search area ››› page 203.
VIEW: To modify or activate or deactivate the split screen and show POI ››› Fig. 199 Ⓐ ››› page 204.
SETTINGS: Open the **Navigation Settings** menu ››› Fig. 199.

New destination (enter destination)

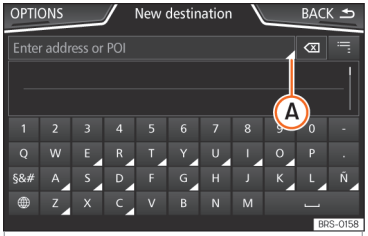


Fig. 200 Search screen.

- In the *Navigation* main menu, press the New destination function button.
- Press the Options function button and select the required type of destination (**Search**, **Address**, **POI on the route** or **On map**).
- Using voice control*, if you say Town, street and number, without pauses, and then the instruction “Start Route Guidance” a route to the given destination will start.

Search

Search for addresses and Points of Interest using the keypad to enter them ››› Fig. 200.

For cities, post codes and points of interest, the full details must be entered. You can also search for points of interest by names or categories. When necessary, enter the name of the city to refine the search.

››› Fig. 200	
Ⓐ	Press to open the cursor buttons (◁, ▷), which allow you to move within the text.

Address

After entering a country and a town, you can start navigating towards the centre of the selected town.

When narrowing down the destination address, **please note** that every entry restricts the available range of subsequent selections. For instance, if the street you are looking for is **not** in the postcode area you have selected in a previous window, you will not be able to find the street at the street selection stage.

Function button: function
Country: To select the desired country.
City: To enter the desired city or postcode.
Street: To enter the desired street name.
House number: To enter the desired house number.
Junction: To select the desired intersection.
Last destinations: Open the **My destinations** menu ››› page 202.
Start: Start route guidance to the selected address.

Using the map

- Select the destination on the map or enter it using GPS coordinates and confirm with OK.

Function button: function
Save: To save the selected point of interest in the destination memory ››› page 202.
Edit: To edit a destination or to enter another destination.
Route options: To adjust route options, see **Navigation Settings > Route options**.
Start: Starts guided navigation to the selected point of interest.

After starting route guidance

Fig. 201 Route calculation.

After starting route guidance, the route to the first destination will be calculated.

The calculation will be performed in accordance with the data selected in the **Route options** menu.

After starting route guidance, three **alternative routes** will be suggested depending on the selected setup ››› Fig. 201. These 3 routes correspond to the selectable route options: *Economical*, *Fast* and *Short*.

Route criteria: Meaning
Blue route: *Economical route*, the route is calculated by taking into consideration economic factors.
Red route: *Fastest route* to the destination, even if it is necessary to make a deviation.
Orange route: *Shortest route* to the destination, even if it results in longer travelling time. The route may have unconventional sections such as secondary roads.

- Select the desired route by pressing it.

Once the route has been calculated, the system gives the first navigation announcement. Before turning, up to 3 navigation announcements will be heard.

- Press the adjustment knob ››› Fig. 173 (7) to listen to the last audible navigation instruction.

A navigation announcement informs you when you have reached your "destination".

A navigation announcement informing you that you have reached the "destination area" is given if the exact destination cannot be reached because it is located in a non-digitised area.

During **dynamic route guidance**, you receive information about reported traffic congestion on the route. An additional navigation announcement is given if the route is recalculated due to traffic congestion.

During a navigation announcement, you can change its volume using the button ⏻ ››› Fig. 173 (6).

For other adjustments to the navigation recommendations, select **Navigation > Settings > Navigation announcements settings.**

Note

- **If you miss a turning during route guidance and are currently unable to turn back, keep on driving until the navigation system offers a new route.**
- **The quality of the navigation recommendations given by the Infotainment system depends on the navigation data available and any reported traffic problems.**

Route

In the *Navigation* main menu, press the Route function button.

The Route function button is only displayed with route guidance activated.

Function button: function
Stop route guidance: Aborts current route guidance.
Enter destination: To enter a new destination or a new stopover ››› page 200.
Congestion ahead: To exclude a section (of 0.2 to 10 km in length) from the current route, e.g. to avoid congestion. To cancel the exclusion, press the Route function button and then Cancel congestion.

»

Function button: function
Route details: View route information for current route.

My destinations (destination memory)

The stored destinations can be selected from the **My destinations** menu.

- Press the My destinations. function button in the main *Navigation* menu.
- Select the desired function button. Store position, Routes, Destinations, Last destinations or Home address.

Store position

- By pressing the Store position function button, the vehicle's current position is stored as a **Flagged destination** in the destination memory.
- Mark the **Flagged destination** in the destination memory.
- Press the Store function button.

The name can be changed in the following input window. Press the function button to store the destination.

Routes

In the **Route** mode, you can define various destinations (final destination and stopovers).

The **starting point** of a route is always the current vehicle position determined by the Infotainment system. The **destination** is the end point of a route. **Stopover destinations** are driven to before the destination.

- In the *Navigation* main menu, press the My Destinations. function button.
- Press the Routes function button. The routes stored previously will appear.

If you have not stored any routes or want to create a new route, press the New route function button and then follow the instructions as for a new destination, before pressing Store.

Pressing on a stored route brings up the following function buttons:

Function button: function
Delete: To delete a stored route.
Edit: To edit and store a route.
Start: To start route guidance.

Function buttons and indications in the New route or Edit route menu

Function button or message: function or meaning	
	Stopover.
	Destination.
...	Estimated time of arrival at destination.
...	Calculated distance to destination.
...	Travelling time.
...	Distance to the next stopover.
Press on the destination to display the function buttons.	
	Delete destination.
	To start guidance direct to the selected destination. Destinations that come before the selected destination are ignored.
	To open the detailed view of the destination in question.
Available function buttons.	
New dest.	To add a new destination to the tour.
Destinations	To add a new destination from **My destinations** to the tour.
Storing	To store the created tour in the tour memory.
Start	To start route guidance.
Calculate	To update calculated distance and estimated arrival time.[a]

Stop	To stop route guidance to the active destination.[b]
☰	To move a stopover or a destination to another position on the list. Press and drag to move the destination.

[a] This function button is only displayed with route guidance activated and when a destination has been added to the tour.

[b] This function button is only displayed with route guidance activated.

Last destinations

View of destinations for which a route has already been started.

My destinations

- Press the Options function button and select the desired function button.

Function button: function
Destination memory: View of destinations stored manually and from imported vCards **››› page 207, Importing vCards (electronic business cards)**.
Favourites: View of destinations stored as favourites.
Contacts: View of entries in the phonebook that have a stored address (postal address).

Home address

Only one address or position can be stored as the home address at any one time. The stored home address can be edited or overwritten.

If a home address has already been stored, route guidance will be started to the stored home address.

If a home address has not yet been stored, an address can be assigned as the home address.

Assigning the home address for the first time:
Position: Press to store the vehicle's current position as the home address.
Address: Press to enter the home address manually.
Editing the home address:
The home address can be edited in the **Navigation settings > Manage memory** menu.

Points of interest (POI)

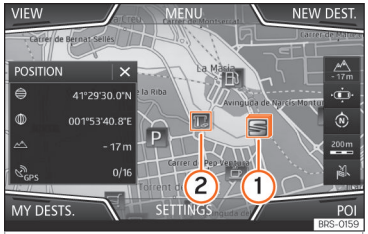


Fig. 202 Points of interest on the map.

The points of interest saved in the navigation data memory are divided into different point of interest categories. Each point of interest category is assigned a symbol for display on the map.

If a database of points of interest has been imported into the Infotainment system, **››› page 207, Importing Personal POI** the category Personal POI is also shown.

In the **Map settings** menu, the categories of points of interest to display on the map can be configured. Up to 10 categories of points of interest can be selected. »

Selecting a point of interest on the map

Function button: function	
①	There are several points of interest in the area. Press this symbol to open a list of points of interest.
②	The only point of interest in this zone. Press the symbol to open the detailed view of the point of interest.

Quick POI search

In the *Navigation* main menu, press the POI function button and the three main categories will appear. Alternatively, enter the name of the point of interest to be searched using the new destination keypad, or press Search nearby on the map **››› table on page 205**.

View

In the *Navigation* main menu, press the View function button.

Function button: function	
2D	Map display in two dimensions (conventional).
3D	Map display in three dimensions (bird's eye view).
3D	Buildings are also displayed in three dimensions. The places of interest and well-known buildings are shown in detail and in colour.
a)	To display the destination on the map.
a)	To display the route on the map.
Auto / Day / Night	To change between day and night format.
Split screen	Press to display the split screen **››› page 204**.
POI	Display points of interest on the map.

a) This function button is only displayed with route guidance activated.

Split screen

Fig. 203 Split screen displayed.

The split screen ››› Fig. 203 Ⓐ may display any of the information described below:

- Press on the name of the split screen to select a display option.

Function button: function
Audio: Indicates the selected audio source.
Compass: Displays a compass with the current travelling direction and indicates the current position of the vehicle (street name).
Manoeuvre: Displays a list of the next manoeuvres, POIs or TMCs on the route and pressing them brings up additional information
Most frequent routes a): Information on the user's most frequent routes.

Function button: function
Position: current vehicle position in coordinates and GPS status (satellite reception).

[a] This function button is only shown when route guidance is not active or when predictive route guidance is active.

Press the ✖ function button to close the split screen.

At any moment during navigation, pressing inside the map will make a pop-up menu appear with the following functions:

Function button: function
Street name or coordinates: shows the details of the point selected on the map.
Only when you press on an icon on the map:
POI: name of the point of interest (when only one appears on the map).
Group of POIs: more points of interest (when you press on the map on various POIs grouped together).
Favourite: name of the favourite.
Home: Home address.
Start route guidance: starts guidance directly.
Add stopover destination: only when you have an active route.
Search nearby: enters in the search menu, but only for the area around the point selected on the map.

Function button: function
Demo mode start (only when demo mode is active)

Map display

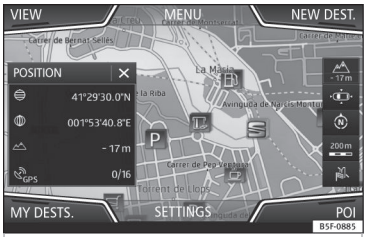


Fig. 204 Messages and function buttons on the map display.

Function buttons and messages on the map display.

To activate function buttons AUTO and ▲, press function button ▬.

Function button: function	
AUTO	To select automatic scaling. If the function is active, the symbol is displayed in blue.
▲	Current altitude indicator.

Function button: function	
▬	View map scale. Turn the setup button or move your fingers together/apart on the touchscreen to change the scale of the map.
	It can mute or repeat the last announcement, or can change the announcement volume.
N	To change the orientation of the map (north-facing or direction of travel). This function is only available in 2D mode.
	To centre the vehicle position on the map.
	To centre the destination on the map. This function button is only displayed if either *Display destination on map* or *Display route on the map* is selected ››› page 204.
	Briefly zooms in on the map. After a few seconds, it automatically returns to the last selected scale.
Road signs: Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the road signs stored in the navigation data are displayed. Select **Navigation > Settings > Map > Show road signs.**	

Traffic reports and dynamic route guidance to the destination (TRAFFIC)

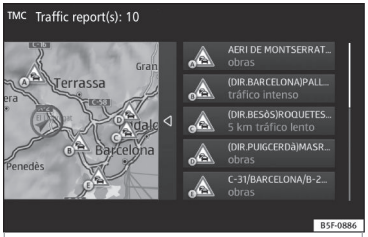


Fig. 205 Traffic reports

The Infotainment system constantly receives traffic reports (TMC/TMCpro) in the background, provided a TMC traffic news station can be received at the current location. The station being listened to does not have to be the traffic news station.

List of available traffic reports

- Press the Infotainment button ▪▪▪ ››› Fig. 173 ⑫ and then press the TRAFFIC function button.

Dynamic route guidance

In order for dynamic route guidance to function, **Dynamic route** must be activated in the route options.

If during route guidance a traffic report is received that affects the route being travelled, an alternative route will be searched for if the Infotainment system calculates that time can be saved.

Traffic reports on map (selection)

Symbol: Meaning
: Slow traffic
: Traffic jam
: Accident
: Slippery road surface (ice or snow)
: Slippery road surface
: Danger
: Road works
: Strong wind
: Road closed to traffic

During route guidance, traffic congestion that does **not** affect the route calculated is displayed in grey.

Predictive navigation

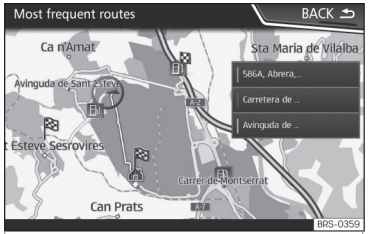


Fig. 206 Predictive navigation

When you activate Predictive navigation, the system detects and stores in the background routes that are frequently followed, without them being active destination routes. This function has no navigation announcements unless the user requires them, getting them by pressing the adjustment knob ››› Fig. 173 ⑦.

- On the main screen of the Navigation menu, in the pop-up window, press the Frequent routes button. To display frequently followed routes press the Show on map button ››› Fig. 206.

Importing vCards (electronic business cards)

Importing vCards to the destination memory

- Insert the data storage device with the stored vCards or connect it to the Infotainment system ››› page 191.
- Press the SETTINGS function button in the main *Navigation* menu.
- In the **Navigation settings** menu, press the Import destinations function button.
- Select the data carrier with the vCards saved in the list.
- Press Import all vCards from this folder.
- Confirm the import notice with the OK function button.

The saved vCards will now be in the destination memory ››› page 202 and may be used for navigation.

Note

Only one address per vCard can be imported. In the event any vCards have multiple addresses, only the main address will be imported.

Importing Personal POI

Importing the Personal POI to a points of interest destination memory

- Insert the data storage device with the stored Personal POI or connect it to the Infotainment system ››› page 191.
- Press the Infotainment button ››› Fig. 173 (3) and then select Settings.
- In the **Settings** menu, press the Manage memory function button.
- Press Update my POIs and then press Update and Next to import the Personal POIs.
- Confirm the import notification with the OK function button.

The stored Personal POI are now in the points of interest destination memory ››› page 203 and can be used for navigation purposes.

The stored Personal POI can be deleted in the **Navigation Settings > Manage Storage** menu.

Navigation with images

Fig. 207 Images main menu.

Selecting an image and starting route guidance

Bear in mind the requirements and formats of the compatible images.

- Insert the data storage device with the stored images or connect it to the Infotainment system.
- Press the Infotainment button ››› Fig. 173 (12) and then select Images.
- Press the SOURCE ››› Fig. 207 function button and select the data storage device where the images are stored.
- Select the desired image.
- If the image displayed was taken using GPS localisation, the function button will appear. Press to start guidance to a destination.

Route guidance in Demo mode

If demo mode is activated in the **Navigation Settings** menu, an additional pop-up window opens when you start route guidance.

- Pressing the Demo mode function button starts a “virtual route guidance” to the destination you have entered.
- If you press the Normal function button, a “real route guidance” starts.

Vehicle Menu

Introduction to using the Vehicle menu

By pressing button CAR / ››› Fig. 172 ③, ››› Fig. 173 ⑨ of the infotainment system you will access its main menu with the following options:

- VIEW
- MINIPLAYER, in the top right corner (Radio or Media function)
- PREVIOUS-NEXT (to change screen)
- SETTINGS ››› page 34

With the function button **View** you can access the following information:

Instrument panel

Press the Instrument Panel button to choose from the various display options and customise the information that appears in the Digital Cockpit ››› page 104:

- **Automatic Display:** default information depending on the selected *Driving Mode*.
- **Classic Display:** the entire lengths of the revolutions per minute and speedometer needles are shown.
- **Views 1, 2, 3:** customise the information that appears in the digital cockpit. Only 2 of these items of information can be displayed at the same time, but the user chooses which to display, and in what order, by moving the finger vertically over the dials. Depending on the version, the **Views** can be memorised by existing the menu or keeping the View button pressed.

Consumers

By pressing the **Consumers** button, information on the status of the vehicle's main consumption devices is obtained. It is shown via a consumption indicator bar in l/h (gal/h)[1].

Driving data

The onboard computer is equipped with 3 memories that work automatically. In these memories you can see the distance travelled, average speed, time passed, average consumption and autonomy of the vehicle.

Ecotrainer*

If the corresponding equipment is available, the ECOTRAINER will provide information on driving style. The information on driving style is only evaluated and displayed when moving forward.

Vehicle status

Press the **Vehicle status** button to access information on the **Vehicle status** messages and **Start-Stop system**. The Vehicle status messages are displayed, in addition to being specified on the corresponding button.

[1] In the case of Gas (CNG) vehicles, the units are in kg/h.

Telephone

General information

Fig. 208 Related video

The Telephone functions described below can be used through the Infotainment system if there is a mobile telephone connected to it via Bluetooth® ››› page 211.

In order for the mobile telephone to be able to connect to the Infotainment system the telephone must be equipped with **Bluetooth®**.

If there is no mobile telephone connected to the Infotainment system, the telephone management system will not be available.

The instructions shown on the screen for the telephone menus will depend on the mobile telephone used. There may be variations.

Only use compatible Bluetooth® devices. For further information on compatible Bluetooth® products, ask your nearest SEAT dealer or check on the internet.

Use the instruction manual of the mobile telephone and of any accessories.

If you detect any operating issues between your mobile telephone and the Infotainment system, restart your mobile by switching it off and on again.

⚠ WARNING

General, mandatory, legal and country-specific instructions and laws for the use of mobile phones inside the vehicle must always be considered.

⚠ WARNING

Speaking by telephone and using the mobile telephone management system whilst driving can distract you from the road and cause an accident.

- **Always drive carefully and responsibly.**
- **Select volume settings that allow you to easily hear signals from outside the vehicle at all times (e.g. emergency services sirens and horns).**
- **In areas of little or no coverage or, in some cases, in a tunnel, garage or underpass, your call may be cut off and you may not be able to make even emergency calls.**

⚠ WARNING

If a mobile telephone is not secured or is incorrectly secured in the vehicle, it could move around the passenger compartment in the event of a sudden driving manoeuvre or emergency stop, resulting in injury.

- **While the vehicle is in motion, always secure the mobile telephone properly outside the airbag deployment zone.**

⚠ WARNING

Mobile telephones may interfere with and alter the correct operation of pacemakers if they are carried directly over them.

- **Maintain a minimum distance of at least 20 centimetres between the aerials of the mobile telephone and the pacemaker.**
- **Do not carry your switched-on mobile telephone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker.**
- **If you suspect interference, switch off the mobile telephone immediately.**

⚠ CAUTION

High speeds, poor weather or road conditions and the quality of reception can all affect the audio quality of a telephone conversation in the vehicle.

Note

- **Restrictions on the use of devices using Bluetooth® technology may apply in some countries. For further information, contact the local authorities.**
- **If you wish to connect a device to the telephone management system via Bluetooth® technology, consult the safety »**

warnings in its instruction manual. Only use compatible Bluetooth® devices.

Places with special regulations

Switch off the mobile telephone and the mobile's Bluetooth® function in places with a risk of explosion. In the majority of cases, these places are signposted, but not always clearly ››› ⚠ in General information on page 209. They include, for example:

- the vicinity of chemical pipelines and tanks
- The lower decks of boats and ferries.
- In the proximity of vehicles that run on liquid gas (such as propane or butane).
- places where the air is laden with chemicals or particles such as flour, dust or metal powder.
- all other places where the vehicle engine must be switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Switch off the mobile phone in areas with a risk of explosion! The mobile telephone can automatically connect to the mobile telephone network again if it loses the Bluetooth® connection to the telephone management system.

ⓘ CAUTION

In areas where special regulations apply or the use of mobile telephones is prohibited, both the telephone and the telephone management system must be switched off. The radiation produced by the mobile telephone when switched on may interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in a malfunction or damage to the equipment.

Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® technology allows a mobile telephone to be connected to your vehicle's telephone management system. In order to use the telephone management system with a mobile telephone with Bluetooth® technology, it is first necessary to pair them.

Some Bluetooth® mobile telephones detect and automatically connect when turning on the ignition if a connection has been previously established. For this to take place the telephone must be switched on and its Bluetooth® function activated, and there must be no active Bluetooth® connection with other devices.

Bluetooth® connections are free.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth profiles®

When a mobile phone is connected to the telephone management system, a data exchange takes place via one of the Bluetooth® profiles.

- **Hands-Free Profile (HFP):** When connecting a mobile telephone to the phone manager through the HFP the calls can be managed via the Infotainment system.
- **Audio profile (A2DP):** This profile makes it easier to transmit audio to the infotainment system with stereo quality. This function may require connecting additional profiles for managing and controlling audio playback.
- **Phone book access profile (PBAP):** Serves to download phone book contacts from the mobile telephone to the Infotainment system.
- **Message profile (MAP):**[1] Serves the download and synchronise short messages (SMS) of the mobile telephone to the Infotainment system.

[1] Not available for the Media System Touch/Colour model.

Note

To prevent them from being heard through the speakers, the button and mobile telephone alert tones must be disconnected. Where necessary, disconnect the headset from the mobile telephone you wish to connect to the system.

Pairing and connecting a mobile telephone to the Infotainment system

In order to manage a mobile telephone via the Infotainment system, it is necessary to pair both devices **once**.

For your safety, we recommend you make the link when the vehicle is stationary. In some countries it is not possible to perform the pairing with the vehicle running.

Conditions

You must guarantee the following setup in the mobile phone and the Infotainment system:

- The ignition must be switched on.
- The **Bluetooth® function** of the mobile telephone and the Infotainment system must be active as well as visibility.
- The **keypad lock** on the mobile telephone must be deactivated.

Follow instructions in the manual for the mobile telephone.

During the pairing process, it is necessary to enter data via the mobile telephone's keypad.

Pairing a mobile telephone

- Make sure the mobile device's Bluetooth® function is activated and visible.
- Press the infotainment button PHONE / ››› Fig. 172 ⑤, ››› Fig. 173 ⑧
- Press the Find telephone function button and then Results.

OR:

- Press the infotainment button PHONE / ››› Fig. 172 ⑤, ››› Fig. 173 ⑧
- Press the SETTINGS function button.
- Press the Select mobile phone function button and then Results.

OR:

- Press the infotainment button PHONE / ››› Fig. 172 ⑤, ››› Fig. 173 ⑧
- Press the SETTINGS function button.
- Press the Bluetooth function button.
- Press the Find devices function button and then Results.

The name of the Bluetooth® function of your Infotainment system will be displayed on the main *Telephone* screen and you can edit this name via the Bluetooth settings menu

The search process can take up to 1 minute. On the screen, the system will dynamically update the names of the Bluetooth® devices found.

As soon as the search is completed, the names of the Bluetooth® devices found are displayed on-screen.

- Select the Bluetooth® device you want to connect on the infotainment system. In certain circumstances, it is possible that to finish the connection between the two devices, you must enter additional data in the mobile telephone and Infotainment system.
- Use your mobile telephone to enter and confirm your PIN code, as indicated in the display of the infotainment system.
- If more Bluetooth® profile pairing requests are received on the mobile telephone, make sure to reply to them.

OR:

- Compare the PIN code shown on the display of the Infotainment system with that shown on the mobile telephone. If they match, confirm on **both** devices.

When the pairing has been finalized correctly, the *Telephone* main menu will appear. The phone book, call list and SMS messages stored in the mobile phone will be loaded once »

the requests have been accepted in the mobile phone. The duration of the loading process depends on the amount of data stored on the mobile telephone. After downloading, the data will be available on the Infotainment system.

Pairing and connection of mobile telephones

You can pair up to 20 mobile telephones to the Infotainment system, but the number of simultaneous connections varies:

- Media System Touch / Colour: a phone connected to the hands-free profile and the same or a different device connected to the Bluetooth® audio profile.
- Media System Plus / Navi System: two mobile phones simultaneously connected to the hands-free profile and one of them is also connected Bluetooth® audio profile.

When the Infotainment system is switched on, it automatically connects to the last connected mobile telephone. If it is not possible to connect to this mobile telephone, the telephone management system will try to automatically connect to the next mobile telephone on the list of paired devices.

The **maximum** range of the Bluetooth® connection is approx. **10 meters**. The active Bluetooth® connection disconnects if this distance is exceeded. The connection is **automatically** re-established as soon as the device is once again within Bluetooth® range.

⚠ WARNING

Do not perform the pairing and connection process while driving. This may cause an accident!

Note

- **It may be necessary to confirm the phone book data and SMS transfer request on the mobile telephone.**
- **Check that there are no requests pending acceptance in your mobile phone. If there are, this could block some of the functions in the *Telephone* menu.**

Telephone main menu

Fig. 209 Telephone main menu (view of the 8" screen).

Assign a user profile

The data from the phonebook, the call lists and the stored speed dial buttons are assigned to a user profile and remain stored on the telephone management system. This information will be available every time the mobile telephone is connected to the telephone management system.

After the first connection, it will take a few minutes for the data from the phonebook of the linked mobile phone to be available in the Infotainment system. The next time that the mobile telephone is connected (e.g. on the next journey) the phonebook is updated automatically.

If any entries in the mobile phonebook have been modified while connected, a manual update of the phonebook data can be initiated from the **`User profile settings`** menu.

Telephone management can store a maximum of 4 user profiles for mobile telephones. If you wish to link/connect another mobile phone, the oldest user profile will automatically be replaced.

Telephone management system function buttons

- Press the infotainment button PHONE / ✆ ››› Fig. 172 ⑤, ››› Fig. 173 ⑧ to open the *Telephone* main menu.

Function button: function	
①	Name of connected mobile telephone. Press the icon to the left to connect or pair with another mobile telephone.
②	Speed dial buttons, to which telephone numbers from the phonebook may be assigned respectively.
③	To change to another telephone connected to the hands-free profile. This button will only be visible when there are two telephones connected as hands-free. The active user profile corresponds to the telephone appearing on the screen.
DIAL NUMBER	To open the number pad and enter a telephone number ››› page 213.
CONTACTS	To open the phonebook of the connected mobile telephone.
SMS[a)]	To open the menu for SMS messages.
CALLS	To open call lists of the connected mobile telephone ››› page 214.
SETTINGS	To open the **Telephone settings** menu.

[a)] Not available for the Media System Touch/Colour model.

Display and symbols of the telephone management system

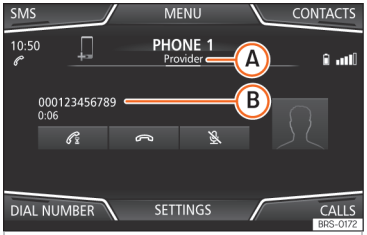


Fig. 210 Active call.

Display: Meaning ››› Fig. 210	
Ⓐ	Name of the mobile network operator (provider) to which the mobile telephone is connected.
Ⓑ	View of stored telephone number or name. If the name stored in the phonebook has an assigned photo, it can be displayed: select **Telephone > Settings > User profile > Show pictures for contacts***.
	Press to **accept** a call.
	Press to **end** a call.
	OR: Press to **reject** an incoming call.
	Press to mute or to reactivate the ring tone during an incoming call.

Display: Meaning ››› Fig. 210	
	Press to mute the microphone during an active call and to reactivate it.
	This button keeps the call active. While the call is on hold the listener will not hear the conversation. To reactivate it, press the call accept button. To reject it, press the reject button.
	Press to add a participant to the active call.
	Charge status of a mobile telephone connected via "Hands-free profile" (**HFP**) Bluetooth®.
	Strength of coverage signal received by the mobile telephone.

Enter telephone number menu

Fig. 211 Enter telephone number menu. »

Open the Enter telephone number menu

Press the DIAL NUMBER function button from the *PHONE* main menu.

Possible functions	
Enter telephone number	Entering a phone number with the keypad.
	Press the function button to make a call.
Select a contact from the list	Enter the first letters of the contact to find using the keypad. The available entries appear in the phonebook.
	Select the desired contact from the phonebook to make the call.
Enter the country code	To enter a country code, instead of the first two digits (international access code e.g. "**00**") you can enter the character "**+**".
	Press the function button 0 for approx. 2 seconds to add the **+**.
Breakdown service call	Press the function button to obtain help in the event of breakdown. For this the network of SEAT dealerships is available to you with their Mobility Service.
Information call i	Press the function button to obtain information on the SEAT brand and the additional services contracted related to traffic and travel.

Possible functions	
Call mailbox	Press the Voice mail function button to make the call.
	OR: Press the 1 function button for about 2 seconds to make a call.
	If the number for the mailbox has not yet been stored, enter it and confirm with OK.

Note

- **Breakdown service and information calls can incur an additional cost on your telephone bill.**
- **The Roadside Assistance and Information services might not work properly, for example, if the vehicle and the operator of the connected mobile telephone are in different countries. If you are not able to use these services contact an authorised SEAT workshop.**

Call Menu (call lists)

Possible displays in the Calls menu

Display: Meaning	
	Missed calls: Displays the numbers of missed and unanswered calls.
	Dialled numbers: Indicates the numbers dialled on the mobile telephone and on the Infotainment system telephone management system.
	Received calls: Indicates the numbers of the calls received on the mobile telephone and on the Infotainment system telephone management system.

Note

The availability of the call lists will depend on the mobile phone used.

Multimedia

USB/AUX-INPort

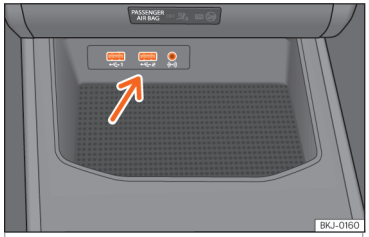


Fig. 212 Centre console: USB/AUX-IN input.

Depending on the special characteristics and the country, the vehicle may have a USB/AUX-IN port.

The USB/AUX-IN port can be found in the storage compartment area of the centre console ››› Fig. 212.

The operating description is located in ››› page 191.

Connectivity Box* / Wireless Charger*

Fig. 213 Related video

Fig. 214 Centre console: Connectivity Box

The Connectivity Box includes different functions that will help to use your mobile device.

They are the "*Wireless Charger*" and the "*Mobile Signal Amplifier*".

The Wireless Charger only features the "*Wireless Charger*" function.

"Wireless Charger"

The "*Wireless Charger*" allows mobile devices with Qi[1)] technology to be charged without a cable.

To charge your mobile phone wirelessly:

- Place your mobile device with Qi technology[1)] in the middle of the pad with the screen facing up ››› Fig. 214.

When you do so, make sure there are no objects between the pad and the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will start charging automatically. For further information about whether your mobile device uses Qi technology, please check your mobile phone's user manual or visit the SEAT website.

"Mobile Signal Amplifier"

The "*Mobile Signal Amplifier*" allows you to reduce the radiation in your vehicle and enjoy better reception.

For safety reasons, it is recommended that you pair the radio and the mobile device using Bluetooth® and place the mobile phone on the Connectivity Box pad, so as to have better reception without having to handle the mobile phone.

To establish a connection with the vehicle's external aerial:

- Place your mobile device in the middle of the pad with the screen facing up ››› Fig. 214.

When you do so, make sure there are no objects between the pad and the mobile phone.

Your mobile phone will automatically be ready to make use of the external aerial. »

[1)] Qi technology allows you to charge your mobile phone wirelessly.

⚠ WARNING

The mobile phone may heat up due to the wireless charging. Think about the temperature of your device before you pick it up, and take care when removing it.

Note

- Your mobile device must support the Qi wireless inductive charging interface standard for proper operation.
- If your mobile phone has a cover or a protective casing, this may affect the Connectivity Box functions.
- There must be no metallic objects between the pad and the mobile device that might affect the wireless charging or the connection with the external aerial.
- The charging time and the temperature vary in accordance with the device used.
- To avoid malfunction, ensure that the mobile phone is correctly placed on the pad.
- The maximum charging capacity is 5 W.
- Qi technology does not allow you to charge more than one mobile device simultaneously.
- No improvement in the transmission quality can be guaranteed if there is more than one mobile phone on the pad.
- You are advised to keep the engine running to guarantee proper wireless charging of your device.

- When a telephone with Qi technology is connected by USB, the charging will be performed through the medium specified by each mobile device manufacturer.

Driving

Start and driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Ignition key positions

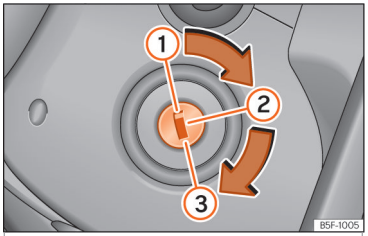


Fig. 215 Ignition key positions.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 31

Ignition switched off, steering lock

In this position ››› Fig. 215 ① the ignition and the engine are off and the steering may be locked.

For the **Steering lock** to operate without the ignition key, turn the steering wheel until it locks with an audible sound. You should always lock the steering wheel when you leave your vehicle. This will help prevent vehicle theft ››› ⚠.

Switching the ignition or the glow plug system on

Turn the ignition key to this position and release it ②. If the key cannot be turned or it is difficult to turn from position ① to position ②, move the steering wheel from one side to the other; this will release it.

Starting

The engine is started when the key is in this position ③. Electrical devices with high power consumption are switched off temporarily at the same time.

Each time that the vehicle is restarted, the ignition key must be turned to position ①. The **repetitive start prevention lock** of the ignition prevents possible damage to the starter motor if the engine is already running.

⚠ WARNING

- **The ignition key must NOT be removed from the lock until the vehicle comes to a standstill. Otherwise, the steering could be immediately blocked- Risk of accident!**
- **Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even if only for a short period. This is especially important if children or disabled people are left alone in the vehicle. They could accidentally start the engine or work electrical equipment such as the electric windows, resulting in an accident.**
- **Unsupervised use of the key could start the engine or any electrical system, such as the electric windows. This could result in serious injury.**

ⓘ CAUTION

The starter motor will only work when the engine is stopped (ignition key position ③).

Starting petrol engines

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with its correct code.

– Move the gearbox lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal thoroughly and hold it in this position for the starter to turn the engine on.

– Turn the ignition key to the starting position ››› Fig. 215 ③.

– Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts; the starter motor must not run on with the engine.

After starting a very hot engine, you may need to slightly press down the accelerator. »

When starting a cold engine, it may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch the starter off after 10 seconds and try again after half a minute. If the engine still does not start, the fuel pump fuse should be checked ››› page 91, Fuses.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and result in death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never use “cold start sprays”, they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Risk of injury.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.**
- **The vehicle should not be pushed or towed more than 50 metres to start the engine. Unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.**
- **Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle in order to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Please observe and follow the notes on the** **››› page 59, How to jump start.**

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm-up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. Start off immediately, driving gently. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.

Note

Natural gas engines (CNG) always start up with petrol, as a certain operating temperature is required for running with gas. Once the required operating temperature is reached, the engine will automatically switch to natural gas mode.

Starting diesel engines

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with its correct code.

– Move the gearbox lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal thoroughly and hold it in this position for the starter to turn the engine on.

– Turn the ignition key to position ››› Fig. 215 ②. The warning lamp will light for engine pre-heating.

– When the lamp turns off, turn the ignition key to position ③ to start the engine. Do not press the accelerator.

– Release the ignition key as soon as the engine starts. The starter motor should not turn at the same time.

When starting a cold engine, it may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

If there are problems starting the engine, see the ››› page 59.

Glow plug system for diesel engines

To avoid unnecessary discharging of the battery, do not use any other major electrical equipment while the glow plugs are pre-heating.

Start the engine as soon as the glow plug warning lamp goes out.

Starting a diesel engine after the fuel tank has run dry

If the fuel tank has been completely run dry, it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) to start a diesel engine after refuelling. This is because the fuel system must eliminate air first.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Starting petrol engines on page 218.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.**
- **The vehicle should not be pushed or towed more than 50 metres to start the engine. Unburnt fuel could enter the particulate filter and damage it.**
- **Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle in order to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Please observe and follow the notes on the ››› page 59, How to jump start.**

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm-up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. You should drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.

"SAFE" electronic immobiliser[1]

The electronic immobiliser prevents unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

Inside the key there is a chip that deactivates the electronic immobiliser automatically when the key is inserted into the ignition.

The electronic immobiliser will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with its correct code.

If the following message* is shown on the instrument panel display: **SAFE**, the vehicle cannot be started.

The engine can, however, be started if the appropriate coded SEAT genuine key is used.

Note

A perfect operation of the vehicle is ensured if genuine SEAT keys are used.

Switching off the engine

Switching off the engine

– Stop the vehicle.

– Turn the ignition key to position ››› Fig. 215 ①.

Engaging the steering wheel lock

In vehicles with automatic gearbox, the ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**[2].

– Remove the ignition key in position ››› Fig. 215 ① ››› ⚠.

– Turn the steering wheel until you hear it engage.

Possible vehicle theft is prevented with the steering lock engaged.

After switching the engine off, the radiator fan may run on for up to 10 minutes. It is also possible that the fan turns itself on once more if the coolant temperature increases due to the »

[1] Available depending on the market

[2] Depending upon country.

heat accumulated in the engine compartment or due to its prolonged exposure to solar radiation.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never switch the engine off until the vehicle is completely stationary.**
- **The brake servo works only when the engine is running. With the engine switched off, more strength is needed to brake. As normal brake operation cannot be performed, risk of accidents and serious injury may exist.**
- **The steering lock can be immediately blocked once the key is removed from the ignition. The vehicle cannot be steered. Risk of accident.**
- **Power-assisted steering does not work when the engine is off, and more strength is needed to turn the wheel.**
- **If the key is removed from the ignition lock the steering lock could be engaged and vehicle steering would not work.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **When the engine has been running under a heavy load for a long period, heat can accumulate in the engine compartment and cause engine damage. For this reason, idle the engine for approximately 2 minutes before switching it off.**
- **If the vehicle is stopped and the Start-Stop system* switches off the engine, the ignition remains switched on. Make sure that the ignition is switched off before leaving the vehicle, otherwise the battery could discharge.**

Starter button*

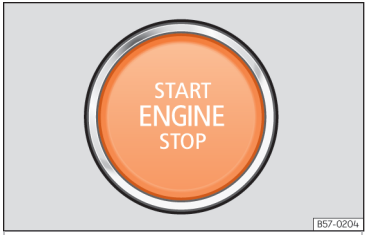


Fig. 216 In the lower part of the centre console: start button.

Fig. 217 On the right of the steering column: emergency start.

The vehicle engine can be started with a starter button (Press & Drive). To do so, there must be a valid key inside the vehicle in the area of the front or rear seats.

Opening the driver's door **when exiting the vehicle** activates the electronic lock on the steering column if the ignition is disabled.

Switching the ignition on/off manually

Briefly push the starter button without touching the brake or clutch pedal ››› ⚠.

For vehicles with both manual and automatic transmission, the starter button text START ENGINE STOP flashes like a heartbeat when the system is preset for switching the ignition on and off.

Automatic ignition switch-off

If the driver leaves the vehicle, taking the vehicle key with them but leaving the ignition on, the ignition is not switched off automatically. The ignition is switched off automatically by pressing the lock button on the remote control 🔒 or manually by pressing the sensor surface on the door lever ››› **Fig. 139**

Emergency starting function

If no valid key is detected inside the vehicle, an emergency start-up will be required. The relevant message will appear in the dash

panel display. This may happen when, for example, the battery of the vehicle key button is very low or flat:

- Immediately after pushing the starter button, keep the vehicle key next to the right trim of the steering column ››› Fig. 217, as close as possible to the *Kessy* logo.
- The ignition connects and the engine starts automatically.

Emergency disconnection

If the engine does not switch off after briefly pressing the starter button, an emergency disconnect will be required:

- Press the starter button twice within 3 seconds or press it once for more than 1 second ››› ⚠.
- The engine turns off automatically.

Engine restart feature

If no valid key is detected inside the vehicle after the engine stops, you will only have 5 seconds to restart it. A warning will display on the dash panel screen.

After this interval, it will not be possible to start the engine without a valid key inside the vehicle.

Automatic deactivation of the ignition on vehicles with the Start-Stop system

The ignition is switched off automatically when the vehicle is stopped and the automatic engine shutdown is active, if:

- The driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the driver does not step on any pedal,
- the driver door is opened.

After automatically turning off the ignition, if the dipped beam ≡D is on, the side light remains on for approx. 30 minutes (if the battery has enough charge). If the driver locks the vehicle or manually turns off the light, the side light goes out.

⚠ WARNING

Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.

- **When switching on the ignition, *do not* press the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine could start immediately.**

⚠ WARNING

If vehicle keys are used negligently or without due care, this may cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Never leave any key inside the vehicle when exiting. Otherwise, a child or unauthorised person could lock the vehicle, start the engine or connect the ignition and, in this way, operate electronic equipment (e.g. the windows).**

Note

- **Before leaving the vehicle, always disconnect the ignition manually and, if appropriate, take into account the instructions on the screen of the dash panel.**
- **If the vehicle is stationary for a long time with the ignition on, the vehicle battery might be discharged and it might not be possible to start the engine.**
- **In diesel vehicles, there may be a delay in the engine starting if it requires preheating.**
- **If during the STOP phase you press the START ENGINE STOP button, the ignition is switched off and the button flashes.**
- **If the indication is displayed on the instrument panel display "Start-Stop system deactivated: Start the engine manually", the START ENGINE STOP button will blink.**

Starting the engine

✓ Applies to vehicles with start button

Step	Starting the engine with the starter button ››› page 220.
1.	Press and hold the brake pedal until step 5 is performed. **In vehicles with a manual gearbox:** press and hold the clutch down until the engine starts.
2.	Put the gearbox lever in neutral or the selector lever in position **P** or **N**.
3.	Briefly press the starter button ››› Fig. 216 without pressing the accelerator. For the engine to start there must be a valid key in the vehicle. After starting the engine, the light of the START ENGINE STOP button changes to a fixed light indicating that the engine has started.
4.	If the engine does not start, stop and wait for approx. 1 minute before trying again. If necessary, carry out an emergency start ››› page 220.
5.	Disconnect the hand brake when you are about to start driving ››› page 224.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave the vehicle with the engine running, especially if a gear or gear range is engaged. The vehicle could then suddenly move or something strange could happen that would cause damage, fire or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Cold start sprays could explode or cause a sudden increase in the engine speed.

- **Never use sprays to cold start the engine.**

CAUTION

- **The starter motor or the engine may be damaged if you try to start the engine while driving or if you restart it immediately after switching it off.**
- **If the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, pushing the engine too hard and rapid acceleration.**
- **Do not start the engine by pushing the vehicle or towing it. Unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.**

Note

- **Do not wait until the engine warms up with the vehicle stationary; if you have good visibility through the windows, start driving immediately. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.**
- **Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine starts.**
- **When starting with a cold engine, noise levels may briefly increase. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.**
- **When the outside temperature is below +5°C (+41°F), if the engine is diesel, some smoke may appear under the vehicle when the fuel-operated auxiliary heater is on.**

Stopping the engine

✓ Applies to vehicles with start button

Step	Switch off the engine with the starter button ››› page 220.
1.	Stop the vehicle completely ››› ⚠.
2.	Press and hold the brake pedal until the step 4 is performed.
3.	If you are driving an automatic vehicle, place the selector lever in position **P**.
4.	Apply the handbrake ››› page 224.
5.	Briefly press the start-up button ››› Fig. 216. The START ENGINE STOP button blinks again. If the engine fails to switch off, perform an emergency disconnect ››› page 221.
6.	If the vehicle is equipped with a manual gearbox, put it into 1st or reverse.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. This could cause loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injury.

- **The airbags and belt tensioners do not work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake servo does not work with the engine off. Therefore, you need to press the break pedal harder to brake the vehicle.**
- **Power steering does not work when the engine is not running. You need more strength to steer when the engine is switched off.**
- **If the ignition is switched off, the steering column could be locked, making it impossible to control the vehicle.**

CAUTION

If the engine is made to work hard for a long time, it may overheat after being switched off. To prevent damage to the engine before switching it off, leave it idle for approx. 2 minutes in neutral.

Note

After switching off the engine, the cooling fan may continue to operate in the engine compartment for a few more minutes, even with the ignition off. The radiator fan is automatically switched off.

"My Beat" Function

For vehicles with a convenience key there is the "My Beat" function. This feature provides an additional indication of the vehicle ignition system.

When accessing the vehicle, e.g. by opening the doors with the remote control, the START ENGINE STOP button flashes, calling attention to the relevant starter system button.

Upon switching the ignition on/off, the light of the START ENGINE STOP button flashes. With the engine switched off, after a few seconds, the STOP ENGINE START button stops flashing and goes out.

With the engine running, the START ENGINE STOP button light stays on, indicating that the engine is running. The time that lapses between the moment the user starts the engine with the START ENGINE STOP button and the lighting changes from flashing to fixed will depend on specific engine size characteristics. Upon switching the ignition off with the START ENGINE STOP button, it starts flashing again.

In vehicles **with the Start-Stop system**, the "My Beat" function also offers additional information:

- When the engine stops during the Stop phase, the light of the START ENGINE STOP button stays on, since, even though the engine is off, the Start-Stop system is active.
- When the engine cannot be stated again with the Start-Stop system, ››› page 248, and needs to be started manually, the START ENGINE STOP button flashes to indicate this fact.

Braking and parking

Braking capacity and braking distance

The efficiency of the brakes depends directly on the **brake pad** wear. This wear depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way the vehicle is driven. If you often drive in town, drive short distances or have a sporty driving style, we recommend that you have the thickness of your brake pads checked by technical services more frequently than recommended in the Maintenance Programme.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example, after crossing areas of water, on days of heavy rainfall or even after washing the car, the effect of the brakes is reduced as the brake discs are wet or even frozen (in winter): in this case, press the brake pedal several times until the brakes are "dry". »

⚠ WARNING

Longer braking distances and faults in the brake system increase the risk of accidents.

- New brake pads must be run in and do not have the correct friction during the first 200 km (124 miles). This reduced braking capacity may be compensated for by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder, which also applies when the brake pads have to be changed further on.
- If brakes are wet or frozen, or if you are driving on roads which have been salted, braking power may be lower than normal.
- On steep slopes, if brakes are excessively used, they will overheat. Before driving down a long steep slope, it is advisable to reduce speed and change down into a lower gear or range (depending on the type of transmission). Thus, make use of engine braking and relieve the brakes.
- Never let the brakes "drag" by applying light pressure. Continuous braking will cause the brakes to overheat and the braking distance will increase. Apply and then release the brakes alternately.
- Never let the vehicle run with the engine switched off. The braking distance is increased considerably when the brake servo is not active.
- If the brake fluid loses its viscosity and is subjected to heavy use, vapour bubbles can form in the brake system. This reduces the efficiency of the brakes.
- Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat. Before purchasing accessories please observe the relevant instructions ››› page 307, Technical modifications.
- If a brake system circuit fails, the braking distance will be increased considerably. Contact a specialised workshop immediately and avoid unnecessary journeys.

Control lamps

It lights up red

Brake fluid level too low ››› page 321 or fault in the brake system.
Do not carry on driving!

It lights up red

Parking brake engaged ››› page 224.
The warning lamp turns off when the handbrake is released.

It lights up yellow

Front brake pads worn.

⚠ WARNING

- If the brake warning lamp does not go out or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low so there is a risk of an accident ››› page 321, Brake fluid. Stop the vehicle and do not drive on. Obtain technical assistance.
- If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS lamp this could be due to an ABS fault. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.

Handbrake

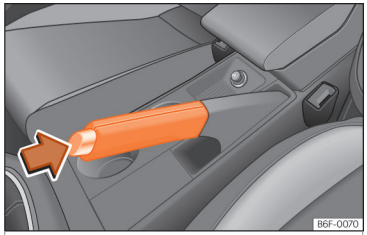


Fig. 218 Handbrake between the front seats.

The handbrake should be applied firmly to prevent the vehicle from accidentally rolling

away. Always apply the handbrake when you leave your vehicle and when you park.

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up firmly ››› Fig. 218.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the lever up slightly and press the release knob in the direction of the arrow ››› Fig. 218 and guide the handbrake lever down fully ››› ⚠.

Always pull the handbrake *all the way up*, so there is less risk of driving off with it still engaged ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use the handbrake to stop the vehicle when it is in motion. The braking distance is considerably longer, because braking is only applied to the rear wheels. Risk of accident!**
- **If the handbrake is only partially released, this will cause the rear brakes to overheat, which can impair the function of the brake system and could lead to an accident. This also causes premature wear on the rear brake pads.**

⚠ CAUTION

Always apply the handbrake before you leave the vehicle. Put it in 1st gear as well.

In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, place the gear lever in position P.

Parking

The handbrake should always be firmly applied when the vehicle is parked.

Always note the following points when parking the vehicle:

– Use the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Put it in 1st gear.

– Switch the engine off and remove the key from the ignition. Turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.

– Always take you keys with you when you leave the vehicle ››› ⚠.

Additional notes on parking the vehicle on gradients:

Turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle rolls against the kerb if it started to roll.

- If the vehicle is parked facing **downhill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *towards the kerb*.
- If the vehicle is parked facing **uphill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *away from the kerb*.
- Secure the vehicle as usual by applying the handbrake firmly and putting it in 1st gear.

⚠ WARNING

- **Take measures to reduce the risk of injury when you leave your vehicle unattended.**
- **Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite inflammable materials, such as dry grass, low bushes, spilt fuel etc.**
- **Never allow vehicle occupants to remain in the vehicle when it is locked. They would be unable to open the vehicle from the inside, and could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. In the event of an emergency, locked doors will delay assistance to vehicle occupants.**
- **Never leave children alone in the vehicle. They could set the vehicle in motion, for example, by releasing the handbrake or the gearbox lever.**
- **Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.**

Braking and stability systems

Control lamps

It lights up
Fault in the ESC or disconnection caused by the system. As the ESC operates in conjunction with the ABS, the ESC light will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS.

Flashes
ESC or ASR activated.

It lights up
Fault in the ASR or disconnection caused by the system.

Flashes
ASR working.

It lights up
ASR manually deactivated.
Or: ESC in Sport mode.

It lights up ››› page 229
ABS faulty or does not work.

The control lamps light up together when the ignition is switched on and should turn off after approximately 2 seconds. This is the time taken for the function check.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*

This Electronic Stability System reduces the risk of skidding and improves the vehicle's stability and ability to hold the road.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) contains the electronic differential lock (EDL) and the traction control system (ASR). The ESC works together with the ABS. Both control lamps will light up if the ESC or ABS systems are faulty. It also includes emergency braking assistance (HBA).

The ESC system is started automatically when the engine is started.

The ESC system is always active and cannot be switched off. With the Easy Connect system it is only possible to deactivate the ASR or else select Sport mode.

The ASR can be deactivated when wheel spin is desirable ››› page 227.

For example:

- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When the vehicle is stuck, to rock it backwards and forwards.

Press the button to switch the ASR back on when you no longer need wheel spin.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*

The ESC reduces the risk of skidding by braking the wheels individually.

The system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares them with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. When irregularities occur, for example, if the vehicle begins to skid, the ESC brakes the appropriate wheel automatically.

The forces acting on the braked wheel bring the vehicle back to a stable condition. If the vehicle tends to oversteer (the rear end slides out), the system will act on the front wheel on the outside of the turn.

Control lamp

There are two control lamps for the electronic stability control. The lamp provides information concerning function and disconnection status.

If the ESC control lamp lights up and stays on after the engine is started, this may mean that the control system has temporarily switched off the ESC. In this case the ESC can be reactivated by switching the ignition

off and then on again. If the control lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not forget that the electronic stability control ESC cannot defy the laws of physics. Bear this in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. The greater safety provided by the ESC should not encourage you to run any risks.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **To ensure that the ESC works correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.**
- **Any modifications made to the vehicle (for example, to the engine, brake system, running gear or to the combination of wheels and tyres) may affect the operation of the ABS, EDL, ESC and ASR.**

Traction control system (ASR)

The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when the vehicle is accelerating.

Description and operation of the traction control system during acceleration (ASR)

The ASR system intervenes by reducing engine power and preventing the driven wheels from slipping during acceleration.

TCS helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

The ASR automatically switches on when the engine is started. If necessary, it could be switched on or off using the Easy Connect system*.

When the ASR is off, the warning lamp lights up. The ASR should normally be left on. Only in exceptional cases can it be disconnected, i.e. when you want the wheels to slide; this done through the Easy Connect system, by means of the CAR / button and the function button **SETTINGS> ESC system**, for example:

- With compact temporary spare wheel.
- When using the snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on soft terrain.
- When the vehicle is bogged-down, to free it by “rocking it”.

The ASR should be switched on again as soon as possible.

Control lamp

There are three control lamps for the traction control system: (for vehicles equipped with M-ABS), (for vehicles equipped with ESC) and .

If the system is deactivated or if it has any fault, the warning lamp or will remain lit. The warning lamp will also light up if a fault should occur in the ABS because the ASR operates in conjunction with the ABS. For further information, see ››› page 228.

⚠ WARNING

- **Remember that not even the ASR can defy the laws of physics. Bear this in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. The greater safety provided by the ASR should not encourage you to run any risks.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **To ensure that the ASR works correctly, identical tyres should be fitted on all four wheels. Any differences in the rolling radius »**

of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

• Any modifications made to the vehicle (for example, to the engine, brake system, running gear or to the combination of wheels and tyres) may affect the operation of the ABS and ASR.

Connecting/disconnecting ESC and ASR*

The ESC is switched on automatically when the engine is started, and only works when the engine is running and includes the ABS, EDS and ASR systems.

The ASR and ESC function should only be switched off in situations in which traction is insufficient, among others:

- When driving in deep snow or on surfaces that are not very firm.
- To "free" the vehicle if it gets stuck.

Then switch the ASR and ESC function back on.

Depending on finishes and versions, it is possible either to disconnect only the ASR or else activate ESC Sport mode.

ESC in "Sport" mode

Sport mode can be connected via the Easy Connect ››› page 34 system menu. The ESC and the traction control system (ASR) have only a limited ability to stabilise the vehicle.

The control lamp lights up. For vehicles with a driver information system*, the driver will be shown the electronic **stability control (ESC) option: sport**. **Warning! Limited stability.**

Disable ESC "Sport" mode

Through the Easy Connect system menu ››› page 34. The warning lamp will switch off. For vehicles with a driver information system*, the driver will be shown the electronic **stability control (ESC) option**: on.

Disable ASR

The Easy Connect system menu is used to switch off the ASR ››› page 34. The traction control system will be disabled.

The control lamp lights up. For vehicles with a driver information system* the driver will be informed that **ASR is disabled**.

Activate ASR

The Easy Connect system menu ››› page 34 is used to switch on the ASR. The traction control system will be enabled.

The control lamp switches off. For vehicles with a driver information system* the driver will be informed that **ASR is enabled**.

- Activate or deactivate the ASR or ESC function in the Easy Connect system using the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS > ESC System** function buttons.

⚠ WARNING

You should switch on the ESC Sport mode only if the traffic conditions and your driving ability allow you to do so safely: risk of skidding!

• With ESC in Sport mode, the stabilising function will be limited to allow for a sportier drive. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could skid.

Note

If the ASR is disconnected or the ESC's Sport mode is selected, cruise control* will be switched off.

Electronic differential lock (EDS)*

The EDL operates along with the ABS in vehicles equipped with Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

EDL helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

It uses the ABS sensors to monitor the speed of the driven wheels.

At speeds of up to approximately 80 km/h (50 mph), it is able to balance out differences in the speed of the driven wheels of approximately 100 rpm/min caused by a *partially* slippery road surface. It does this by braking the wheel which has lost traction and distributing more driving force to the other driven wheel via the differential.

To prevent the disc brake of the braking wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle will continue to function normally without EDL. For this reason, the driver is not informed that the EDL has been switched off.

The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Control lamp

A malfunction in the EDL is indicated by the ESC control lamp. Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. Despite EDL, the driven wheels may start to spin. This could impair the vehicle's stability.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit road conditions and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by EDL tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the EDL **››› page 307.**

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake (ABS) system prevents the wheels from locking during braking and is an important part of the vehicle's active safety system.

How the ABS works

If one of the wheels turns too slowly in relation to the vehicle's speed, and is close to locking, the system will reduce the braking pressure to this wheel. The driver is made aware of this control process by a **pulsating of the brake pedal** and audible noise. This is a deliberate warning to the driver that one or more of the wheels is tending to lock and the ABS control function has intervened. In this situation it is important to keep the brake pedal fully depressed so the ABS can regulate the brake application. Do not “pump”.

If you brake hard on a slippery road surface, the best possible control is retained as the wheels do not lock.

However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. Braking distance could even be further if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow on a slippery surface.

The ABS system is faulty if:

- The control lamp does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
- The control lamp does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The control lamp lights up when the vehicle is moving.

The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way, without the ABS function. Take the »

vehicle to a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

If there is a fault in the ABS, the ESC* and the tyre pressure control lamp will also light up.

Brake system fault

If the ABS warning lamp lights up together with the brake warning lamp, there is a fault in the ABS function and in the brake system ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **The anti-lock brake system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ABS! If you notice that the ABS is working (to counteract locked wheels under braking), you should reduce speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.**
- **The effectiveness of ABS is also determined by the tyres fitted ››› page 325.**
- **If the running gear or brake system is modified, the effectiveness of the ABS could be severely limited.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ››› page 315, Working in the engine compartment.**
- **If the brake system warning lamp should light up together with the ABS warning lamp, stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ››› page 321, Brake fluid. If the brake fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" mark you must not drive on. Risk of accident. Obtain technical assistance.**
- **If the brake fluid level is correct, the fault in the brake system may have been caused by a failure of the ABS system. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.**

Hydraulic Brake Assist*

The Hydraulic Brake Assist is only included in vehicles with ESC.

In an emergency, most drivers brake in time, but not with maximum force. This results in unnecessarily long braking distances.

This is when the brake assist system comes into action. When pressing the brake pedal rapidly, the assistant interprets it as an emergency. It very quickly builds up the full brake pressure so that the ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently, thus reducing braking distance.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal, since the brake assist system switches off automatically as soon as you release the brake.

Automatic hazard warning lights activation

The brake lights flash automatically to indicate that the vehicle is braking suddenly or in an emergency situation. If the emergency braking continues until the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard *"warning"* lights will then come on and the brake lights will remain on permanently from that moment. The warning lights will automatically switch off when the vehicle begins to move again or when the "warning" light button is pressed.

⚠ WARNING

- **The risk of accident is higher if you drive too fast, if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front, and when the road surface is slippery or wet. The increased accident risk cannot be reduced by the brake assist system.**
- **The brake assist system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with the brake assist system! Therefore, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.**

Electronic torque management (XDS)*

When taking a curve, the driveshaft differential mechanism allows the outer wheel to turn at a higher speed than the inner wheel. In this way, the wheel that is turning faster (outer wheel) receives less drive torque than the inner wheel. This may mean that in certain situations the torque delivered to the inner wheel is too high, causing the wheels to spin. On the other hand, the outer wheel is receiving a lower drive torque than it could transmit. This causes an overall loss of lateral grip on the front axle, resulting in understeer or "lengthening" of the trajectory.

The XDS system can detect and correct this effect via the sensors and signals of the ESC.

Via the ESC, the XDS will brake the inside wheel and counter the excess driving torque of that wheel. This means that the driver's desired trajectory is much more precise.

The XDS system works in combination with the ESC and is always active, even when ASR traction control is disconnected or the ESC is in Sport mode.

Multi-collision Brake*

In an accident, the multi-collision brake can help the driver by braking to avoid the risk of skidding during the accident, which could lead to further collisions.

The multi-collision brake works for front, side or rear accidents, when the airbag control unit records its activation level and the accident takes place at a speed of over 10 km/h (6 mph). The ESC automatically brakes the vehicle, as long as the accident has not damaged the ESC, the brake hydraulics or the onboard network

The following actions control automatic braking during the accident:

- When the driver presses the accelerator, the automatic braking does not take place.
- When the braking pressure through pressing the brake pedal is greater than the system's braking pressure the vehicle will brake automatically.
- Multi-collision braking will not be available if ESC is malfunctioning.

Brake servo

The brake servo increases the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It works only **when the engine is running**.

If the brake servo is not functioning, e.g. due to a malfunction, or if the vehicle is being towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder to make up for the lack of servo assistance.

⚠ WARNING

The braking distance can also be affected by external factors.

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident. The braking distance is increased considerably when the brake servo is not active.**
- **If the brake servo is not working, for example when the vehicle is being towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder than normal.**

Hill driving assistant*

Fig. 219 Related video

This function is only included in vehicles with ESC.

The hill driving assistant helps the driver to move off and upward on a hill when the vehicle is stationary. »

The system maintains brake pressure for approximately two seconds after the driver takes his foot off the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from lurching backward when it is started. During these 2 seconds, the driver has enough time to release the clutch pedal and accelerate without the vehicle moving and without having to use the handbrake, making start-up easier, more comfortable and safer.

These are the basic operation conditions:

- being on a ramp or hill/slope,
- driver door closed,
- vehicle completely stationary,
- engine running and foot on the brake,
- besides having a gear engaged or being in neutral for manual gear change and with the selector lever at position **S**, **D** or **R** for an automatic gearbox.

This system is also active when reversing uphill.

⚠ WARNING

- **If you do not start the vehicle immediately after taking your foot off the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll back under certain conditions. Depress the brake pedal or use the hand brake immediately.**
- **If the engine stalls, depress the brake pedal or use the hand brake immediately.**
- **When following a line of traffic uphill, if you want to prevent the vehicle from rolling back accidentally when starting off, hold the brake pedal down for a few seconds before starting off.**

Note

The Official Service or a specialist workshop can tell you if your vehicle is equipped with this system.

Manual gearbox

Driving with a manual gearbox

Read the additional information carefully **››› page 40**

Certain versions of the model may include a 6-speed manual gearbox, and its diagram is shown on the gearbox lever.

The reverse gear can only be engaged when the car is stationary. When the engine is running and before engaging this gear, wait about 6 seconds with the clutch pressed down thoroughly in order to protect the gearbox.

The reverse lights switch on when the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released.**
- **Never select the reverse gear when the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident.**

Note

- **Do not rest your hand on the gear lever while driving. The pressure of your hand could cause premature wear on the selector forks in the gearbox.**
- **When changing gear, you should always depress the clutch fully to avoid unnecessary wear and damage.**
- **Do not "slip" the clutch to hold the vehicle on a hill. This causes premature wear and damage to the clutch.**
- **Do not leave your foot on the clutch pedal; although the pressure may seem insignificant, it can cause the premature wear of the clutch plate. Use the foot rest when you do not need to change gear.**

Automatic gearbox/DSG automatic gearbox*

Introduction

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled manual gearbox. Torque between the engine and the gearbox is transmitted via two independent clutches. They replace the torque converter found on conventional automatic gearboxes and allow for smooth, uninterrupted acceleration of the vehicle.

The **tiptronic** system allows the driver to change gears *manually* if desired **››› page 236, Engaging gears with the tiptronic mode***.

Control lamps

It lights up green

The brake pedal is not engaged.
To select a range of gears, press the brake pedal.

Flashes green

The interlock button on the selector lever is not pressed.
Movement of the vehicle is prevented. Engage the selector lever lock.

Selector lever positions

Read the additional information carefully **››› page 40**

The selector lever position engaged is highlighted on the display in the instrument cluster. With the selector lever in the manual gearbox positions G, D, E and S, the engaged gear is also indicated on the display.

P – Parking lock

When the selector lever is in this position, the driven wheels are locked mechanically. The parking lock must be engaged only when the vehicle is *stationary* ››› ⚠.

The interlock button (the button on the selector lever handle) must be pressed in *and* simultaneously the brake pedal must be depressed before moving the selector lever either in or out of position P.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear must be engaged only when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is idling ››› ⚠.

To move the selector lever to position R, the interlock button must be pressed in *and* at the same time the brake pedal must be depressed. The reverse lights come on when the selector lever is in the R position with the ignition on.

N – Neutral (idling)

With the selector lever in this position, the gear is in neutral.

D/S – Permanent drive (forward) position

The selector lever in the D/S position enables the gears to be controlled in normal mode (D) or Sport (S). To select Sport mode (S), move the selector lever backwards. Moving the lever again will select normal mode (D). The selected driving mode is shown on the instrument panel display.

In **normal mode** (D), the gearbox automatically selects the best gear ratio. This depends on the engine load, the road speed and the dynamic gear control programme (DCP). »

In certain circumstances (i.e. traffic hold-ups, short stops, etc.) and to improve comfort, the vehicle can start up in the D2 gear ratio[1].

Sport mode (S) must be selected for a sporty driving style. This setting makes use of the engine's maximum power output. When accelerating the gear shifts will be noticeable.

Press the brake pedal to move the selector lever from N to D/S when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 km/h (2 mph) ››› ⚠.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. when driving in mountains) it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to tiptronic mode ››› page 236, in order to *manually select* gear ratios to suit the driving conditions.

⚠ WARNING

- **Take care not to accidentally press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) resulting in the risk of an accident.**
- **Never move the selector lever to R or P when driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.**
- **With selector lever in any position (except P) the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to "creep". The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) resulting in the risk of an accident.**
- **While you are selecting a gear and the vehicle is stopped with the engine running, do not accelerate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.**
- **As a driver you should never leave your vehicle if the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle while the engine is running, you must apply the handbrake and engage the parking lock (P).**
- **To avoid accidents, apply the handbrake and put the selector lever in position P before opening the bonnet and working on the vehicle with the engine running. Please always observe the important safety warnings ››› page 315, Working in the engine compartment.**

Note

- **If the selector lever is moved accidentally to N when driving, release the accelerator and let the engine speed drop to idling before selecting gear range D or S again.**
- **Should the power supply to the selector lever be interrupted in position P, the selector lever will be locked. If this should happen the manual release can be used ››› page 40.**

Selector lever lock

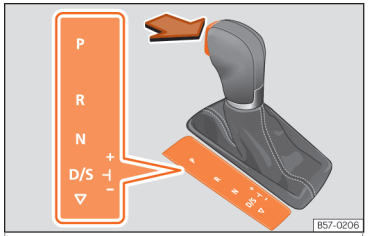


Fig. 220 Selector lever lock.

The selector lever lock prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, so that the vehicle is not set in motion unintentionally.

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

– Switch the ignition on.

[1] Valid for the 1.6 MPI 81 kW automatic engine.

– Press the brake pedal *and*, at the same time, hold the lock button in the direction of the arrow ››› Fig. 220.

Automatic selector lever lock

With the ignition switched on, the selector lever is locked in the positions P and N. The brake pedal must be pressed to release the lever while pressing the release button if the selector lever is in the position P. As a reminder for the driver, with the lever in positions P or N the following message will be shown on the display:

When stationary, apply footbrake while selecting a gear.

Level lock only engages with the vehicle stationary and at speeds of up to 5 km/h (3 mph). At speeds of over 5 km/h (3 mph) the lever lock is automatically deactivated in position N.

The selector lever lock is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through position N (e.g. when shifting from R to D). This makes it possible, for instance, to rock the vehicle "backwards and forwards" if it is stuck. The selector lever lock engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in position N for more than about two seconds.

Interlock button

The interlock button on the selector lever handle prevents the driver from inadvertently engaging certain gears. Press the button in to disengage the selector lever lock.

Safety interlock for ignition key

Once the ignition has been turned off, the key may be removed only if the gear selector is in position P. While the key is not in the ignition, the selector lever is locked in position P.

Note

• If the selector lever lock does not engage, there is a fault. The transmission is interrupted to prevent the vehicle from accidentally moving. Follow the procedure below in order for the selector lever lock to engage again:

– With a 6-speed gearbox: press the brake pedal and release it again.

– With a 7-speed gearbox: press the brake pedal. Move the selector lever to position P or N and subsequently engage a gear.

• Despite a gear being engaged, the vehicle does not move forwards or back. Proceed to the next mode:

– When the vehicle does not move in the required direction, the system may not have the gear range correctly engaged. Press the brake pedal and engage the gear range again.

– If the vehicle still does not move in the required direction, there is a system malfunction. Seek specialist assistance and have the system checked.

Engaging gears with the tiptronic mode*

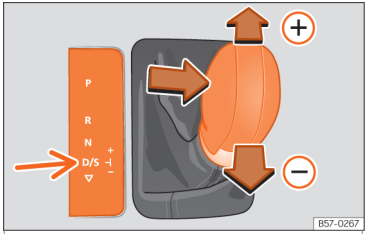


Fig. 221 Centre console: changing gear with tiptronic

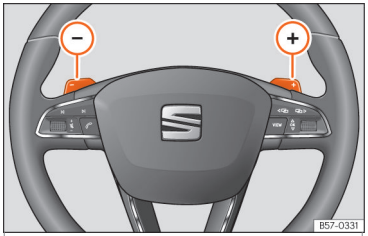


Fig. 222 Steering wheel: automatic gearbox levers

The tiptronic gives the driver the option to change gears manually.

Changing gear manually with the selector lever

It is possible to change to tiptronic mode, both when the vehicle is stopped and while driving.

– To switch to tiptronic mode, move the selector lever from position D/S to the right. As soon as the change is made the selector level will be shown in the position **M** on the instrument panel display (for example **M4** means that the fourth gear is engaged).

– Move the selector lever forwards ⊕ to select a higher gear ››› Fig. 221.

– Move the selector lever backwards ⊖ to select a lower gear.

– To exit the Triptonic mode, move the selector lever to the left.

Changing gear manually with the gearshift paddles*

The gearshift paddles can be used when the selector lever is in the position D/S or **M**.

– Press the gearshift paddle ⊕ to select a higher gear ››› Fig. 222.

– Press the gearshift paddle ⊖ to select a lower gear.

– To exit the Triptonic mode, pull the right-hand lever towards the steering wheel for approximately 1 second or move the selector lever to the left.

– With the selector lever in position D/S, if no paddle is operated during a short period of time, the gearbox control system switches back to automatic mode. To switch to permanent manual gear change using the gearshift paddles, move the selector lever from position D/S to the right.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the next gear shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached.

If you select a lower gear, the automatic gearbox will not shift down until there is no risk of over-revving the engine.

When the kick-down feature is used, the gearbox shifts down to a lower gear, depending on road speed and engine speed.

Driving tips

The gearbox changes gear ratios automatically as the vehicle moves.

The engine can only start with the selector lever in position P or N. At low temperatures, below -10°C (+14°F), the engine can only start with the selector lever in position P.

Starting the vehicle

– Press and hold the brake pedal.

– Press and hold the interlock button (the button on the selector lever handle), move

the selector lever to the desired position, for instance **D ››› page 233**, and release the interlock button.

– Wait for the gearbox to engage the gear (a slight movement can be felt).

– Release the brake and press the accelerator ››› ⚠.

Stopping briefly

– Apply the foot brake to hold the vehicle briefly when stationary (for instance at traffic lights). Do not press the accelerator.

Stopping/Parking

If the driver door is opened and the selector lever is not in position P, the vehicle could move. The driver message will be: ⓘ **`Gear change: selector lever in the drive position!`**. Additionally, a buzzer will sound.

– Press and hold the brake pedal ››› ⚠.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Move the selector lever to position P.

Holding the car on a hill

– *Always* apply the brake pedal firmly to prevent the vehicle "from moving backwards"; if necessary, apply the handbrake ››› ⚠. Do **not** try to stop the vehicle "rolling back" by increasing the engine speed when a gear is engaged (pressing the accelerator) ››› ❗.

Starting off uphill

– Apply the handbrake.

– Once you have engaged a gear press the accelerator carefully and disengage the handbrake.

Driving downhill: in some situations (on mountain roads or when towing a trailer or caravan) it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to the manual gearbox programme so that the gear ratios can be selected manually to suit the driving conditions ››› ⚠.

On level ground it is sufficient to move the selector lever to position P. On slopes, first engage the parking brake and then put the selection lever into the P position. This avoids overloading the locking mechanism and it will be easier to move the selector lever from position P.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Selector lever positions on page 234.

- **Never allow the brake to rub and do not use the brake pedal too often or for long periods. Constant braking causes overheating in the brakes. This could significantly reduce braking power, increase braking distance or even result in the total failure of the brake system.**
- **To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the footbrake or handbrake if you have to stop.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **If you stop the vehicle on a gradient, do not attempt to stop it from rolling by depressing the accelerator when a gear has been selected. This could cause overheating and damage the automatic gearbox. Apply the handbrake firmly or press the brake pedal in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.**
- **If you allow the car to roll with the selector lever in position N with the engine switched off, the automatic gearbox will be damaged as it will not be lubricated.**
- **In certain driving situations or traffic conditions, such as frequently starting, prolonged "creeping" of the vehicle or traffic jams with continuous stoppages, the gearbox could overheat causing damage! If the warning lamp ⓘ lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and wait for the gearbox to cool ››› page 240.**

Kick-down feature

The kick-down feature allows maximum acceleration to be reached.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed right down past the point of resistance at full »

throttle, the gearbox will shift down to a lower gear, depending on road speed and engine speed. The upshift to the next higher gear is delayed until the engine reaches maximum rpm.

⚠ WARNING

Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kick-down feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.

Launch control program

✓ Valid for vehicles: with Launch-Control/6-Speed DSG with diesel engines superior to 125 kW and petrol engines superior to 140 kW.

The Launch control programme enables maximum acceleration.

Condition: the engine must have reached operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

The engine speed for launch-control is different on petrol and diesel engines. To use the launch-control you must disconnect the anti-slip regulation (ASR) through the Easy Connect system menu ››› page 34. The warning lamp will stay switched on or will flash slowly depending on whether or not the vehicle has a driver information system*.

On vehicles with the driver information system, the ESC lamp lights up permanently and the corresponding text message **Stability control deactivated** (temporary) appears on the instrument panel to indicate the deactivation status.

– When the engine is running, switch off the traction control (ASR)[1].

– Turn the selector lever to the position “S” or tiptronic, or else select the **sport** driving mode from the SEAT Drive Profile* ››› page 274.

– Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.

– With your right foot, press the accelerator down to the full throttle or kick-down position. The engine speed will stabilise at about **3,200** rpm (petrol engine) or about **2,000** rpm (diesel engine).

– Take your left foot off the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.**
- **Only use the launch control programme when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your manner of driving and accelerating the vehicle does not inconvenience or endanger other road users.**
- **Make sure that the ESC remains switched on. Please note that when the ASR and ESC are deactivated, the wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip. Risk of accident!**
- **After moving off, the ESC “sport” mode should be deactivated by briefly pressing the OFF button.**

Note

- **After using the Launch control programme, the temperature in the gearbox may have increased considerably. In this case, the programme could be disabled for several minutes. The programme can be used again after the cooling phase.**
- **Accelerating with the Launch control programme places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.**

[1] Vehicles without driver information system: the warning lamp flashes slowly/Vehicles with driver information system: the warning lamp stays on.

Downhill speed control*

The downhill speed control function helps the driver when driving down steep gradients.

Downhill speed control is activated when the selector lever is in D/S and the driver applies the foot brake. The automatic gearbox automatically engages a lower gear that is suitable for the slope. The downhill speed control function attempts to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the foot brake was applied (subject to the laws of physics and technical drive limitations). It may be necessary to adjust the speed again using the foot brake in certain situations. Given that the downhill speed control can only change down to 3rd gear, on very steep descents the tiptronic mode may be required. In this case, manually reduce the tiptronic to 2nd or 1st gear to use the engine brake and reduce the charge on the brakes.

Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with cruise control system* ››› page 250, downhill speed control is activated when you set a cruising speed.

⚠ WARNING

The downhill speed control cannot defy the laws of physics. Therefore, speed cannot be maintained constant in all situations. Always be prepared to use the brakes!

Inertia mode

The inertia mode enables the kinetic energy of the vehicle to be harnessed enabling certain stretches to be driven without using the accelerator. This enables fuel to be saved. Use the inertia mode to “let the vehicle roll” before, for example, arriving in a town.

Switching on inertia mode

Condition: selector lever must be in position D, gradients below 12 %.

– Select, in SEAT Drive Profile*, **Eco** mode ››› page 274.

– Take your foot off the accelerator.

The driver message **Inertia** will be displayed. At speeds higher than 20 km/h (12 mph), the gearbox will automatically disengage and the vehicle will roll freely, without the effect of the engine brake. While the vehicle rolls, the engine runs at idling speed.

Stopping inertia mode

– Press the brake or the accelerator pedal.

To make use of the braking force and switch off the engine again, simply press the brake pedal briefly.

Applying both the **inertia mode** (= prolonged section with less energy) and the **switching off using inertia** (= shorter section without the need for fuel) facilitates improved fuel consumption and emission balance.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the inertia mode has been switched on, take into account, when approaching an obstacle and releasing the accelerator pedal, that the vehicle will not decelerate in the usual manner: risk of accident!**
- **When using inertia mode while travelling down hills, the vehicle can increase speed: risk of accident!**
- **If other users drive your vehicle, warn them about inertia mode.**

Note

- **Inertia mode is only available in eco (SEAT Drive Profile*) driving mode.**
- **The driver message Inertia is only displayed with the current consumption. In inertia mode the gear will no longer be displayed (for example “E” will appear instead of “E7”).**
- **On downhill sections with gradients above 15 %, the inertia mode will automatically be switched off temporarily.**

Emergency program

A backup programme is in place if a fault should occur in the control system.

If all the positions of the selector lever are shown over a light background on the instrument panel display, there is a system fault and the automatic gearbox will operate in with the backup programme. When the backup programme is activated, it is possible to drive the vehicle, however, at low speeds and within a selected range of gears. In some cases **driving in reverse gear may not be possible**.

CAUTION

If the gearbox operates with the backup programme, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired without delay.

Indications on the instrument panel display

Clutch

Clutch overheating! Please stop!

The clutch has overheated and could be damaged. Stop the vehicle and wait for the gearbox to cool with the engine at idling speed and the selector lever in position P. When the warning lamp and the driver message switch off, have the fault corrected by a specialised workshop without delay. If the warning lamp and the driver message do not switch off, do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

Gearbox malfunctions

Gearbox: Fault! Stop the vehicle and place the lever in the position P.

There is a fault in the gearbox. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

Gearbox: System fault! You may continue driving.

Have the fault corrected by a specialised workshop without delay.

Gearbox: System fault! You can continue driving with restrictions. Reverse gear disabled

Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired without delay.

Gearbox: System fault! You can continue driving in D until switching off the engine

Stop the vehicle in a safe place well away from moving traffic. Seek specialist assistance.

Gearbox: too hot. Adapt your driving accordingly

Continue driving at moderate speeds. When the warning lamp switches off, you can continue driving in a normal manner.

Gearbox: press the brake and engage a gear again.

If the fault was caused by a gearbox with a high temperature, this driver message will be displayed when the gearbox has cooled again.

Gear-change recommendation

Choosing the ideal gear

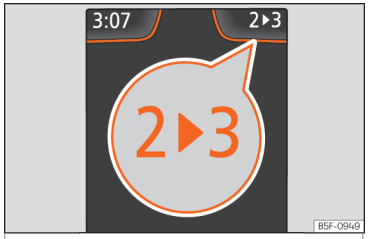


Fig. 223 Instrument panel: gear-change indicator (manual gearbox).

While driving, and depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument panel display may

show a recommendation with the gear number that would be advisable to save fuel.

In vehicles with an *automatic gearbox*, the selector lever must be in the tiptronic position ››› page 236.

No recommendation will appear if the optimal gear is already engaged. The current gear will be displayed.

Display	Meaning
3	The optimal gear is selected.
4 ▶ 5	Changing to a higher gear is recommended.
2 ▶ 1	Changing to a lower gear is recommended.

Information regarding the "cleanliness" of the particulate filter

The exhaust system manager detects that the particulate filter is nearly saturated and contributes to self-cleaning by recommending the optimal gear. For this reason, it might be necessary to drive for a short time at a high rpm.

⚠ WARNING

The gear change indicator is only an auxiliary function and in no case should be a substitute for careful driving.

- **The responsibility of choosing the correct gear depending on the situation (e.g. overtaking, driving up or down a slope or towing a trailer) lies with the driver.**

For the sake of the environment

Selecting the correct gear can help to save fuel.

Note

The recommended gear indication turns off when the clutch pedal is pressed in vehicles with manual gearbox or when the selector lever is removed from the tiptronic position in vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

Steering

Information related to vehicle steering

Electro-mechanical power steering assists the driver when steering.

Electro-mechanical power steering adapts *electronically* to the speed of the car, torque and turning angle.

If the power steering should fail at any time or the engine is switched off (for instance when being towed), the car can still be steered, as long as the key remains in the ignition. However, more effort than normal will be required to turn the steering wheel.

Mechanical steering lock

In order to make the vehicle more difficult to steal, you should always lock the steering before leaving the vehicle.

The steering column is locked when the key is removed from the ignition lock and the vehicle is stationary.

Activating the steering lock

- Park the vehicle ››› page 223.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Turn the steering wheel slightly until the steering lock has engaged.

Deactivating the steering lock

- Turn the steering wheel slightly to release the lock.
- Insert the key in the ignition lock.
- Hold the steering wheel in this position and switch on the ignition.

Power-assisted steering

Power-assisted steering helps the driver in critical situations. It recommends the rotation direction of the steering wheel to perform a corrective manoeuvre (counter-steering), »

thereby causing a small turn of the wheel in the correct direction to avoid skidding ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the power steering does not work, you will need much more strength to turn the wheel. This has a considerable effect on vehicle safety.

- **The power steering only works when the engine is running.**
- **Never allow the vehicle to move when the engine is switched off.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition while the vehicle is moving. The steering lock could be engaged and vehicle steering would not work.**

⚠ WARNING

Power-assisted steering, together with the ESC, helps the driver to control vehicle steering in critical situations. However, the driver is ultimately responsible for steering the vehicle at all times. Power-assisted steering does not remove this responsibility.

Note

The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking and also to allow the use of the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers.

Control lamp

It lights up red

The electromechanical steering is damaged.
Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle safely and as soon as possible.
Have the steering checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

It lights up yellow

The operation of the electromechanical steering is limited.
See a specialised workshop immediately and have the steering checked.
If the yellow warning lamp does not light up again after the engine is restarted and the vehicle has travelled a short distance, you do **not** need to take it to a specialised workshop.

Or: The 12-volt battery was disconnected and has been connected again.
Drive for a short time at 15-20 km/h (9-12 mph).

It flashes yellow

The steering column is tight.
Turn the wheel a little to both sides.

Or: Not unlocked or blocked steering column.
Remove the key from the ignition and then switch the ignition back on. If necessary, check the messages displayed on the instrument panel display.
Do not drive on if the steering column remains locked after the ignition has been switched on. Seek specialist assistance.

The control lamp should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It should go out once the engine is started.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps and the corresponding messages are ignored when they light up, the vehicle may stall in traffic. It could case damage to the vehicle and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps or messages.**
- **Stop the vehicle at the next opportunity and in a safe place.**

Run-in and economical driving

Running in a new engine

The engine needs to be run-in over the first 1500 km (900 miles).

For the first 1,000 kilometres (600 miles)

– Do not drive at speeds of more than 2/3 the maximum speed.

– Do not accelerate hard.

– Avoid high engine revolutions.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 1,000 kilometres (600 miles) to 1,500 kilometres (900 miles)

– Speeds can be *gradually* increased to the maximum road speed or maximum permissible engine speed (rpm).

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on, when all the moving parts have bedded in.

For the sake of the environment

If the engine is run in gently, its life will be increased and its oil consumption reduced.

Running-in of tyres and brake pads

New tyres should be run in carefully for the first 500 km (300 miles) and new brake pads should be run in carefully for the first 200 km (125 miles).

During the first 200 km (125 miles) you have to compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. In case of a sharp braking, the braking distance will be longer with new brake pads than with brake pads which have been run-in.

WARNING

- **At first, new tyres do not give maximum grip, and require running-in. This may cause an accident. Drive particularly carefully in the first 500 km (300 miles).**
- **New brake pads must be "run in" and do not have the correct friction properties during the first 200 km (125 miles). However, the reduced braking capacity may be compensated by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder.**

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and manufacture of your new SEAT.

Constructive measures to encourage recycling

- Joints and connections designed for easy dismantling.
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling.
- Increased use of single-grade materials.
- Plastic parts and elastomers are marked in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629.

Choice of materials

- Use of recycled materials.
- Use of compatible plastics in the same part if its components are not easily separated.
- Use of recycled materials and/or materials originating from renewable sources.
- Reduction of volatile components, including odour, in plastic materials.
- Use of CFC-free coolants.

Ban on heavy metals, with the exceptions dictated by law (Annex II of ELV Directive 2000/53/EC): cadmium, lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium.

Manufacturing methods

- Reduction of the quantity of thinner in the protective wax for cavities.
- Use of plastic film as protection during vehicle transport.
- Use of solvent-free adhesives.
- Use of CFC-free coolants in cooling systems.
- Recycling and energy recovery from residues (RDF).
- Improvement in the quality of waste water.
- Use of systems for the recovery of residual heat (thermal recovery, enthalpy wheels, etc.).
- The use of water-soluble paints.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depends in large part on your driving style. By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. Some tips on how to help you reduce pollution while saving money are listed below.

Active cylinder management (ACT®)*

Depending on vehicle equipment, the active cylinder management (ACT®) may automatically deactivate some of the engine cylinders if the driving situation does not require too much power. When it is switched off, no fuel is injected into these cylinders, hence total fuel consumption may be reduced. The number of active cylinders can be seen on the instrument panel display. ››› page 106.

Drive anticipating the traffic situation

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. When you anticipate situations, you have to brake less often and, thus, accelerate less. If it is possible, let the vehicle roll with a **gear engaged**, for example, if you see a red light ahead. The braking effect achieved in this way helps to reduce the wear of brakes and tyres; emissions and fuel consumption are reduced to zero (disconnection due to inertia).

Change gear early to save energy

An effective way of saving fuel is to change up *quickly* through the gears. Running the engine at high rpm in the lower gears uses an unnecessary amount of fuel.

Manual transmission: shift up from first to second gear as soon as possible. We recommend that, whenever possible, you change to a higher gear upon reaching 2000 rpm. Follow the "recommended gear" indication that appears on the instrument panel ››› page 240.

Avoid driving at high speed

We advise you not to drive at the top speed permitted by the vehicle. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

Avoid idling

It is worthwhile switching off the engine when waiting in a traffic jam, at level crossings or at traffic lights with a long red phase. The fuel saved after only 30 - 40 seconds is greater than the amount of fuel needed to restart the engine.

The engine takes a long time to warm up when it is idling. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

Periodic maintenance

Periodic maintenance work guarantees that, before beginning a journey, you will not consume more than the required amount of fuel. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A badly serviced engine can consume up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Avoid short journeys

To reduce the consumption and emission of polluting exhaust gases, the engine and the exhaust gas filtration systems should reach the optimum **operating temperature**.

With the engine cold, fuel consumption is proportionally higher. The engine does not warm up and fuel consumption does not normalise until having driven approximately *four* kilometres (2.5 miles). This is why we recommend avoiding short trips whenever possible.

Maintain the correct tyre pressures

Bear in mind that keeping the tyres at an adequate pressure saves fuel. If the tyre pressure is just one bar (14.5 psi/100 kPa) too low, fuel consumption can increase by as much as 5%.

Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases tyre **wear** wear and impairs handling.

The tyre pressures should always be checked when the tyres are *cold*.

Do not use **winter tyres** all year round as they increase fuel consumption by up to 10%.

Avoid unnecessary weight

Given that every kilo of **extra weight** will increase the fuel consumption, it is advisable to always check the luggage compartment to make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

A roof rack is often left in place for the sake of convenience, even when it is no longer needed. At a speed of 100 km/h (62 mph) and 120 km/h (75 mph) your vehicle will use about 12% more fuel as a result of the extra wind resistance caused by the roof rack even when it is not in use.

Save electricity

The engine activates the alternator, which produces electricity. With the need for electricity, fuel consumption also increases. Because of this, always turn off electrical devices when you do not need them. Examples of devices that use a lot of electricity are: the blower at high speeds, the rear window heating or the seat heaters*.

Note

- **If your vehicle has *Start-Stop*, it is not recommended that you switch this function off.**
- **It is recommended that you *close the windows* when driving at more than 60 km/h (37 mph).**
- **Do not drive with your foot resting *on the clutch pedal*,, as the pressure can make the plate spin, more fuel will be used and it can burn the clutch plate lining, causing a serious fault.**
- **Do not hold the car on a hill with the clutch, use the foot brake or hand brake, using the latter to start. The fuel consumption will be lower and you will prevent the clutch plate from being damaged.**
- **On descents, use the engine brake, changing to the gear that is more suitable for the slope. Fuel consumption will be "zero" and the brakes will not suffer.**

Engine management and emission control system

Introduction

WARNING

- **Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust purification system (catalytic converter or particulate filter), do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge). Fire hazard!**
- **Do not apply wax underneath the vehicle around the area of the exhaust system: Fire hazard!**

Control lamps

It lights up

Fault in the emission control system. (e.g. faulty lambda sensor).
Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

Flashes

Combustion fault which could damage the catalytic converter.
Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

It lights up

Particulate filter blocked ››› page 246. »

EPC It lights up

Fault in the management of the petrol engine.
Have the engine checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

The warning lamp **EPC** (Electronic Power Control) lights up when the ignition is switched on while system operation is being verified. It should go out once the engine is started.

It lights up

Diesel engine glow plug system.
The engine glow plug system has been activated.
The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

Flashes

Fault in the management of the diesel engine.
Have the engine checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

Note

While the control lamps are on , , EPC or there might be faults in the engine, fuel consumption may go up and the engine might lose power.

Catalytic converter

To maintain the useful life of the catalytic converter

- Use only unleaded petrol with petrol engines, as lead damages the catalytic converter.
- Do not let the fuel get too low in the tank.
- For engine oil changes, do not replenish with too much engine oil ››› **page 319, Topping up engine oil**.
- Never tow the vehicle to start it, use jump leads if necessary ››› **page 59**.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected at the nearest specialised workshop. In general, the exhaust warning lamp will light up when any of the described symptoms occur ››› **page 245**. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the environment. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

CAUTION

Never run the fuel tank completely dry because the irregularity of the fuel supply may cause ignition problems. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust gas under some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel used. Quite often the problem can be solved by changing to another brand of fuel.

Particulate filter

The particulate filter eliminates most of the soot from the exhaust gas system. Under normal driving conditions, the filter cleans itself. The particulate filter is cleaned automatically without need for indication by the warning lamp . This may be noticed because the engine idle speed increases and an odour may be detected.

If automatic filter purification cannot be carried out (because only short trips are taken, for example), soot will accumulate on the filter and the particulate filter warning lamp will switch on.

Facilitate the automatic filter cleaning process by driving in the following manner:

- Drive for approximately 15 minutes at a minimum speed of 60 km/h (37 mph) in 4th or 5th gear (automatic gearbox: S gear range).

• Maintain the engine speed at approximately 2,000 rpm.

The rise in temperature causes the soot on the filter to burn. On completion of the cleaning the warning lamp will switch off. If the warning lamp does not switch off, go immediately to a specialised workshop to rectify the problem.

Driving tips

Driving abroad

To drive abroad, the following must be taken into consideration:

• For vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter ensure that unleaded petrol is available for the journey. See chapter ››› page 310, Fuel. Automobile organisations will have information about service station networks selling unleaded fuel.

• In some countries, it is possible that your car model is not sold, and therefore some spare parts are not available or the technical services may only be able to carry out limited repairs.

SEAT importers and distributors will gladly provide information about the technical preparation that your vehicle requires and also about necessary maintenance and repair possibilities.

Driving on flooded roads

To prevent damage to the vehicle when driving through water, for example, along a flooded road, please observe the following:

• The water should never come above the lower edge of the bodywork.

• Drive at pedestrian speed.

⚠ WARNING

After driving through water, mud, sludge, etc., the braking effect can be delayed slightly due to moisture build-up on the discs and brake pads. Applying the brakes carefully several times will remove the moisture and restore the full braking effect.

ⓘ CAUTION

• Driving through flooded areas may severely damage vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, running gear or electrical system.

• Whenever driving through water, the Start-Stop system* must be switched off ››› page 248.

ⓘ Note

• Check the depth of the water before entering the flooded zone.

• Do not stop in the water, drive in reverse, or stop the engine in any situation.

• Note that vehicles travelling in the opposite direction may splash water that could exceed the maximum permitted water height for your vehicle.

• Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

Driver assistance systems

Start-Stop system*

Control lamps

Ⓐ It lights up
The Start-Stop system is available, the automatic engine shutdown is active.

It lights up
The Start-Stop system is not available.

Instructions for the driver on the instrument panel display

`Start-Stop system deactivated. Start the engine manually`

This driver message is displayed when certain conditions are not met during the stopping phase and the Start-Stop system **cannot** restart the engine. The engine must be started manually.

`Start-Stop system: Fault! Function not available`

There is a fault in the Start-Stop system. Take the vehicle to a workshop to have the fault repaired.

Description and operation

Fig. 224 Related video

The Start-Stop system helps save fuel and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start-Stop mode, the engine will automatically switch off when the vehicle stops or is stopping; for example when stopping at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on during the stopping phase. The engine automatically switches back on when required. In this scenario, the light of the START ENGINE STOP button stays lit[1)].

As soon as the ignition is switched on, the Start-Stop function is automatically activated.

Further information about the Start-Stop system can be found on the Easy Connect system: by pressing the button CAR / 🚘 in the **`Vehicle status`** menu.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox

- Before stopping the vehicle or when it is stopped, put it into neutral and release the clutch pedal. The engine will switch off. The warning lamp Ⓐ will appear on the instrument panel display. The engine may stop before the vehicle comes to a halt in the deceleration phase (at 7 km/h).
- When the clutch pedal is pressed the engine will start up again. The warning lamp will switch off.

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox

- Use the foot brake to bring the vehicle to a stop and keep the brake pedal pressed down with your foot. The engine will switch off. The warning lamp Ⓐ will appear in the display. The engine may stop before the vehicle comes to a halt in the deceleration phase (at 7 km/h or 2 km/h, depending on the vehicle's gearbox).
- When you take your foot off the brake pedal the engine will start up again. The warning lamp will switch off.

Basic requirements for the Start-Stop mode

- The driver door must be closed.

1) Only in vehicles with Keyless Access.

- The driver must have their seat belt fastened.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The engine must have reached a minimum service temperature.
- The reverse gear must not be engaged.
- The vehicle must not be on a very steep slope.

The system can interrupt the Start-Stop mode frequently for different reasons.

The engine does not switch off

Before the stopping phase, the system verifies whether certain conditions are met. The engine **does not** switch off, in the following situations for example:

- The engine has not yet reached the minimum required temperature for the Start-Stop mode.
- The interior temperature selected for the air conditioner has not yet been reached.
- The interior temperature is very high/low.
- Defrost function button activated ››› page 41.
- The parking aid* is switched on.
- The battery is very low.
- The steering wheel is overly turned or is being turned.
- If there is a danger of misting.
- After engaging reverse gear.
- In case of a very steep gradient.

The indication is shown on the instrument panel display, and in addition, the driver information system* shows, START STOP.

The engine starts by itself

During a stopping phase the normal Start-Stop mode can be interrupted in the following situations: The engine restarts by itself without involvement from the driver.

- The interior temperature differs from the value selected on the air conditioner.
- Defrost function button activated ››› page 41.
- The brake has been pressed several times consecutively.
- The battery is too low.
- High power consumption.

Additional information related to the automatic gearbox

The engine stops when the selector lever is in the positions P, D, N and S, in addition to when in Triptonic mode. With the selector lever in position P, the engine will also remain switched off when you take your foot off the brake pedal. In order to start the engine up again the accelerator must be pressed, or another gear engaged or the brake released.

If the selector lever is placed in position R during the stopping phase, the engine will start up again.

Change from position D to P to prevent the engine from accidentally starting when changing and passing by position R.

Additional information about vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

In vehicles with ACC function, the engine will start up again in certain operating conditions if the radar sensor detects that the vehicle ahead drives off again.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never switch the engine off until the vehicle is stationary. The brake servo and power steering functions will not be completely covered under warranty. More force may also be needed to turn the steering wheel or to brake. As you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner, there is a greater risk of accidents and serious injury.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise, the steering could lock making it impossible to steer the vehicle.**
- **To avoid injury, make sure that the Start-Stop system is switched off when working in the engine compartment ››› page 250.**

»

CAUTION

The Start-Stop system must always be switched off when driving through flooded areas ››› page 250.

Note

- **In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, you can control whether the engine should switch off or not by reducing or increasing the brake force applied. While the vehicle remains stopped, the engine will not stop if the brake pedal is slightly pressed, in traffic jams with frequent stopping and starting for example. As soon as strong pressure is applied to the brake pedal, the engine will stop.**
- **In vehicles with manual gearbox, during the stopping phases the brake pedal must remain depressed to prevent the vehicle from moving.**
- **If the engine "stalls" in vehicles with manual gearbox, it can be directly started up again by immediately pressing the clutch pedal.**
- **In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, if the selector lever is placed in position D, N or S after engaging reverse gear, the vehicle must be driven at a speed faster than 10 km/h (6 mph) for the system to return to conditions in which the engine can be stopped.**

Manually switching on/off the Start-Stop system

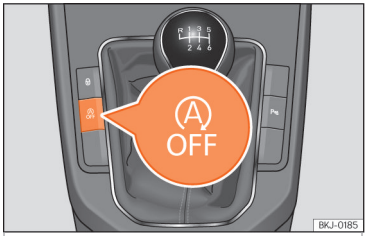


Fig. 225 Centre console: Start-Stop system button.

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.

- To manually switch on/off the Start-Stop system, press the button ››› **Fig. 225**.

The symbol on the button remains lit up yellow when the system is switched off, and the following message is displayed on the dash panel:

`Start-Stop system deactivated`

Note

The system is automatically switched on each time the engine is deliberately stopped during a stopping phase. The engine will start automatically.

Cruise control system (CCS)*

Control lamp

It lights up green
The Cruise Control System (GRA) is switched on and active.
OR: The Adaptive Cruise Control system (CCS) is switched on and active.
OR: the speed limiter is switched on and active.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Warning symbols on page 118.

Cruise control operation

Fig. 226 Instrument panel display: CCS status indications.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 38

The cruise control system (CCS) is able to maintain the set speed from 20 km/h (15 mph).

The CSS only reduces vehicle speed by ceasing to accelerate, not by actively braking the vehicle ››› ⚠.

Displayed on the CCS screen

Status Fig. 226:

Ⓐ CCS temporarily switched off. The set speed is displayed in small or darkened figures.

Ⓑ System error. Contact a specialised workshop.

Ⓒ CCS switched on. The speed memory is empty.

Ⓓ The CCS is switched on. The set speed is displayed in large figures.

Changing gear in CCS mode

The CCS decelerates as soon as the clutch pedal is pressed, intervening again automatically after a gear is engaged.

Travelling down hills with the CCS

When travelling down hills the CCS cannot maintain a constant speed. Slow the vehicle down using the brake pedal and reduce gears if required.

Automatic off

The cruise control system (CCS) is switched off automatically or temporarily:

- If the system detects a fault that could affect the working order of the CCS.
- If you press and maintain the accelerator pedal for a certain time, driving faster than the stored speed.
- If the dynamic driving control systems intervene (e.g. ASR or ESC).
- If the brake pedal is pressed.
- If the airbag is triggered.
- If the gear lever of the DSG® dual clutch gearbox is removed from the **D/S** position.

⚠ WARNING

Use of the cruise control could cause accidents and severe injuries if it is not possible to drive at a constant speed maintaining the safety distance.

- **Do not use the cruise control in heavy traffic, if the distance from the vehicle in front is insufficient, on steep roads, with several bends or in slippery circumstances (snow, ice, rain or loose gravel), or on flooded roads.**
- **Never use the CCS when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.**
- **Always adapt your speed and the distance to the vehicles ahead in line with visibility, weather conditions, the condition of the road and the traffic situation.**
- **To avoid unexpected operation of the cruise control system, turn it off every time you finish using it.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.**
- **When travelling down hills, the CCS cannot maintain a constant speed. The vehicle tends to accelerate under its own weight. Select a lower gear or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.**

Speed limiter

Control lamp

It lights up green

The speed limiter is switched on and active.

Flashes green

The speed set by the speed limiter has been exceeded.

It lights up

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) or the speed limiter is active.

Some warning and control lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on to check certain functions. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Warning symbols on page 118.

Display indications

Fig. 227 On the instrument panel display: indications of the speed limiter status.

The speed limiter helps avoid exceeding a speed individually programmed upwards of approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) driving in forwards gears ››› ⚠

Display messages on the speed limiter ››› Fig. 227:

Ⓐ The speed limiter is active. The last speed set is displayed in large figures.

Ⓑ The speed limiter is not active. The last speed set is displayed in small or darkened figures.

Ⓒ The speed limiter is switched off. The total mileage is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

After use, always switch off the speed limiter to prevent the speed being regulated against your wishes.

- **The speed limiter does not relieve the driver of their responsibility to drive at the appropriate speed. Do not drive at high speed if not necessary.**
- **Using the speed limiter under adverse weather conditions is dangerous and can cause serious accidents, e.g. aquaplaning, snow, ice, leaves, etc. Only use the speed limiter when the status of the road and the weather conditions allow it.**
- **When driving downhill, the speed limiter cannot limit the vehicle speed. Its speed will increase due to its own weight. In this case, select a lower gear or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.**

Note

- **Different versions of the instrument panel are available and therefore the versions and instructions on the display may vary.**
- **If when switching the ignition off, the cruise control system (CCS), the adaptive cruise control (ACC) or the speed limiter were switched on, then the cruise control system or the adaptive cruise control will automatically switch themselves on when the ignition is back on. However, no speed will be stored. The last set speed of the speed limiter will be stored.**

Operate the speed limiter

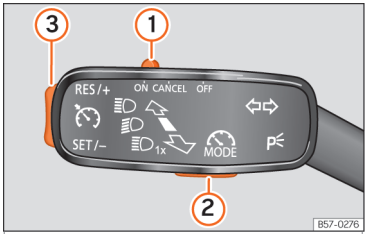


Fig. 228 On the left of the steering column: control and buttons to operate the speed limiter.

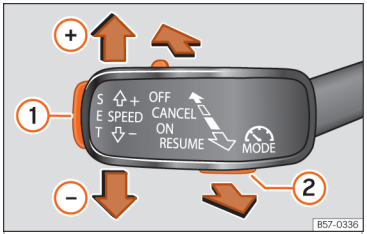


Fig. 229 On the left of the steering column: third lever for operating the speed limiter.

Function	Position of the turn signal lever ››› Fig. 228 or the third lever ››› Fig. 229	Effect
Switching on the speed limiter	Move controller (1) to position **ON** and press button (2) of the turn signal lever or move the third lever forward and press button (2).	The system switches on. The last set speed of the speed limiter is stored. It does not take effect yet.
Switching between the speed limiter and cruise control (CCS) or the adaptive cruise control (ACC) (with the speed limiter switched on)	Press button (2) on the turn signal lever or button (2) on the third lever	It switches between the speed limiter and the CCS or the adaptive cruise control (ACC).
Activating the speed limiter	Press the button (3) on the turn signal lever or button **SET** (1) on the third lever.	The current speed is stored as the maximum speed and the limiter is switched on.
Temporarily switching off the speed limiter limitation	Place control (1) of the turn signal lever in position **CANCEL** or move the third lever into position **CANCEL**.	The limiter is switched off temporarily. The speed will be stored.
Temporarily switch off the speed limiter limitation pressing down the accelerator (kick-down)	Press down on the accelerator beyond the point of resistance (e.g. to overtake). Surpassing the set speed switches the speed limiter off temporarily.	The limiter is switched off temporarily. The speed will be stored. The limiter is reactivated automatically after returning to less than the set speed.

»

Function	Position of the turn signal lever ››› Fig. 228 or the third lever ››› Fig. 229	Effect
Switching the speed limiter on again	Press button (3) on the turn signal lever or move the third lever into position **RESUME**.	The speed is limited to the set speed as soon as the speed you are driving at is lower than the speed set as maximum.
Increasing the set speed of the limiter	Briefly press button (3) on the turn signal lever in the **RES/+** area or move the third lever into position **RESUME** to increase the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and set it.	The speed is limited to the set value
	Press **SPEED+** on the third lever to increase the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and set it.	
	Hold down the button (3) on the turn signal lever in the **RES/+** area or hold down **SPEED+** to increase continuously in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and set it.	
Reducing the set speed of the limiter	Briefly press button (3) on the turn signal lever in the **SET/–** area or press **SET** (1) on the third lever to reduce the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and set it.	The speed is limited to the set value
	Press **SPEED–** on the third lever to reduce the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and set it.	
	Hold down the button (3) on the turn signal lever in the **SET/–** area or hold down **SPEED–** to continuously decrease the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph), then set it.	
Switching off the speed limiter	Move control (1) of the turn signal lever into position **OFF** or the third lever into position **OFF**.	The system switches off.

The values shown in the table in brackets, in mph, are displayed only in instrument panels with indications in miles.

Going down slopes with the speed limiter

If the set speed of the speed limiter is exceeded while driving downhill, soon afterwards the warning and control lamps
››› page 252 flash and an acoustic warning may sound. In this case, use the foot brake to slow the vehicle or, if necessary, select a lower gear.

Switching off temporarily

If you wish to temporarily switch off the speed limiter, e.g. to overtake, move control ››› Fig. 228 (1) of the turn signal lever into position **CANCEL** or the third lever into pressure point **CANCEL** or press button (2) on any lever.

After overtaking, the speed limiter can be switched on with the previously set speed by pressing button (3) on the turn signal lever in the area **RES/+** or by moving the third lever into pressure point **RESUME**.

Switch the speed limiter off temporarily by pressing down the accelerator (kick-down)

If the accelerator is pressed right down (kick-down) and the set speed is exceeded because driver wishes to do so, the limiter is temporarily disabled.

To confirm it being switched off an acoustic signal sound once. While the limiter is off, the warning and control lamp flashes.

When the accelerator is no longer pressed down and the speed is reduced below the set value, the limiter switches on again. The control lamp will light up and remain lit.

Automatic off

The speed limiter is automatically switched off:

- If the system detects a fault that could negatively affect the working order of the limiter.
- If the airbag is triggered.

CAUTION

For automatic switching off due to system failures, for security reasons, the limiter is only completely switched off when the driver stops pressing the accelerator at some point or consciously switches off the system.

Emergency braking assistance system (Front Assist)*

Topic introduction

Fig. 230 On the instrument panel display: advance warning indications.

The objective of the emergency braking assistance system is to prevent head-on collisions against objects that may be in the vehicle's path or minimise the consequences of such impacts.

Within the limitations imposed by the environmental conditions and by the system itself, the function acts in staggered fashion, depending on how critical the situation is. Initially it warns the driver, and if the driver's reaction does not occur or is insufficient, it activates an independent emergency braking.

The function is oriented at avoiding the following situations:

- Collisions with parked vehicles or vehicles in the same lane travelling in the same direction.
- Hitting pedestrians who cross in front of the vehicle's path or who are walking in the same lane and direction.

It may fail to activate in other danger situations.

The Front Assist function is active within a range of speeds between 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and 250 km/h (156 mph). Depending on speed, traffic conditions and driver behaviour, some of the sub-functions described below are omitted in order to optimise the system's general behaviour.

The Front Assist is a driving assistance function that can never replace the driver's attention.

Safety distance warning

If the system detects a situation of danger because the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead, it will warn the driver by means of an »

indication on the instrument panel display .

The timing of the warning varies depending on driver behaviour and the traffic situation.

Advance warning

If the system detects a possible collision with the vehicle in front, it may alert the driver by means of an audible warning and an indication on the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 230.

The warning moment varies depending on the traffic situation and driver behaviour. At the same time, the vehicle will prepare for a possible emergency braking ››› ⚠.

Critical warning

If the driver fails to react to the pre-warning (advance warning), the system may actively intervene in the brakes and generate a brief jolt to warn the driver of the imminent danger of a collision.

Automatic braking

If the driver also fails to react to the critical warning, the system may initiate independent emergency braking by progressively increasing the braking effect in accordance with how critical the situation is.

Driver emergency braking assistance system

Faced with an imminent collision, the system may detect that the driver is not braking hard enough to avoid the collision. In this case, it will automatically increase the braking effect.

Due to certain driving circumstances and the limitations of its operation, there are some cases in which the system cannot prevent a collision, although it can significantly minimise the consequences by reducing the speed and the force of the impact.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Warning symbols on page 118.

⚠ WARNING

The Front Assist system cannot change the laws of physics or replace the driver in terms of keeping control of the vehicle and reacting to a possible emergency situation.

⚠ WARNING

Following a Front Assist emergency warning, pay immediate attention to the situation and try to avoid the collision by braking or by dodging the obstacle, as applicable.

- **If the Front Assist does not work as described in this chapter (e.g. it repeatedly intervenes unnecessarily), switch it off.**
- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The Front Assist alone cannot avoid accidents and serious injuries.**
- **In complex driving situations, occasionally the Front Assist may issue warnings and intervene in braking unnecessarily, for example at traffic islands.**
- **If the operation of the Front Assist is impaired, for example, by dirt or because the radar sensor has lost its settings, the system may issue unnecessary warnings and intervene inopportunely in the braking.**
- **The Front Assist does not react to animals or vehicles crossing your path or approaching head-on down the same lane.**
- **The Front Assist does not react to pedestrians walking head-on in the same lane.**
- **The driver must always be ready to take over the control of the vehicle.**

Note

- **When the Front Assist is connected, the indications on the instrument panel screen may be concealed by warnings from other functions, such as an incoming call.**
- **When the Front Assist causes a braking, the brake pedal is “harder”.**
- **Automatic interventions by the Front Assist on the brakes may be interrupted by**

pressing the clutch, accelerator or moving the wheel.

- **The Front Assist may brake the vehicle until it stops completely. However, the brake system does not halt the vehicle permanently. Use the foot brake!**
- **If the Front Assist does not work as described in this chapter (e.g. in intervenes several times unnecessarily), switch it off. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership.**

Radar sensor

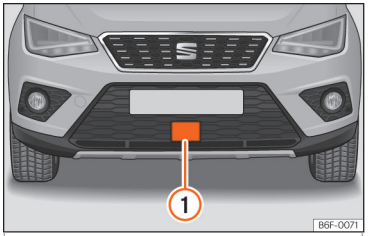


Fig. 231 On the front bumper: radar sensor.

A radar sensor is installed on the front bumper to determine the traffic situation ››› Fig. 231 (1).

The radar sensor's visibility may be impaired by dirt, mud or snow, or by environmental influences such as rain or mist. In this case, the Front Assist does not work. The instrument panel displays the following message: **Front Assist: No sensor vision!** If necessary clean the radar sensor ››› ❗.

When the radar sensor begins to operate properly again, the Front Assist will automatically be available again. The message will disappear from the instrument panel display.

Front Assist operation may be affected by a strong radar reverse reflection. This may occur, for example, in a closed car park or due to the presence of metallic objects (e.g. rails on the road or sheets used in road works).

The area in front of and around the radar sensor should not be covered with adhesives, additional or similar headlights, as this may negatively affect Front Assist operation.

If the front of the vehicle is not properly repaired or structural modifications are made to it, for example if the suspension is lowered, Front Assist operation may be affected. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.

⚠ CAUTION

If you have the sensation that the radar sensor is damaged or has lost its settings, disconnect the Front Assist. This will avoid possible dangerous situations caused by a system malfunction. If this occurs have it adjusted.

- **The sensor may become damaged or lose its settings when knocked, for example, during a parking manoeuvre. This may compromise the system's efficacy or disconnect it.**
- **Repairs to the radar sensor require specialist knowledge and special tools. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.**
- **A registration plate or plate holder on the front that is larger than the space for the registration plate, or a registration plate that is curved or warped can cause the radar to malfunction.**
- **Clean away the snow with a brush and the ice preferably with a solvent-free deicer spray.**

Operating the Emergency braking assistance system (Front Assist)

Fig. 232 On the screen of the instrument panel Front Assist switched off message.

The Front Assist is active whenever the ignition is switched on.

When the Front Assist is switched off, so too are the advance warning function (pre warning) and the distance warning.

SEAT recommends leaving the Front Assist always switched on. Exceptions ››› page 258, **Switching the Front Assist off temporarily in the following situations**.

Switching the Front Assist on and off

With the ignition on, Front Assist can be enabled or disabled in the Easy Connect system with the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS > Driver assistance** function buttons ››› page 34.

When Front Assist is switched off, the instrument panel will inform that it has been switched off with the following indicator ››› Fig. 232.

Activating or deactivating the pre-warning (advance warning)

The pre-warning function (advance warning) can be switched on or off in the Easy Connect system with the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS and Driver assistance** function buttons ››› page 34.

The system will store the setting for the next time the ignition is switched on.

SEAT recommends keeping the pre-warning function switched on at all times.

Depending on the infotainment system installed in the vehicle, the advance warning function may be adjusted as follows:

- Advance
- Medium
- Delayed
- Deactivated

SEAT recommends driving with the function in “Medium” mode.

Switching distance warning on and off

If the safe distance with regard to the vehicle in front is exceeded, the relevant warning will appear on the instrument panel display . In this case, increase the safe distance.

The distance warning can be switched on and off in the Easy Connect system using the CAR / and the **SETTINGS > Driver assistance** function buttons ››› page 34.

The system will store the setting for the next time the ignition is switched on.

SEAT recommends keeping the distance warning switched on at all times.

Switching the Front Assist off temporarily in the following situations

In the following situations the Front Assist should be deactivated due to the system's limitations:

- When the vehicle is to be towed.
- If the vehicle is on a test bed.
- When the radar sensor is damaged.
- If the radar sensor takes a heavy knock, for example in a rear collision.
- If it intervenes several times unnecessarily.
- If the radar sensor is covered temporarily with some kind of accessory, such as an additional headlight or the like.
- When the vehicle is to be loaded on a lorry, ferry or train.

System limitations

The Front Assist has certain physical limitations inherent to the system. Thus, in certain circumstances, some of the system's reactions may be inopportune from the driver's standpoint. So pay attention in order to intervene if necessary.

The following conditions may cause the Front Assist not to react or to do so too late:

- In the first few instants of driving after switching on the ignition, due to the system's initial auto-calibration.
- On taking tight bends or complex paths.
- Pressing the accelerator all the way down.
- If the Front Assist is switched off or damaged.
- If the ASR has been disconnected or the ESC activated in **Sport** mode manually ››› page 228.
- If the ESC is controlling.
- If several brake lights of the vehicle or electrically connected trailer are damaged.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- If there are metal objects, e.g. rails on the road or sheets used in road works.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- If the vehicle over-accelerates.
- In case of snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, such as motorbikes.
- Misaligned vehicles.
- Vehicles crossing the other's path.
- Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.
- Special loads and accessories of other vehicles that jut out over the sides, backwards or over the top.

Adaptive Cruise Control ACC*

Introduction

Fig. 233 Related video

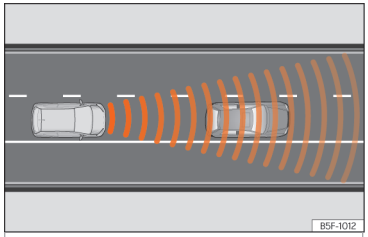


Fig. 234 Detection area.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) **is an extension of the normal cruise control system (CCS)** ››› ⚠.

The ACC function allows the driver to program a cruise speed of between 30 and 210 km/h (18 and 130 mph) and to select the distance required with regard to the vehicle in front.

The ACC will adapt the vehicle's cruise speed at all times, maintaining a safe distance with the vehicle in front based on its speed.

When driving behind another vehicle, the ACC function reduces speed until it is the same as that of the vehicle ahead and maintains the set distance between the vehicles. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, the adaptive cruise control also accelerates, going no higher than the target speed programmed. »

If the vehicle is equipped with automatic gearbox, the ACC can brake the vehicle **until it stops completely** if a vehicle in front of it stops.

The distance programmed should be increased when the road surface is wet.

Driver intervention prompt

During driving, the ACC is subject to certain limitations inherent in the system. In other words, in certain circumstances the driver will have to adjust speed him or herself, as well as the distance from other vehicles.

In this case, the instrument panel screen *will warn you to intervene* by applying the brake and a warning tone will be heard ››› page 260.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology in the ACC cannot overcome the system's inherent limitations or change the laws of physics. If used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Do not use the ACC when visibility is bad, on steep roads, with several bends or in slippery circumstances such as snow, ice, rain or loose gravel, or on flooded roads.**
- **Never use the ACC when driving off-road or on unpaved roads. The ACC has been designed for use on paved roads only.**
- **The ACC does not react on approaching a fixed obstacle, such as the tail of a traffic jam, a damaged vehicle or a vehicle stopped at the traffic lights.**
- **The ACC only reacts to people if a pedestrian monitoring system is available. In addition, the system does not react to animals or vehicles crossing your path or approaching head-on down the same lane.**
- **If the ACC does not reduce speed sufficiently, brake the vehicle immediately by applying the pedal.**
- **If you are driving using the spare wheel, the ACC function could automatically switch off during your journey. Switch off the system when starting off.**
- **If the vehicle continues to move involuntarily after a driver intervention prompt, brake the vehicle by applying the pedal.**
- **If the dash panel displays *a driver intervention prompt*, adjust the distance yourself.**
- **The driver should be ready to accelerate or brake by him/herself at all times.**

CAUTION

If you have the sensation that the radar sensor is damaged, disconnect the ACC. This will avoid possible damage. If this occurs have it adjusted.

- **Repairs to the radar sensor require specialist knowledge and special tools. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.**

Note

- **If the ACC system does not work as described in this chapter, do not use it until it has been checked by a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.**
- **Maximum speed with the ACC activated is limited to 210 km/h (130 mph).**
- **When the ACC is switched on, strange noises may be heard during automatic braking cause by the braking system.**

Symbols on the instrument panel display and control lamps

The speed reduction by the ACC to maintain the distance from the vehicle in front is not sufficient.

Brake! apply the foot brake! Driver intervention prompt.

The ACC is not currently available.[a]

With the vehicle stationary, switch off the engine and start it up again. Check the radar sensor visually ››› Fig. 236 (for dirt, ice or knocks). If it is still unavailable, refer to a specialised workshop to have the system inspected.

[a] The symbol on the instrument panels with colour display is in colour.

The ACC is active.

No vehicle is detected in front. The programmed speed remains constant.

If the symbol is white: the ACC is active.

A vehicle in front has been detected. The ACC adjusts speed and distance from the vehicle in front.

If the symbol is grey: ACC is inactive (Standby)

The system is switched on, but is not adjusting.

The lamp lights up green.

The ACC is active.

Some control and warning lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on to check certain functions. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Warning symbols on page 118.

Indications on the display

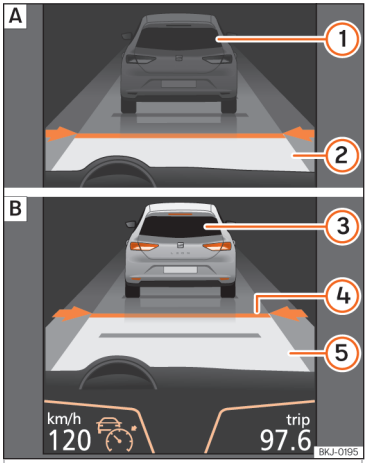


Fig. 235 On the instrument panel display: (A) ACC inactive (Standby). (B) ACC active.

Instructions on the display ››› Fig. 235:

① Vehicle ahead detected. ACC is not active and is not regulating your speed.

② Distance from the vehicle ahead. ACC is not active and is not regulating your distance.

③ Vehicle ahead detected. ACC is active and is regulating your speed.

④ Distance level 2 set by the driver.

⑤ ACC is active and is regulating your distance based on speed.

Note

When the ACC is connected, the indications on the instrument panel screen may be concealed by warnings from other functions, such as an incoming call.

Radar sensor

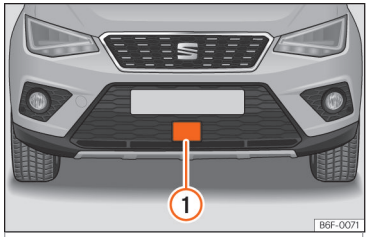


Fig. 236 On the front bumper: radar sensor. »

A radar sensor is installed on the front bumper to determine the traffic situation ››› Fig. 236 ①.

The radar sensor's visibility may be impaired by dirt, mud or snow, or by environmental influences such as rain or mist. In this case the adaptive cruise control (ACC) does not work. The instrument panel displays the following message: **ACC: No sensor vision!** If necessary clean the radar sensor ››› ❗.

When the radar sensor begins to operate properly again, the ACC will automatically be available again. The message on the instrument panel screen will switch off and the ACC will be reactivated again.

ACC operation may be affected by a strong radar reverse reflection. This may occur, for example, in a closed car park or due to the presence of metallic objects (e.g. rails on the road or sheets used in road works).

The area in front of and around the radar sensor should not be covered with adhesives, additional or similar headlights, as this may negatively affect ACC operation.

If the front of the vehicle is not properly repaired or structural modifications are made to it, for example, if the suspension is lowered, ACC operation may be affected. In this scenario, SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership.

⚠ CAUTION

If you have the sensation that the radar sensor is damaged or has lost its settings, disconnect the ACC. This will avoid possible damage. If this occurs have it adjusted.

- **The sensor may become damaged or lose its settings when knocked, for example, during a parking manoeuvre. This may compromise the system's efficacy or disconnect it.**
- **Repairs to the radar sensor require specialist knowledge and special tools. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this purpose.**
- **Clean away the snow with a brush and the ice preferably with a solvent-free deicer spray.**

Operating the Adaptive Cruise Control ACC

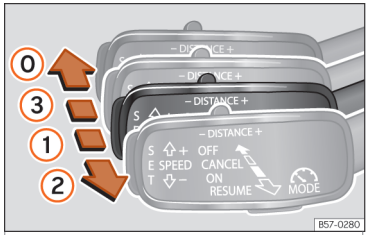


Fig. 237 On the left of the steering column: third lever for operating the Adaptive Cruise Control.

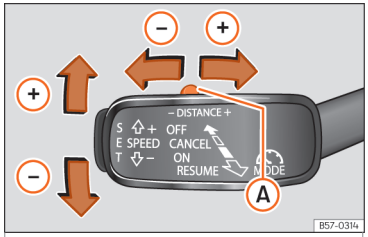


Fig. 238 On the left of the steering column: third lever for operating the Adaptive Cruise Control.

When the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is connected, the green control lamp will

light up on the instrument panel, and the programmed speed and ACC status will be displayed ››› Fig. 235.

What ACC settings are possible?

- Setting your speed ››› page 263.
- Setting your distance ››› page 263.
- Connecting and activating the ACC ››› page 263.
- Disconnecting and deactivating the ACC ››› page 263.
- Adjusting the default distance level at the start of your journey ››› page 263.
- Adjusting the driving profile ››› page 264.
- Conditions in which the ACC does not react ››› page 264.

Setting speed

To set your speed, move the third lever located in position (1) upwards or downwards until the desired speed is shown on the instrument panel display. The speed adjustment is made at 10 km/h (6 mph) intervals.

Once you are driving, if you wish to set the current speed as the vehicle's cruise speed and activate the ACC, press the **SET** ››› Fig. 238 button. If you wish to increase or reduce speed by intervals of 1 km/h (0.6 mph), move the lever to position (2) ››› Fig. 237 or press the **SET** button, respectively.

The set speed can be changed when the vehicle is stopped or during driving, as you like. Any modification to the programmed speed will be shown on the bottom left part of the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 235.

Setting your distance level

To increase/reduce the distance level, press the rocker switch towards the left/right ››› Fig. 238 (A).

The instrument panel display shows the modification of the distance level. There are 5 distance levels to choose from. SEAT recommends level 3. The set distance can be changed when the vehicle is stopped or during driving, as you like ››› ⚠.

Connecting and activating the ACC

To connect and activate the ACC, the position of the gearbox selector lever, the vehicle speed and the position of the third level of the ACC must all be taken into account.

- With a manual transmission, the gearbox selector lever must be in any gear except first, and the speed must be higher than approximately 30 km/h. With an automatic transmission, the gearbox selector lever must be in position **D** or **S**.
- To activate the ACC, with the third lever in position (1) press the **SET** button or move the third lever of the ACC to position (2) ››› Fig. 237. At this point, the image of the ACC on the instrument panel display will switch to *Active* mode ››› Fig. 235.

When the ACC function is active, the vehicle travels at a set speed and distance from the vehicle ahead. Both speed and distance can be changed at any time.

Disconnecting and deactivating the ACC

To disconnect the ACC move the lever to the (0) position ››› Fig. 237 (engaged). An **ACC deactivated** message appears and the function is totally deactivated.

If you do not wish to disconnect the ACC, just to switch it temporarily to inactive mode (Standby), move the third lever to position (3) ››› Fig. 237 or press the brake pedal.

It will also switch to inactive mode (Standby) if the vehicle is stopped and the driver door is opened.

Adjusting the default distance level at the start of your journey

In wet road conditions, you should always set a larger distance with regard to the vehicle in front than when driving in dry conditions.

The following distances can be preselected:

- Very short
- Short
- Media »

- Long
- Very long

In the Easy Connect system you can adjust the distance level that will be applied when the ACC is connected using the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS > Driver assistance** ››› page 34.

Changing the driving profile

In vehicles with SEAT Drive Profile, the driving profile selected can have an influence on the ACC's acceleration and braking behaviour ››› page 274.

In vehicles without SEAT Drive Profile, the behaviour of the ACC can also be affected by selecting any of the following drive profiles in the Easy Connect system:

- Normal
- Sport
- Eco
- Convenience

In this case, you should access the ACC settings using the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS > Driver assistance > ACC** ››› page 34.

The following conditions may lead the ACC not to react:

- If the accelerator is pressed.
- If there is no gear engaged.
- If the ESC is controlling.
- If the driver is not wearing his/her seat belt.
- If several brake lights of the vehicle or electrically connected trailer are damaged.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- Driving faster than 210 km/h (130 mph).

Driver messages

ACC not available

The system can no longer continue to guarantee safe vehicle detection and will be deactivated. The sensor has lost its setting or is damaged. Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired.

ACC and Front Assist: currently not available. No sensor vision

This message will be displayed to the driver if the radar sensor's vision is impaired due, for example, to leaves, snow, heavy fog or dirt. Clean the sensor ››› Fig. 236.

ACC: currently not available. Gradient too steep

The maximum road slope has been exceeded, hence safe ACC operation cannot be guaranteed. The ACC cannot be switched on.

ACC: only available in D, S or M

Select the D/S or M position on the selector lever.

ACC: parking brake applied

The ACC is deactivated if the parking brake is applied. The ACC is available once again after the parking brake is released.

ACC: currently not available. Intervention of stability control

The message for the driver is displayed when the electronic stability control (ESC) intervenes. In this case, the ACC is automatically switched off.

ACC: Take action!

The message for the driver is displayed if, when the vehicle starts up on a hill with a mild slope, the vehicle rolls back even although the ACC is activated. Apply the brake to stop the vehicle from moving/colliding with another vehicle.

ACC: speed limit

The message for the driver is displayed if, in vehicles with manual gearbox, the current speed is too low for the ACC mode.

The speed to be stored must be at least 30 km/h (18 mph). The speed limiter switches off if the speed falls below 20 km/h (12 mph).

ACC: available as of the 2nd gear

The ACC is operational as of the 2nd gear (manual gearbox).

ACC: engine speed

The message for the driver is displayed if, when the ACC accelerates or brakes, the driver does not shift up or down a gear in time, which means exceeding or not reaching the permissible engine speed. The ACC switches itself off. A buzzer warning is heard.

ACC: clutch applied

Vehicles with manual transmission: pressing the clutch pedal for longer abandons control mode.

Door open

Vehicles with automatic transmission: the ACC cannot be activated with the vehicle stationary and the door open.

⚠ WARNING

There is a danger of rear collision when the minimum distance to the vehicle in front is exceeded and the speed difference between both vehicles is so great that a speed reduction by the ACC will not suffice. In this case the brake pedal should be applied immediately.

- **The ACC may not be able to detect all situations properly.**
- **"Stepping" on the accelerator may cause the ACC not to intervene in braking. Driver braking will have priority over intervention by the speed control or adaptive cruise control.**
- **Always be ready to use the brakes!**
- **Observe country-specific provisions governing obligatory minimum distances between vehicles.**
- **It is dangerous to activate control and resume the programmed speed if the road, traffic or weather conditions do not permit this. Risk of accident!**

Note

- **The programmed speed is erased once the ignition or the ACC are switched off.**
- **When the traction control system (ASR) is deactivated during acceleration or else the ESC is activated in Sport* Mode (››› page 34), the ACC switches off automatically.**
- **In vehicles with the Start-Stop system, the engine switches off automatically during the ACC stopping phase and restarts automatically to begin driving.**

Function for preventing overtaking in an inside lane

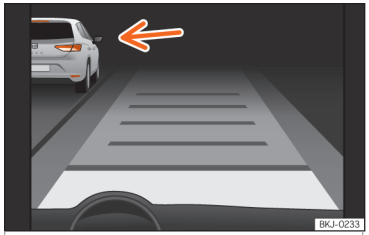


Fig. 239 On the instrument panel display: ACC active, vehicle detected in an outer lane.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) has a function that helps avoid overtaking while driving in inside lanes at certain speeds.

If another vehicle is detected travelling at a slower speed in an outer lane, it is displayed on the multifunction display ››› Fig. 239.

To avoid overtaking while driving in an inside lane the system will gently brake, and in accordance with the speed will prevent the car from overtaking. The driver can override this function at any time by pressing the accelerator pedal. At low speeds the function is inactive, for greater comfort in a traffic jam or in city traffic.

Deactivating the Adaptive Cruise Control ACC temporarily in certain situations

In the following situations the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) should be deactivated due to the system's limitations ››› ⚠:

- When changing lanes, on tight bends and roundabouts, in acceleration and deceleration lanes on motorways or in sections with road works to prevent involuntary acceleration to reach the programmed speed.
- When going through a tunnel, as operation could be affected.
- On roads with several lanes, when other vehicles are driving more slowly in the overtaking lane. In this case, slower vehicles will be overtaken on the right.
- In case of heavy rain, snow or spray, as the vehicle in front might not be detected properly or, in certain circumstances, might not be detected at all.

⚠ WARNING

If the ACC does not switch off in the situations described, serious accidents and injuries may occur.

- **Always switch off the ACC in critical situations.**

Note

If you do not switch off the ACC in the aforementioned situations, you may commit a legal offence.

Special driving situations

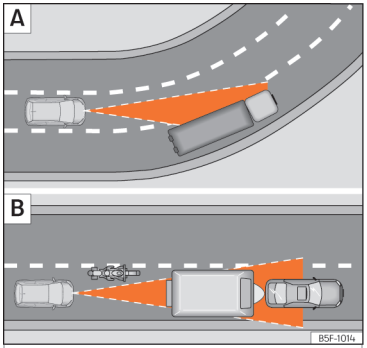


Fig. 240 (A) Vehicle on a bend. (B) Motorcyclist ahead out of range of the radar sensor.

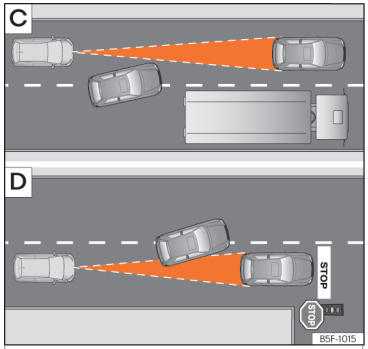


Fig. 241 (C) Vehicle changing lanes. (D) One vehicle turning and another stationary.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) has certain physical limitations inherent in the system. For example, certain reactions of the ACC, in certain circumstances, may be unexpected or come late from the driver's point of view. So pay attention in order to intervene if necessary.

For example, the following traffic situations call for the utmost attention:

Starting driving after a stopping phase (only vehicles with automatic gearbox)

After a stopping phase, the ACC may begin driving automatically when the vehicle in front drives off ››› ⚠.

When the ACC halts the vehicle (e.g. traffic jam), the instrument panel display shows the **ACC ready to start** message. If the vehicle ahead drives off again, the ACC will also do so automatically.

If the vehicle ahead does not drive off again, the vehicle can be kept indefinitely in the **ACC ready to start** status by operating the third lever repeatedly towards position (2) ››› Fig. 237 or by pressing the brake pedal. If the **Press the brake** message is shown on the instrument panel, press the brake. If you do not, an acoustic warning will be heard and the ACC will switch to inactive mode (Standby). At this point, the vehicle may begin to move towards the stopped vehicle ahead ››› ⚠.

Overtaking

When the turn signal lights up before the vehicle begins an overtaking manoeuvre, the ACC accelerates the vehicle automatically and thus reduces the distance from the vehicle in front.

When the vehicle enters the overtaking lane, if the ACC does not detect another vehicle in front, it accelerates until it reaches the programmed speed and maintains it.

System acceleration can be interrupted at any time by pressing the brake or moving the third lever backwards ››› page 262.

Driving through a bend

On entering or exiting bends, the radar sensor may stop detecting the vehicle in front or reacting to a vehicle in the adjacent lane ››› Fig. 240 **A** In these situations the vehicle may brake unnecessarily or fail to react to the vehicle in front. In this case, the driver has to intervene by accelerating or interrupting the braking process by applying the brake or pushing the third lever backwards ››› page 262.

Driving in tunnels

When driving through tunnels the radar sensor may be limited. Switch off the ACC in tunnels.

Narrow or misaligned vehicles

The radar sensor can only detect narrow or misaligned vehicles when they are within range ››› Fig. 240 **B**. This applies particularly to narrow vehicles such as motorbikes. In these cases, you should brake as necessary.

Vehicles with special loads and accessories

Special loads and accessories of other vehicles that jut out over the sides, backwards or over the top may be out of the ACC's range.

Switch off the ACC when driving behind vehicles with special loads and accessories or when overtaking them. In these cases, you should brake as necessary.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles changing lanes a short distance away from your own can only be detected when they are within range of the sensors. Consequently, the ACC will take longer to react ››› Fig. 241 **C**. In these cases, you should brake as necessary.

Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects while driving, such as traffic tails or damaged vehicles.

If a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or moves over and there is a stationary vehicle in front of it, the ACC will not react to it ››› Fig. 241 **D**. In these cases, you should brake as necessary.

Vehicles driving in the opposite direction and vehicles crossing your path

The ACC does not react to vehicles approaching from the opposite direction or vehicles crossing your path.

Metal objects

Metal objects, e.g. rails on the road or sheets used in road works, can confuse the radar sensor and cause the ACC to react wrongly. »

Factors that may affect how the radar sensor operates

If laser sensor operation is impaired, due to heavy rain, spray, snow or mud, the ACC is deactivated temporarily. The relevant text message will appear in the dash panel display. If necessary, clean the radar sensor ››› Fig. 236.

When the radar sensor begins to operate properly again, the ACC will automatically be available again. The message on the instrument panel screen will switch off and the ACC will be reactivated again.

ACC operation may be affected by a strong radar reverse reflection, for example in a closed car park.

Trailer mode

When driving with trailer the ACC controls less dynamically.

Overheated brakes

If the brakes overheat, for example after abrupt braking or in long and steep slopes, the ACC may be deactivated temporarily. The relevant text message will appear in the dash panel display. In this case, adaptive cruise control cannot be activated.

Adaptive Cruise Control can be reactivated once brake temperature has cooled sufficiently. The message will disappear from the instrument panel display. If the message **ACC `not available`** remains on for quite a long time it means that there is a fault. Contact a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not heed the `Press the brake` message, the vehicle may initiate an involuntary movement and could crash into the vehicle ahead. In any event, before driving off, check that the road is clear. The radar sensor may not detect obstacles on the road. This could cause an accident and serious injuries. If necessary, apply the brake.

Blind spot detector (BSD) with parking assistance (RCTA)*

Introduction

The blind spot detector (BSD) helps to detect the traffic situation behind the vehicle.

The integrated parking assistant (RCTA) helps the driver when backing out of a parallel parking spot and in manoeuvring.

The blind spot detector has been developed for driving on paved roads.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology incorporated into the blind spot detector (BSD) with parking assistance (RCTA) included cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. Accidents and severe injury may occur if the blind spot detection system or the rear cross traffic alert are used negligently or involuntarily. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Keep your hands on the wheel at all times to be ready to intervene in the steering at any time.**
- **Pay attention to the control lamps that may come on in the external rear view mirrors and on the instrument panel, and follow any instructions they may give.**
- **The blind spot assistant could react to any special constructions that might be present on the sides of the vehicle: e.g. high or irregular dividers. This may cause erroneous warnings.**
- **Never use the blind spot detector with rear cross traffic alert on unpaved roads. The blind spot detector with rear cross traffic alert has been designed for use on paved roads.**
- **Always pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings.**
- **Never use the blind spot detector or the parking assistant if the radar sensors are dirty.**
- **The external rear view mirror control lamps may have limited functionality due to solar radiation.**

CAUTION

- **The radar sensors on the rear bumper may be damaged or shifted in the event of a collision, for example, when entering or exiting a parking space. This may result in the system disconnecting itself, or at least possibly having its functionality diminished.**
- **In order to ensure that the radar sensors work properly, keep the rear bumper free of snow and ice and do not cover it.**
- **The rear bumper should only be painted with paint authorised by SEAT. The blind spot detector's functions may be limited or work incorrectly if other paints are used.**

Note

If the blind spot detector with parking assistant does not work as described in this chapter, do not use it and contact a specialised workshop.

Control lamps

Control lamp in external rear view mirrors:

It lights up

It lights up once briefly: the blind spot detector is activated and ready to operate.

It lights up: blind spot detector has detected a vehicle in the blind spot.

Flashes

The blind spot detector has detected a vehicle in the blind spot and the turn signal has been turned on in the direction of the detected vehicle ››› ⚠.

Some warning and control lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on to »

check certain functions. They will switch off after a few seconds.

If there are no indications from the control lamp in the external rear view mirror, this means that the blind spot detector has not detected any other vehicles in the area ››› ⚠.

If the dipped beam is on, then the control lamps in the external rear view mirrors will be dimmed (night mode).

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps and the corresponding messages are ignored when they light up, the vehicle may stall in traffic and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps or messages.**
- **Carry out the necessary operations.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Failure to heed the control lamps and corresponding text messages when they light up may result in damage to the vehicle.

Blind spot detector (BSD)

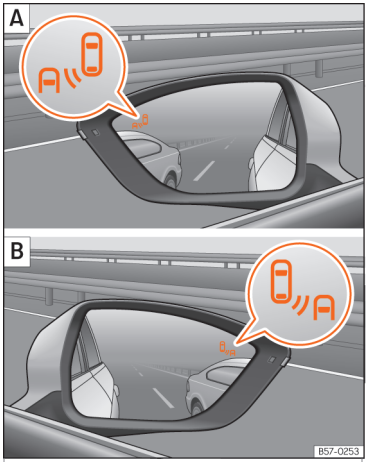


Fig. 242 On external rear-view mirrors: blind spot detector display.

Fig. 243 Rear view of the vehicle: radar sensor areas.

The blind spot detector uses radar sensors to monitor the areas behind the vehicle ››› **Fig. 243**. The system does this by measuring the vehicle's distance from other vehicles and its speed differential. The blind spot detector will not work at speeds of less than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph). The system uses optical signals in the external rear view mirrors to notify the driver.

Indication in the external rear view mirrors

The control lamp (expanded view) provides an indication in the corresponding external mirror ››› **Fig. 242** regarding the traffic situation behind the vehicle, if it is deemed to be critical. The control lamp of the left-hand external mirror indicates the traffic situation to the left of the vehicle, and the control lamp of the right-hand external mirror indicates the traffic situation to the right of the vehicle.

In the case of retrofitted tinted windows or windows with tinted film, the indications of the external mirrors may not be seen clearly or correctly.

Keep the external mirrors clean and free of snow and ice, and do not cover them with adhesives or other similar materials.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located on the left and right of the bumper and are not visible from the outside ››› Fig. 243. The sensors monitor both the blind spot and traffic behind the vehicle ››› Fig. 244, ››› Fig. 245. The range to the sides of the vehicle is a bit larger than the width of a lane.

The lane width is not detected individually, but is rather pre-configured in the system. Thus if you are driving in wide lanes or in between two lanes, the indications may be incorrect. Furthermore, the system can detect vehicles driving in the lane next to you (if there are any), and can also detect stationary objects such as dividers, and thus give an incorrect indication.

Driving situations

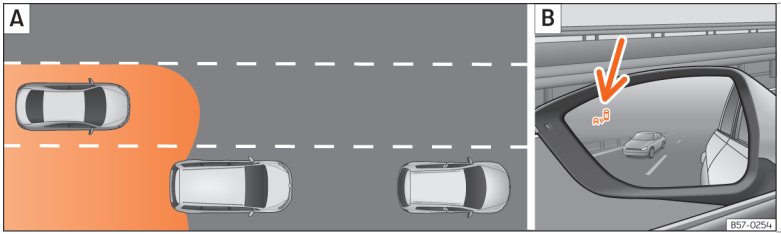


Fig. 244 Schematic diagram: A Passing situation with traffic behind the vehicle. B Indication from the blind spot detector in the left-hand external mirror.

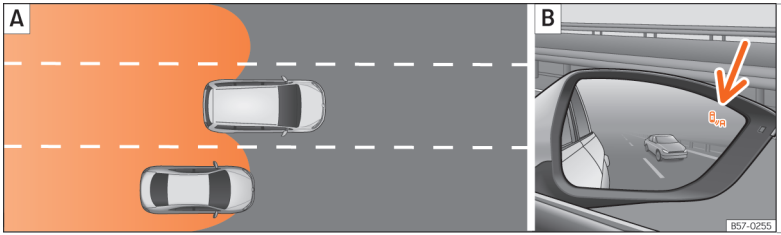


Fig. 245 Schematic diagram: A Situation of passing and then moving into the right-hand lane. B Indication from the blind spot detector in the right-hand external mirror.

In the following situations, an indication will be displayed in the external mirror ››› Fig. 244 B (arrow) or ››› Fig. 245 B (arrow):

- When being overtaken by another vehicle ››› Fig. 244 A.
- When passing another vehicle ››› Fig. 245 A with a speed differential of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph). If the vehicle is passing at a considerably higher speed, no indication will be displayed.

The faster the vehicle approaches, the sooner an indication will be displayed in the external mirror, because the blind spot detector takes into account the speed differential with other vehicles. Thus even though the distance from the other vehicle is identical, the indication will appear sooner in some cases and later in others.

Physical limitations inherent to the system

In some situations the blind spot detector may not interpret the traffic situation correctly. E.g. in the following situations:

- on tight bends;
- in the case of lanes with different widths;
- at the top of slopes;
- in adverse weather conditions;

• in the case of special constructions to the side of the vehicle, e.g., high or irregular dividers.

Parking assistant (RCTA)

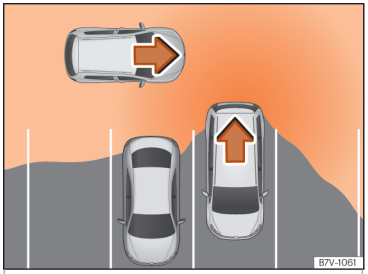


Fig. 246 Diagram of the parking assistant: detected area around the vehicle that is driving off.

The parking assistant uses the radar sensors on the rear bumper ››› **Fig. 243** to monitor the traffic crossing behind the vehicle as it backs out of a parallel parking space or as it is being manoeuvred, for example in very low visibility conditions.

If the system detects that someone else on the road is approaching the rear of the vehicle ››› **Fig. 246**, an acoustic alarm is heard.

In addition to the acoustic alarm, if the vehicle is equipped with the park assist system, the driver is also informed by means of a visual signal on the radio screen. This signal is displayed in the form of a red strip at the back of the image of the vehicle on the radio screen. This strip displays the side of the vehicle towards which traffic is approaching.[1)]

Automatic braking to reduce damages

If the rear cross traffic alert detects that someone else on the road is approaching the rear of the vehicle and the driver does not step on the brake, the system will engage the brakes automatically.

The parking system helps the driver by automatically engaging the brakes to reduce any damage. The automatic intervention on the brakes takes place when driving in reverse at approx. 1-12 km/h (1-7 mph. After detecting that the vehicle is stationary, the system keeps it that way for around 2 seconds.

After automatically braking to reduce damage, the system will not be able to automatically brake again for approximately 10 seconds.

You can interrupt the automatic braking by stepping hard on the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal in order to regain control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology incorporated into the rear cross traffic alert cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. The parking assistant function should not tempt you into taking any risks. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **The system should never be used in limited visibility conditions or complicated traffic, e.g., in high-traffic areas or when crossing multiple lanes.**
- **Be sure to always be aware of the vehicle's surroundings, since the system often fails to detect things such as bicycles or pedestrians.**
- **The rear cross traffic alert itself will not brake the vehicle to a complete stop.**

[1)] It is only displayed if the vehicle is equipped with a parking system.

Using the blind spot detector (BSD) with parking assistant (RCTA)

Activating and deactivating the blind spot detector (BSD) with parking assistant (RCTA)

The blind spot detector with parking assistant can be switched on and off by accessing the **Assistance systems** menu on the dash panel display using the steering wheel controls. If the vehicle is equipped with a multifunction camera, it can also be accessed by means of the driver assistance systems key located on the main beam headlight lever.

Open the **Assistants** menu.

- ☐ Blind spot
- ☐ Exit Assist

If the verification box on the control panel is checked ☑, the functionality will be automatically activated at ignition.

When the blind spot detector is ready to operate, the indications in the external mirrors will turn on briefly as confirmation.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last adjustment in the system will remain active.

If the blind spot detector was automatically deactivated, it will only be possible to restart the system after turning the vehicle off and restarting it.

Automatic deactivation of the blind spot detector (BSD)

The radar sensors of the blind spot detector with rear cross traffic alert will be automatically deactivated when, among other reasons, one of the sensors is detected to be permanently covered. This may be the case if, for example, there is a layer of snow or ice in front of one of the sensors.

The relevant text message will appear in the dash panel display.

Trailer mode

The Blind spot detector and the rear cross traffic alert will be automatically deactivated and it will be impossible to activate them if the tow hitch is electrically connected to a trailer or other similar object.

As soon as the driver starts to drive with a trailer connected electrically to the vehicle, a message will appear on the instrument panel display indicating that the blind spot detector and the rear cross traffic alert are deactivated. Once the trailer has been unhitched from the vehicle, if you want to use the blind spot detector and the rear cross traffic alert, you will have to reactivate them in the corresponding menu.

If the towing hitch is not factory equipped, then the blind spot detector and the rear cross traffic alert will have to be deactivated manually when driving with a trailer.

SEAT Drive Profile*

Introduction

SEAT Drive Profile enables the driver to choose between four profiles or modes, **Normal**, **Sport**, **Eco** and **Individual**, that modify the behaviour of various vehicle functions, providing different driving experiences.

The **Individual** profile can be configured according to personal preferences. The other profiles are fixed.

Description

Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, SEAT Drive Profile can operate on the following functions:

Engine

Depending on the profile selected, the engine responds more spontaneously or more in harmony with the movements of the accelerator. Additionally, when **Eco** mode is selected, the Start-stop function is automatically activated.

In vehicles with automatic transmission, the gear change points are modified to position them in lower or higher engine speed ranges.

Additionally, the **Eco** mode activates the Inertia function, enabling consumption to be further reduced.

In manual gearbox vehicles, **Eco** mode causes the gear shift recommendations that appear on the instrument panel to vary, facilitating more efficient driving.

"Dual Ride" suspension

The "Dual Ride" suspension features a comfortable suspension in the **Eco** and **Normal** profiles, suitable for daily use. Contrasting with this it features a sporty suspension in the **Sport** profile, suitable for a sporty driving style. In the **Individual** profile the suspension can be switched between **Normal** or **Sport**, depending on personal preference.

In the event of a fault in the "Dual Ride" suspension, the following message is displayed on the instrument panel screen **Fault: shock absorber regulation**.

Address

Power steering becomes more robust in **Sport** mode to enable a sportier driving style.

Air conditioning

In vehicles with Climatronic, this can operate in **eco** mode, especially restricting fuel consumption.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The acceleration and braking gradient of the adaptive cruise control varies according to the active driving profile ››› page 259.

Setting driving mode

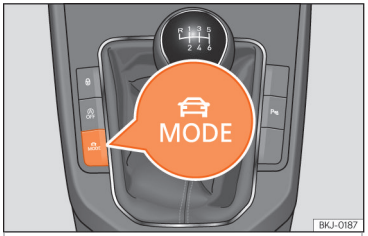


Fig. 247 Next to the gearbox lever: MODE button.

You can select from **Normal**, **Sport**, **Eco** and **Individual**.

You can select the required mode either by repeatedly pressing the button **MODE** ››› Fig. 247, or on the touch screen, in the menu that opens when the above button is pressed.

An icon on the Easy Connect system display informs about the active mode.

The **MODE** button light remains lit up yellow when the active mode is different to **Normal**.

Driving profile	Characteristics
Normal	Offers a balanced driving experience, suitable for everyday use.
Sport	Provides a complete dynamic performance in the vehicle, enabling the user a more sporty driving style.
Eco	Places the vehicle in a particularly low state of consumption, facilitating a fuel-saving driving style that is respectful to the environment.
Individual	Enables some configurations to be modified by pressing the **Profile settings** button. The functions that can be adjusted depend on the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When operating SEAT Drive Profile, pay attention to all traffic: doing otherwise could cause an accident.

Note

- **When the vehicle is switched off it will store the driving profile that was selected when the ignition key was removed. Nevertheless, when the engine is restarted, the engine and the gear will start by default in the Normal setting. For engine and gear to revert to the desired position, select the corresponding drive profile again or press** »

the Easy Connect system button repeatedly.

- **Your speed and driving style must always be adjusted to visibility, weather, and traffic conditions.**
- **The Eco profile is not recommended when towing a vehicle.**

Kick-down

The kick-down feature allows maximum acceleration to be reached.

If the **eco*** ››› page 275 mode has been selected in SEAT Drive Profile*, and the accelerator is pressed beyond a hard point, the engine power is automatically controlled to give your vehicle maximum acceleration.

⚠ WARNING

Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kick-down feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.

Park Assist*

Introduction

The Park Assist system is an additional function of ParkPilot ››› page 284 and helps the driver to:

- find a suitable parking space,
- select a parking mode,
- park driving in reverse in suitable perpendicular and parallel spaces,
- park driving forwards in suitable perpendicular spaces,
- exit a parking space driving forwards from a parallel space.

In vehicles with a Park Assist system and factory radio the front, rear and side areas are represented, and the position of obstacles is shown relative to the vehicle.

The Park Assist system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system and its use requires special attention by the driver ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The technology used in the park assist system involves a series of limitations inherent in the actual system and in the use of ultrasonic sensors. The use of Park Assist should never tempt you to take any risk that may compromise safety. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Certain surfaces of objects and garments do not reflect the ultrasound sensors' signals. The system cannot detect, at least correctly, these objects or people wearing such clothes.**
- **Ultrasound sensor signals may be affected by external sound sources. In certain circumstances this may prevent them from detecting people or objects.**
- **The ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.**
- **Monitor the area around the vehicle at all times, since the ultrasound sensors do not detect small children, animals or certain objects in all situations.**

⚠ WARNING

Quick turns of the steering wheel when parking or exiting a parking space with Park Assist can cause serious injury.

- **Do not hold the steering wheel during manoeuvres to park or exit a parking space**

until the system requests it. Doing so disables the system during the manoeuvre, resulting in the parking being cancelled.

CAUTION

- In certain circumstances, the ultrasonic sensors do not detect objects such as trailer tongues, bars, fences, posts or thin trees, or an open (or opening) rear lid, which could damage the vehicle.
- Retrofitting of certain accessories to the vehicle, such as a bicycle rack, may interfere with the operation of the Park Assist system and cause damage.
- The Park Assist system uses as a reference parked vehicles, curbs and other objects. Make sure that the tyres and wheels are not damaged while parking. If necessary, opportunely interrupt the parking manoeuvre to avoid damaging the vehicle.
- The ultrasound sensors on the bumper may be damaged or shifted in the event of a collision, for example, when entering or exiting a parking space.
- If you use high-pressure or vapour equipment to clean the ultrasound sensors, do not apply it directly unless very briefly and always from a distance of more than 10 cm.
- A registration plate or plate holder on the front with larger than the space for the registration plate, or a registration plate that is curved or warped can cause:
  - false detections,
  - loss of sensor visibility.
  - cancellation of the parking manoeuvre or defective parking.
- If one of the ultrasonic sensors is damaged, the area corresponding to that group of sensors (front or rear) is deactivated and cannot be activated until the fault is corrected. However, you can still use the sensors of the other bumper as per usual. If there is a fault in the system, consult a specialist workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this.

Note

- In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the ultrasound sensors of the bumper clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover them with adhesives or other objects.
- Certain sources of noise, such as rough asphalt or paving stones and the noise of other vehicles can induce the Park Assist system or ParkPilot to give erroneous warnings.
- In order to become familiar with the system and its functions, SEAT recommends that you practice operating the Park Assist system in an area where there is not too much traffic or in a car park.

Description of the Park Assist system

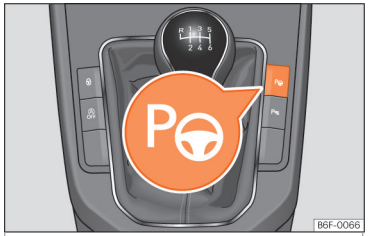


Fig. 248 In the centre console: button to switch on the Park Assist system.

The components of the Park Assist system are the ultrasonic sensors located in the front and rear bumpers, the P button ››› **Fig. 248** to switch the system on and off and the messages on the instrument panel display.

Prematurely stopping or automatically interrupting the manoeuvres for parking or exiting a parking space

Park Assist interrupts the manoeuvres for parking or exiting a parking space in any of the following cases:

- Press the P button.
- The speed exceeds approximately 7 km/h (4 mph).
- The driver takes hold of the steering wheel. »

- The parking manoeuvre does not end within 6 minutes from the activation of automatic steering.
- There is a fault in the system (the system is temporarily unavailable).
- ASR is switched off.
- ASR or ESC intervene with regulation.
- The driver door is opened.

To restart the manoeuvre it is necessary that none of these things occur and that the P button is pressed again.

Special characteristics

The Park Assist system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system. For example, it is therefore not possible to enter or exit a parking space on sharp bends.

While entering or exiting a parking space, a brief signal sounds to prompt the driver to change between forward and reverse gears (depending on the case). In successive manoeuvres, the assistant tells the driver to change gears, at the latest, when the continuous audible signal is given (object present at a distance of ≤30 cm) by Park Pilot.

When the Park Assist system turns the steering wheel with the vehicle stationary, the instrument panel also displays the symbol. Keep the brake pedal depressed while the symbol remains on the dash panel display to turn the wheels with the vehicle stopped. This way, the system will require fewer manoeuvres to complete the parking action.

Trailer mode

The Park Assist system cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket ››› page 295 is electrically connected to a trailer.

After changing a wheel

If, after changing a wheel, the vehicle stops entering and exiting parking spaces correctly, the circumference of the new wheel may be different and the system may need to adapt to it. The adaptation is automatic and takes place during driving. Making turns slowly and in both directions (20 km/h [12 mph]) for a few minutes may contribute to this adaptation process ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 276.

Selecting a parking mode

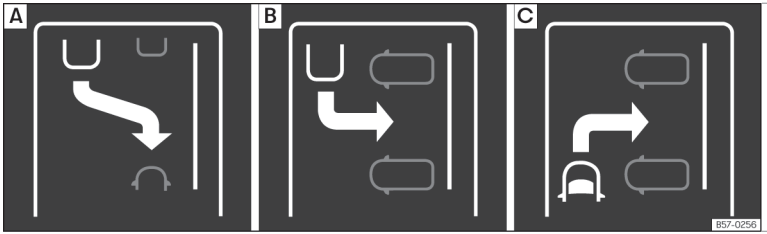


Fig. 249 Overview of reduced displays for parking modes: A Parallel parking in reverse. B Perpendicular parking in reverse. C Perpendicular parking forwards.

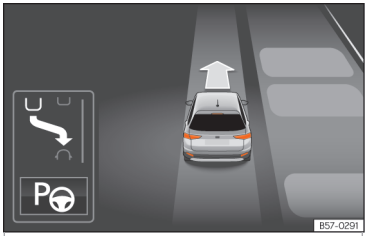


Fig. 250 On the instrument panel display: display of the assisted parking system with decreased visibility.

Selecting a parking mode with Park Assist with prior step in front of the space

After activating the Park Assist system and after detecting a parking space, the display on the instrument panel proposes a parking mode. The Park Assist system selects the parking mode automatically. The selected mode is shown on the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 250. The reduced display of other possible parking modes is also shown ››› Fig. 249. If the mode selected by the system does not correspond to the desired mode, you can select another mode by pressing the P button ››› Fig. 248.

	Action
1.	The necessary conditions to park with Park Assist have to be met ››› page 281.
2.	Press the P button. A control lamp on the P button lights up when the system is switched on. Additionally, the selected parking mode is shown on the instrument panel display and the reduced display shows another parking mode it can be changed to.
3.	Turn on the corresponding turn signal towards the side of the road where you are parking. The instrument panel displays the side corresponding to the road. By default, if the turn signal is not on, it parks on the right in the direction of traffic.
4.	If necessary, press the P button again to change to the next parking mode. Once you have switched to all possible parking modes, if the P button is pressed again, the system switches off.
5.	Press the P button again to switch the system back on.
6.	Follow the instructions displayed on the instrument panel while paying attention to traffic and drive the vehicle past the parking space.

»

Special case of perpendicular parking space to park forwards without driving past first

	Action
1.	The necessary conditions to park with Park Assist have to be met ››› **page 281**.
2.	Drive forward towards the parking space while paying attention to traffic and stop the vehicle.
3.	Press the P button *once*. A control lamp on the P button lights up when the system is switched on. Additionally, the selected parking mode is shown on the instrument panel display without reduced display.
4.	Release the steering wheel ››› ⚠ **in Introduction on page 276**.

Park with Park Assist

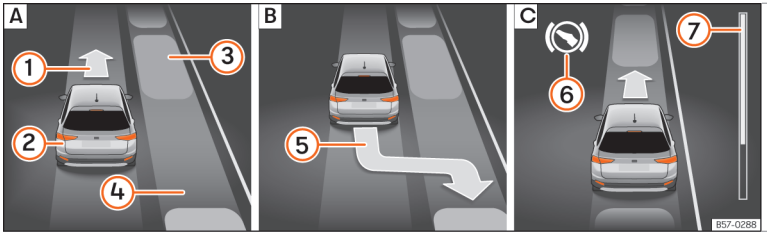


Fig. 251 On the instrument panel display: perpendicular parking. A Finding a parking space. B Parking position. C Manoeuvring.

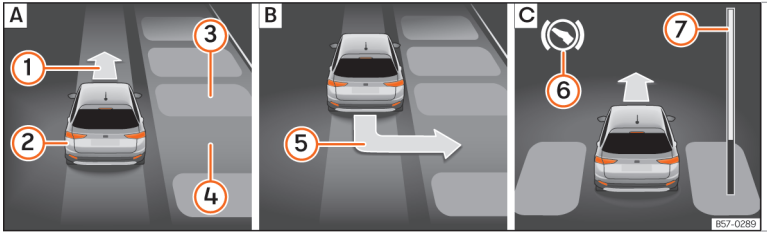


Fig. 252 On the instrument panel display: parallel parking. A Finding a parking space. B Parking position. C Manoeuvring.

Key to **Fig. 251** and **Fig. 252**:

1. Message to move forwards
2. Your vehicle
3. Parked vehicle
4. Parking space detected
5. Message to park
6. Message to press the brake pedal
7. Progress bar

Progress bars

The progress bar ››› **Fig. 251** 7 and ››› **Fig. 252** 7 on the screen of the instrument panel displays the relative distance to be covered. The greater the distance, the fuller the progress bar. When driving forward, the content of the progress bar decreases upwards, and when reversing, it decreases downwards.

Necessary conditions to park with Park Assist

For parallel parking spaces	For perpendicular parking spaces
The traction control system (ASR) must be turned on ››› page 228.	

»

For parallel parking spaces	For perpendicular parking spaces
Do not exceed approximately **40 km/h (25 mph)** when driving past the parking space.	Do not exceed approximately **20 km/h (12 mph)** when driving past the parking space.
Keep a distance between **0.5 and 2.0 metres** when driving past the parking space.	
Length of the space: **length of the vehicle + 0.8 metres**	Width of the space: **width of the vehicle + 0.8 metres**
Do not exceed approximately **7 km/h (4 mph)** when parking.	

Parking

	Do the following:
1.	The necessary conditions have to be met to park with Park Assist ››› page 281 and the parking mode must be selected ››› page 279.
2.	Look at the display on the instrument panel to see if the space has been detected as "appropriate" and if the correct position for parking has been reached ››› Fig. 251 B or ››› Fig. 252 B.
	The space is considered "appropriate" if the display on the instrument panel shows the message to park (5).
3.	Stop the vehicle and, after a brief pause, engage the reverse gear.
4.	Release the steering wheel ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 276.
5.	Please note the following message: **`Automatic steering enabled. Pay attention to your surroundings.`**
	While you keep watch around you, carefully start accelerating up to no more than 7 km/h (4 mph).
	During the parking manoeuvre, the system **only** takes charge of the steering. **You, as the driver, have to accelerate, engage the clutch if necessary, change gears and brake.**
6.	Reverse until the ParkPilot continuous signal is heard.
	OR: reverse until the instrument panel displays the message to go forwards ››› Fig. 251 C or ››› Fig. 252 C.
	OR: reverse until the instrument panel displays the message **`Park Assist finished`**.
	The progress bar (7) indicates the distance to cover ››› page 281.
7.	Press down the brake pedal until the Park Assist system has finished turning the steering wheel.
	OR: until the Ⓟ symbol on the instrument panel display switches off.
8.	Select first gear.
9.	Go forward until the ParkPilot continuous signal is heard.
	OR: go forward until the instrument panel display shows the message to reverse.
	The Park Assist system steers the vehicle forward and back until it centres it in the space ››› Fig. 251 C or ››› Fig. 252 C.
10.	For best results, wait at the end of each manoeuvre until the Park Assist system has finished turning the steering wheel.
	The parking manoeuvre ends when a corresponding message is displayed on the instrument panel and, in some cases, an acoustic signal sounds.

Note

If the manoeuvre is terminated prematurely during parking, the result may not be the best.

Exiting a parking space with Park Assist (only for parallel spaces)

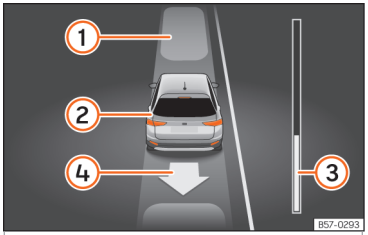


Fig. 253 On the instrument panel display: driving off from perpendicular parking.

Key to the Fig. 253:

1. Parked vehicle
2. Your vehicle in reverse gear
3. Progress bar to indicate the distance left to cover
4. Message giving the proposed manoeuvre to exit the parking space

Necessary conditions to exit a parking space with Park Assist

- Only for parallel parking spaces
- The traction control system (ASR) must be turned on ››› page 228.
- Length of the space: **length of the vehicle + 0.5 metres**
- Do not exceed approximately **7 km/h (4 mph)** when exiting the parking space.

Exiting a parking space

Do the following:

	For parallel parking spaces
1.	The necessary conditions to exit a parking space with Park Assist have to be met ››› page 283.
2.	Switch on the engine ››› page 217.
3.	Press the P button ››› Fig. 248. A control lamp on the P button lights up when the system is switched on.
4.	Turn on the corresponding turn signal towards the road you will enter when exiting the parking space.
5.	Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
6.	Release the steering wheel ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 276. Please note the following message: **Automatic steering enabled. Pay attention to your surroundings.** While you keep watch around you, carefully start accelerating up to no more than 7 km/h (4 mph). When exiting the parking space, the system **only** takes charge of the steering. **You, as the driver, have to accelerate, engage the clutch if necessary, change gears and brake.**
7.	Reverse until the ParkPilot continuous signal is heard. **OR:** go backwards until the instrument panel display shows the message to go forward. The progress bar ››› Fig. 253 ③ indicates the distance to cover ››› page 281.
8.	Press down the brake pedal until the Park Assist system has finished turning the steering wheel. **OR:** press down the brake pedal until the ⛔ symbol on the instrument panel display switches off.

»

	For parallel parking spaces
9.	Go forward until the ParkPilot continuous signal is heard.
	OR: go forward until the instrument panel display shows the message to reverse.
	The Park Assist system steers the vehicle forward and back until it can exit the space.
10.	The vehicle can exit the space when a corresponding message is displayed on the instrument panel and, in some cases, an acoustic signal sounds.
	Take charge of the steering with the turning angle set by the Park Assist system.
11.	Paying attention to the traffic, exit the parking space.

Automatic braking intervention by Park Assist

Park Assist helps the driver by automatically braking in certain situations.

The driver is always responsible for braking in time ››› ⚠.

Automatic braking intervention to avoid exceeding the speed limit

To avoid exceeding the allowed speed of approx. 7 km/h (4 mph) when entering or leaving a parking space, the brakes may activate automatically. After automatically activating the brakes, the manoeuvres to enter or exit a parking space may continue.

The brakes are only automatically activated once for each attempt to enter or exit a parking space. If the speed of approximately 7 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded again, the corresponding operation is halted.

Automatic braking to reduce damages

Depending on certain conditions, the Park Assist system can automatically brake the vehicle when faced with an obstacle, briefly actioning and holding down the brake pedal ››› ⚠. Following this the driver must press the brake pedal.

Automatic braking intervention to reduce damage leads to the parking manoeuvre finishing.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic braking intervention by Park Assist should never tempt you to take any risk that may compromise safety. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **The Park Assist system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system. In certain situations, the automatic braking intervention may only work in a limited way or not work at all.**
- **Always be ready to use the brakes yourself!**
- **The automatic braking intervention will end after approximately 1.5 seconds. Afterwards, brake the vehicle yourself.**

Parking aid parking and manoeuvring (ParkPilot)

Introduction

Assorted assistance systems – which vary depending on the equipment fitted in the car – will help you when parking or manoeuvring:

– **Parking System Plus.** It assists the driver by visually and audibly warning them about obstacles detected *in front* and *behind* the vehicle ››› page 286.

– **Rear parking aid**. It is an audible and visual assistant that warns about obstacles located *behind* the vehicle ››› page 290.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always pay attention, also when looking straight ahead, to traffic and the vehicle surroundings. The assistance systems are not a replacement for driver awareness. When inserting or removing the vehicle from a parking space, or when performing**

similar manoeuvres the driver always assumes the responsibility.

- Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered. Pay special attention to children and animals.
- Always keep visual control of the surroundings: use the mirrors for additional help.

CAUTION

Parking Aid functions may be negatively affected by different factors that may lead to damage to the vehicle or its immediate surrounds:

- Under certain circumstances, the system does not detect or display certain objects:
  - Objects such as chains, trailer draw bars, fences, posts and thin trees.
  - Objects that are located above the sensors, such as protrusions in a wall.
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures, such as wire mesh fences or powder snow.
- Certain surfaces of objects and garments do not reflect the ultrasound sensors' signals. The system cannot detect these objects or people wearing such clothes correctly.
- Ultrasound sensor signals may be affected by external sound sources. In certain circumstances this may prevent them from detecting people or objects.
- Please note that low obstacles detected by the system may no longer be registered by the sensors as the car moves closer, so the system will not give any further warning. In certain circumstances, objects such as high kerbs that could damage the bottom of the vehicle are not detected either.
- If the first warning from the Parking Aid is ignored, the vehicle could suffer considerable damage.
- The knocks or damage on the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arch and vehicle underbody can adjust the orientation of the sensors. This can affect the parking aid function. In this case, have the function checked by a specialised workshop.
- A registration plate or plate holder on the front with larger than the space for the registration plate, or a registration plate that is curved or warped can cause:
  - false detections,
  - loss of sensor visibility.

Note

- In certain situations, the system can give a warning even though there is no obstacle in the detected area, e.g:
  - with rough or cobbled floors or ground with long grass;
  - with external ultrasound sources, such as cleaning vehicles or other vehicles equipped with ultrasound systems;
  - in downpours, intense snow, hail or dense exhaust gases,
  - if the number plate is not perfectly secured to the bumper surface,
  - or in locations such as the brow of a hill.
- In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the ultrasound sensors clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover them with adhesives or other objects.
- If you use high-pressure or vapour equipment to clean the ultrasound sensors, apply it directly only very briefly and always from a distance of more than 10 cm.
- Retrofitting of accessories to the vehicle, such as a bicycle rack, may interfere with the operation of the Parking Aid.
- Fitting certain accessories to the front of the vehicle, such as a plate holder with advertising, may interfere with the operation of the Park Assist.
- In order to familiarise yourself with the system, it is advised that you practice parking in an area or car park that is free from traffic. There must be good weather and light conditions. »

- **The volume and tone of the warnings can be modified, in addition to the indications ››› page 291.**
- **In vehicles *without* an infotainment system, these parameters can be modified in a SEAT Official Service or in a specialised workshop.**
- **Please observe information on towing a trailer ››› page 292.**
- **The display on the Easy Connect screen shows a slight time delay.**

Parking System Plus*

Description

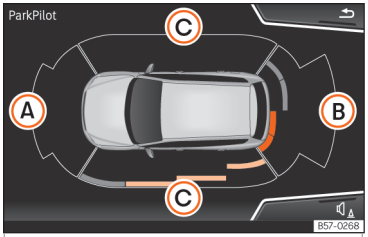


Fig. 254 Represented area.

During parking, **Parking System Plus** assists the driver by visually and audibly warning them about obstacles detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle.

There are ultrasound sensors integrated in the front and rear bumpers. When they detect an obstacle, you are alerted by audible warnings and visually on the Easy Connect system.

In case of risk of rear or front collision, an audible warning will be emitted. You can tell whether the risk is in front of or behind the vehicle by choosing different sound frequencies on Easy Connect.

Make particularly sure that the sensors are not covered by adhesives, residues and the like, as this could affect the system's operation. Cleaning instructions **››› page 337**.

The approximate measurement range of the sensors is:

Ⓐ 1.20 m
Ⓑ 1.60 m
Ⓒ 0.90 m

As you approach the obstacle, the time interval between the audible warnings will be reduced. When you reach around 0.30 m the warning will be constant: do not continue to move forward (or backward)!

If you maintain separation from the obstacle, the volume of the warning begins to reduce after four seconds (does not affect the tone of the constant warning).

In order to view the entire periphery of the vehicle, the vehicle must be moved a few metres forwards or backwards. Thus, the missing areas are screened and obstacles at the sides of the vehicle are displayed **››› Fig. 254 Ⓒ**.

Special features of ParkPilot with Area View

In the following situations the screened area on the side of the vehicle is automatically hidden:

- When a vehicle door is opened.
- When the ASR is switched off.
- When there is ASR or ESC regulation.
- If the vehicle remains stationary for more than approximately 3 minutes.

Parking Aid operation

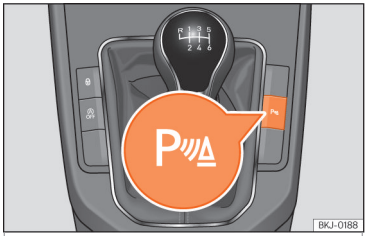


Fig. 255 Centre console: parking aid button (depending on the version).

Manual connection of Parking Aid

- Press the P button *once*.

Manual disconnection of Parking Aid

- Press the P button *again*.

Manual disconnection of Parking Aid display (the audible sounds remain active)

- Press a button on the main menu of the factory-assembled infotainment system.
- **OR** press the BACK function button.

Automatic connection of Parking Aid

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: If the vehicle approaches an obstacle that is in its forwards path at a speed below 15 km/h (9 mph) ››› page 287. The obstacle is detected from a distance of approx. 95 cm if the automatic connection is activated in the infotainment system. A reduced display is shown.
- **OR**: if the vehicle moves backwards.

Automatic disconnection of Parking Aid

- Move the selector lever to position **P**.
- **OR**: accelerate to approx. 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.

Temporary suppression of sound in Parking Aid

- Press the function button.

Change from reduced view to full view

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: press the car icon in reduced view.

If necessary, switch to the rear-assist image (Rear View Camera "RVC")

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR** press the **RVC** function button.

A short confirmation signal will be heard and the button symbol will light up yellow when the system is switched on.

Automatic activation

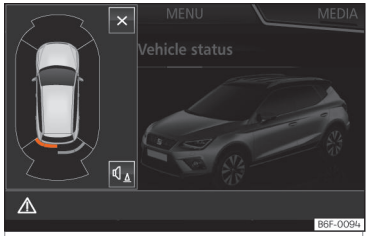


Fig. 256 Miniature indication of automatic activation.

When the **Plus Parking Aid** connects automatically, a miniature of the vehicle and the segments will appear on the left of the display ››› Fig. 256.

Automatic activation occurs when slowly approaching an obstacle located in front of the vehicle. It only operates every time the speed is reduced below approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) for the first time.

If the parking aid is switched off using the P button, the following actions must be carried out in order for it to automatically switch on:

- Switch off the ignition and switch it on again.
- **OR**: accelerate above 15 km/h (9 mph) before reducing speed below this number again. »

- **OR**: place the selector lever in position **P** and then move it from this position.
- **OR**: switch on and off the automatic activation in the Easy Connect system menu.

The automatic activation with parking aid miniature indication can be switched on and off from the Easy Connect system menu ››› page 34:

- Switch the ignition on.
- Select: Infotainment button CAR **SETTINGS > Parking and manoeuvring** function button.
- Select the **Automatic activation** option. When the function button check box is activated ☑, the function is on.

If the system has been activated automatically, an audible sound warning will only be given when obstacles in front are at a distance of less than 50 cm.

CAUTION

The automatic connection of the Parking Aid only works when you are driving slowly. If driving style is not adapted to the circumstances, an accident and serious injury or damage may be caused.

Segments of the visual indication

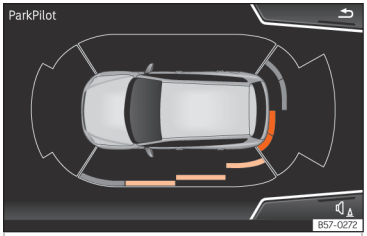


Fig. 257 Parking Aid display on the Easy Connect system screen.

The distance of separation from the obstacle can be estimated using the segments around the vehicle.

The optical indication of the segments works as follows:

White segments: they are displayed when the obstacle 30 cm away from the vehicle or further if it is not within the vehicle's trajectory or the direction of travel is in the opposite direction to its location, and also when the electronic parking brake is activated.

Yellow segments: obstacles located in the vehicle's trajectory and which are more than 30 cm away from the vehicle are displayed in yellow.

Red segments: obstacles that are less than 30 cm away from the vehicle are displayed in red.

Moreover, with the Media System Plus, Navi System or Navi System Plus systems, a yellow trail indicates the vehicle's expected trajectory based on the steering angle.

Whenever the obstacle is located in the vehicle's direction of travel, the corresponding audible warning will sound.

As the vehicle approaches an obstacle, the segments are displayed closer to the vehicle. When the penultimate segment is displayed, this means that the vehicle has reached the collision zone. In the collision zone, the obstacles are represented in red, including those out of the path. Do not continue to move forward (or backward) ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 284, ››› ❗ in Introduction on page 285 !

Adjusting the display and audible warnings

The settings for the display and audible warnings are controlled via the Easy Connect*.

Automatic activation

☑ **on** – activates the **Automatic activation** option ››› page 287.

☐ **off** – deactivates the **Automatic activation** option ››› page 287.

Front volume*

Volume in the front and rear area.

Front sound settings/sharpness*

Frequency (tone) of the sound in the front area.

Rear volume*

Volume in the rear area.

Rear sound settings/sharpness*

Frequency (tone) of the sound in the rear area.

Adjust volume

With the parking aid switched on, the active audio/video source volume will be reduced to the intensity of the selected setting.

Error messages

When the Parking Aid is activated or when it is switched on, if a message reporting a Parking aid error is displayed on the instrument panel, there is a fault in the system.

If the fault does not disappear before disconnecting the ignition, the next time that the parking aid is engaged in reverse, no audible signal of the existence of a fault will be issued.

If there is a fault in the parking aid system a message will appear on the instrument panel indicating the error.

If there is a fault in a sensor, the symbol ⚠ is displayed on the Easy Connect display in front of/behind the vehicle. If a rear sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in area Ⓐ are displayed ››› Fig. 254. If a front sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in area Ⓑ are displayed.

Have the fault corrected by a specialised workshop without delay.

Driving with a trailer

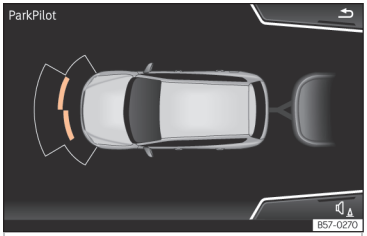


Fig. 258 Parking assist display on the screen with trailer attached.

In vehicles equipped with a towing bracket device from the factory, when the trailer is connected electrically, the Parking Aid rear sensors will not be activated when reverse gear is engaged, when the selector lever is turned to position **R** or when the button P⁰⁄₄ is pressed.

The distance to possible obstacles at the rear of the vehicle and at its sides will not be displayed on the screen and will not be indicated by means of audible sound signals.

The Easy Connect system screen will only display objects detected at the front, and the vehicle's trajectory will be hidden.

Braking while manoeuvring function*

✓ Only valid with Parking System Plus

The emergency braking function is used to minimise damage in the event of a collision.

Depending on the equipment, if the Parking Aid is active, the braking while manoeuvring function activates emergency braking when it detects an obstacle in the vehicle's path that could cause a collision, driving forwards or in reverse.

The function will not brake if the Parking Aid is activated automatically. For the system to operate, manoeuvring speed must be between 2.5 and 10 km/h (between 1.5 and 6 »

mph) for the front area and between 1.5 and 10 km/h (between 1 and 6 mph) for the rear.

Following an intervention, the braking while manoeuvring function will be inactive in the same direction of travel for 5 metres. Once the gear is changed, or the selector lever's position is changed, the function will be active again. The Parking Aid's limitations apply.

The braking while manoeuvring function is controlled in the Easy Connect system with the CAR button and the **SETTINGS > Park and manoeuvre** function buttons.

- ☑ **on** – permits the use of the braking while manoeuvring function.
- ☐ **off** – does not permit the use of the braking while manoeuvring function.

Temporary suppression of emergency braking

- When the function is deactivated with the Braking while manoeuvring button that appears on the **Parking System** screen of the Easy Connect system.
- Whenever any of the car doors, rear lid or bonnet are opened.

Rear parking aid*

Description

The **rear parking aid** is an audible and visual assistant that warns of obstacles located *behind* the vehicle.

There are sensors integrated in the rear bumper. When they detect an obstacle, you are alerted by audible warnings and visually on the Easy Connect system.

Make particularly sure that the sensors are not covered by adhesives, residues, dirt and the like, as this could affect the system's operation. Cleaning instructions **››› page 337**.

The approximate measurement range of the rear sensors is:

Side area: 0.60 m

Central area: 1.60 m

Automatic disconnection of Parking Aid

- Move the selector lever to position **P**.
- **OR**: accelerate to approx. 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.

Temporary suppression of sound in Parking Aid

- Press the function button.

Change from reduced view to full view

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: press the car icon in reduced view.

As you approach the obstacle, the time interval between the audible warnings will be reduced. When you reach around 0.30 m the warning will be constant: Do not continue to move forward (or backward) **››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 284**, **››› ❗ in Introduction on page 285** !

If you maintain separation from the obstacle, the volume of the warning begins to reduce after four seconds (does not affect the tone of the constant warning).

Parking Aid operation

Parking Aid connection

- Engage reverse (for manual gears) or set the selector lever to **R** (for automatic gears).

Parking Aid disconnection

- Place the selector level in position **P**, **N** or **D** (for automatic gearboxes) or disengage reverse (for manual gearboxes).

Set the lever to the **N** or **D** position to maintain the system active for approximately 8 seconds before switching off. During that time, Parking assist will switch off if:

- The selector lever is moved to position **P**.
- **OR**: the vehicle accelerates to approx. 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.

Manual disconnection of Parking Aid display (the audible sounds remain active)

- Press a button on the main menu of the factory-assembled infotainment system.
- **OR** press the BACK function button.

Temporary suppression of sound in Parking Aid

- Press the function button.

Switch from reduced to full-screen view if the rear assist is fitted (Rear View Camera "RVC")

- Press the car icon in the reduced view.

If necessary, switch to the rear-assist image (Rear View Camera "RVC")

- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: press the **RVC** function button.

Segments of the visual indication

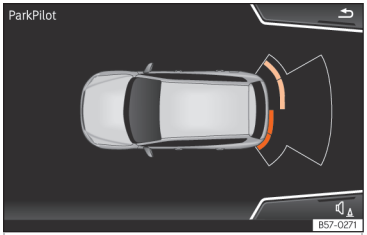


Fig. 259 Parking Aid display on the Easy Connect system screen.

The distance to the obstacles can be estimated with the help of the segments at the rear of the vehicle.

The optical indication of the segments works as follows:

White segments: they are displayed when the obstacle 30 cm away from the vehicle or further if the direction of travel is in the opposite direction to its location, and also when the electronic parking brake is activated.

Yellow segments: obstacles located in the vehicle's trajectory and which are more than 30 cm away from the vehicle are displayed in yellow.

Red segments: obstacles that are less than 30 cm away from the vehicle are displayed in red.

Whenever the obstacle is located in the vehicle's direction of travel, the corresponding audible warning will sound.

As the vehicle approaches an obstacle, the segments are displayed closer to the vehicle. When the penultimate segment is displayed, this means that the vehicle has reached the collision zone. In the collision zone, the obstacles are represented in red (including those out of the path). Do not continue to reverse ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 284, ››› ❗ in Introduction on page 285!

Adjusting the display and audible warnings

The settings for the display and audible warnings are controlled via the Easy Connect*.

Rear volume*

Volume in the rear area.

Rear sound settings/sharpness*

Frequency (tone) of the sound in the rear area. »

Adjust volume

With the parking aid switched on, the active audio/video source volume will be reduced to the intensity of the selected setting.

Error messages

When the Parking Aid is activated or when it is switched on, if a message reporting a Parking aid error is displayed on the instrument panel, there is a fault in the system.

If the fault disappears before disconnecting the ignition, the next time that the parking aid is engaged in reverse, no audible signal of the existence of a fault will be issued.

If there is a fault in a sensor, the ⚠ symbol is displayed on the Easy Connect display.

Have the fault corrected by a specialised workshop without delay.

Towing bracket

In vehicles equipped with a towing bracket device from the factory, when the trailer is connected electrically, the Parking Aid will not be activated when reverse gear is engaged (manual gears) nor when the selector lever is turned to position **R** (automatic gears).

Rear Assist "Rear View Camera"*

Operating and safety warnings

Fig. 260 Related video

⚠ WARNING

- **The Rear Assist does not make it possible to precisely calculate the distance from obstacles (people, vehicles, etc.) and nor can it overcome the system's own limits, hence using it may cause serious accidents and injuries if used negligently or without due care. The driver should be aware of his/her surroundings at all times to ensure safe driving.**
- **The camera lens expands and distorts the field of vision and displays the objects on the screen in a different, vague manner. The perception of distances is also distorted by this effect.**
- **Due to the screen resolution or insufficient light conditions, some items may be displayed in an unsatisfactory manner or not at all. Take special care with thin posts, fences, railings or trees that might not be displayed on screen and could damage the vehicle.**
- **The rear assist has blind spots where it is not possible to represent people or objects (small children, animals and certain objects cannot be detected in its field of vision). Monitor the vehicle's surrounding area at all times.**
- **Keep the camera lens clean, free of ice and snow, and do not cover it.**
- **The system is not a replacement for driver awareness. Supervise the parking operation at all times, as well as the vehicle's surrounding area. Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Do not be distracted from the traffic by looking at the screen.**
- **The images on the rear assist screen are only two-dimensional. Due to a lack of spatial depth, protruding parts or holes in the road, for example, are more difficult to detect or may not be seen at all.**
- **Vehicle load modifies the representation of the orientation lines displayed. The width represented by the lines diminishes with vehicle load. Pay special attention to the vehicle's surroundings when the inside of the vehicle of the luggage compartment is carrying a heavy load.**
- **In the following situations, the objects or other vehicles shown in the navigation system display appear to be further away or**

closer than they really are: Pay special attention:

- On moving from a horizontal plane to a slope.
- On moving from a slope to a horizontal plane.
- If the vehicle is heavily loaded at the rear.
- When the vehicle approaches objects that are not on the ground surface or are jutting out from it. These objects may also be outside the camera's angle of vision when reversing.

Note

- It is important to take great care and pay special attention if you are not yet familiar with the system.
- Rear assist will not be available if the vehicle's rear lid is open.

Instructions for use

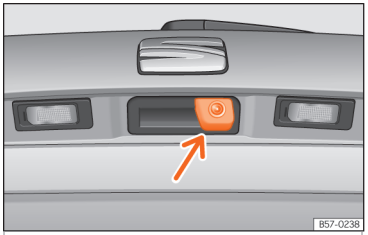


Fig. 261 On the rear lid handle: location of the rear assist camera.

A camera on the rear bumper aids the driver during reverse parking or manoeuvring ››› **Fig. 261**. The camera image is viewed together with orientation lines projected by the system on the Infotainment system screen. The bottom of the screen displays part of the bumper, which can be used by the driver as a reference point.

Rear assist settings

Rear assist offers the user the possibility to change the image's *brightness*, *contrast* and *colour* settings.

To change these settings:

- Park the vehicle in a safe place.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the ignition on.
- If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.
- Engage reverse gear or turn the selector lever to position **R**.
- Press the function button displayed on the right of the image.
- Make the desired adjustments on the menu by pressing the –/+ function buttons or by moving the corresponding scroll button.

Necessary conditions for parking and manoeuvring with the rear assist

The system should not be used in the following cases:

- If the image displayed is not very reliable or is distorted, for example low visibility or dirty lens.
- If the area behind the vehicle is not displayed very clearly or is incomplete.
- If the vehicle is heavily loaded at the rear.
- If the position and installation angle of the camera have been changed, e.g. after a rear-end collision. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.

Familiarising yourself with the system

To familiarise yourself with the system, the orientation lines and their function, SEAT recommends practising parking and manoeuvring with the rear assist in a place without »

too much traffic or in a car park when there are good weather and visibility conditions.

Cleaning the camera lens

Keep the camera lens clean and clear of snow and ice:

- Moisten the lens using a normal alcohol-based glass cleaning product and clean the lens with a dry cloth.
- Remove snow using a small brush.
- Use de-icing spray to remove any ice.

CAUTION

- **Never use abrasive cleaning products to clean the camera lens.**
- **Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lens. Doing so could damage the camera.**

Parking and manoeuvring with the rear assist

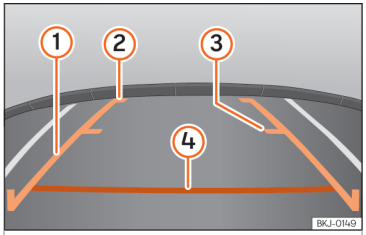


Fig. 262 Display on the Infotainment system screen: guidance lines.

Switching the system on and off

- The rear assist will switch on when the ignition is on or the engine running, on engaging reverse gear (manual gearbox) or on changing the selector lever to the **R** position (automatic gearbox).
- The system switches off 8 seconds after disengaging reverse gear (manual gearbox) or removing the selector lever from the **R** position (automatic gearbox). The system will also disconnect immediately after the ignition is switched off.
- The camera will stop transmitting images above the speed of 15 km/h (9 mph) with reverse engaged.

In combination with the Parking System Plus **››› page 286**, the camera image will cease to be transmitted immediately when reverse gear is disengaged or when the selector lever is moved from the **R** position, and the optical information provided by the Parking Aid system will be displayed.

Also in combination with the system, the rear assist image can also be concealed:

- By pressing one of the Infotainment system buttons on the display.
- **OR**: By pressing the miniature vehicle that appears on the left of the screen (which switches to the full-screen mode of the Parking System Plus's optical system).

If you wish to display the rear assist image again:

- Disengage reverse, or change the selector lever's position, engage reverse again or move the selector lever to position **R**.
- **OR**: Press the **RVC** function button[1)]

[1)] WARNING: the **RVC** (Rear View Camera) function button will only be activated and available when the reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is set to position **R**.

Meaning of the orientation lines

››› Fig. 262

① **Side lines:** extension of the vehicle (the approximate width of the vehicle plus the rear view mirrors) on the road surface.

② **End of the side lines:** the area marked in green ends approximately 2 m behind the vehicle on the road surface.

③ **Mid line:** indicates a distance of approximately 1 m behind the vehicle on the road surface.

④ **Horizontal red line:** indicates a safe distance of approximately 40 cm at the rear of the vehicle on the road surface.

Parking manoeuvre

- Place the vehicle in front of the parking space and engage reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector to the **R** position (automatic gearbox).
- Reverse slowly, and turn the steering wheel so that the side orientation lines lead towards the parking space.
- Guide the vehicle into the parking space so that the side orientation lines run parallel to it.

Towing bracket device

Towing bracket device*

Introduction

The towing bracket device fitted to your vehicle, be it factory-fitted or a genuine SEAT accessory, meets all the national technical and legal requirements for towing.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin connector for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle. If the trailer is equipped with a **7-pin connector** you can use the corresponding adaptor, which is available as a genuine SEAT accessory.

The maximum authorised towing load is **55 kg**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Before each journey, make sure that the detachable ball joint is properly fitted and secured in its housing.**
- **If the detachable ball joint is not properly fitted and secured, do not use it.**
- **Do not use the towing bracket device for towing if it is damaged or has missing parts.**
- **Do not modify or adapt the towing device connection.**
- **Never unhook the detachable ball joint when the trailer is hitched.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Handle the detachable ball joint with care in order to avoid damaging the bumper paintwork.

Note

Towing the vehicle with the detachable ball joint ››› page 89.

Description

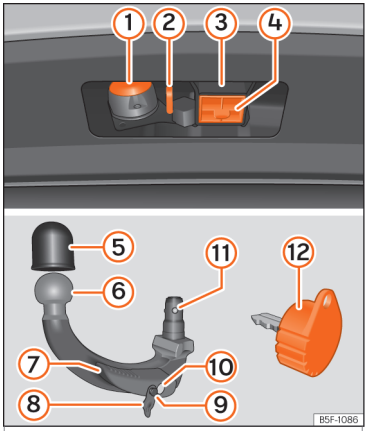


Fig. 263 Towing bracket device support / detachable ball joint / key.

Depending on the country or version, the towing bracket device's detachable ball joint is located:

- underneath the floor panel of the luggage compartment.

The ball joint is fitted and removed by hand.

The towing device bracket is supplied with a key.

Key to ››› **Fig. 263**

1. 13-pin connector
2. Safety lug
3. Hook housing
4. Hook housing cap
5. Ball protective cover
6. Detachable ball
7. Locking lever
8. Lock cover
9. Release bolt
10. Lock
11. Locking balls
12. Key

Note

Contact an Authorised Service Partner if you lose your key.

Placing in standby position

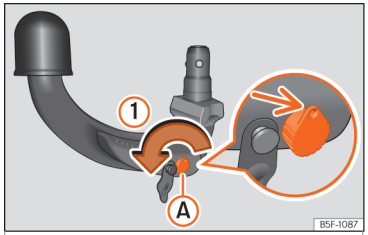


Fig. 264 Step 1.

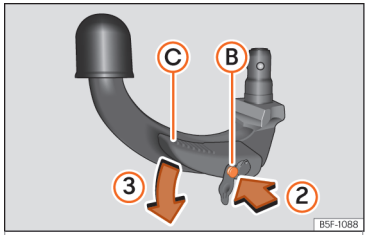


Fig. 265 Step 2.

Before assembling it, place the detachable ball in the standby position with the following two steps.

Step 1.

• Turn the key in the direction of arrow (1) until the part of the key with the holes reaches the top position ››› Fig. 264 (arrow).

Step 2.

• Grip the detachable ball below the protective cover.

• Press the release bolt (B) in the direction of arrow (2), and at the same time press lever (C) in the direction of arrow (3) as far as it will go ››› Fig. 265.

The lever will remain blocked in this position.

Standby position

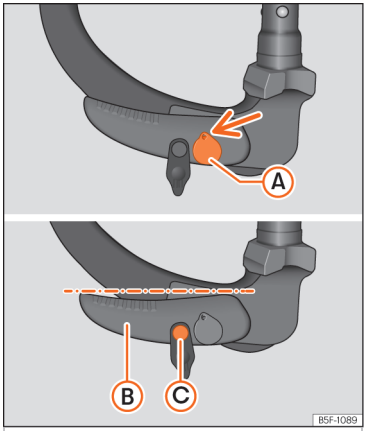


Fig. 266 Reserve position: position of the lever and the release bolt.

Standby position adjusted properly

• Key (A) ››› Fig. 266 is in the released position (the part of the key with the holes is facing upwards).

• Lever (B) ››› Fig. 266 is in the bottom position.

• The release bolt (C) ››› Fig. 266 can be moved.

Thus adjusted, the detachable ball is ready for installation.

CAUTION

The key cannot be removed or turned in the standby position.

Assembling the detachable ball - Step 1

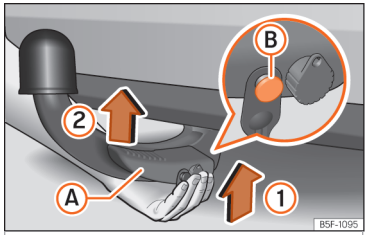


Fig. 267 Fitting the detachable ball / Release bolt in the deployed position.

Fitting the detachable ball

• Remove the hook housing cap (4) ››› Fig. 263 downwards.

• Set the detachable ball to its standby position ››› page 296.

• Grip the detachable ball **from below** ››› Fig. 267 and insert it into the hook housing »

following the direction of arrow (1) until it engages audibly ››› ⚠.

Lever (A) turns **automatically** in the direction of arrow (2) upwards, and the release bolt (B) moves outwards (the red and green part will be visible) ››› ⚠.

If lever (A) does not turn automatically or the release bolt (B) does not come out, the detachable ball should be removed by turning the lever as far as possible downwards from the housing cavity, and the detachable ball's support surfaces and the cavity should then be cleaned.

⚠ WARNING

- **When attaching the detachable ball, keep your hands well away from the reach of the lever's rotation to avoid getting your fingers caught.**
- **Never try to pull the lever upwards by force to turn the key. The detachable ball would not be secured properly!**

Assembling the detachable ball - Step 2

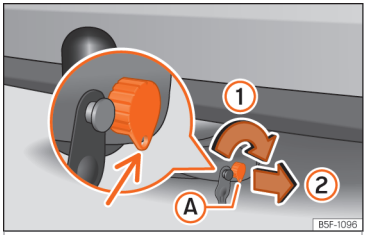


Fig. 268 Locking the lock.

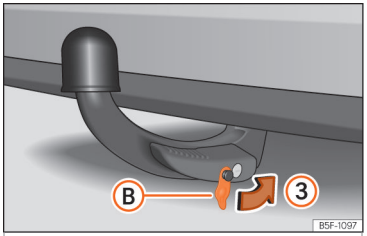


Fig. 269 Placing the cover over the lock.

Do not omit this first step ››› **page 297, Assembling the detachable ball - Step 1**!

- Turn key (A) in the direction of arrow (1) until the part of the key with the holes reaches the bottom position ››› **Fig. 268**.
- Remove the key in the direction of arrow (2).
- Place cover (B) in the lock in the direction of arrow (3) ››› **Fig. 269** ››› ❗.
- Check that the detachable ball is securely attached ››› **page 299, Checking proper attachment**.

⚠ CAUTION

- **After removing the key, always place the cover over the lever's lock. If the lock becomes soiled it will be impossible to insert the key.**
- **Keep the towing bracket device's housing cavity clean at all times. Dirtiness can prevent the detachable ball from being properly secured!**
- **If the detachable ball is removed, always place the cap on the hook's housing.**

Checking proper attachment

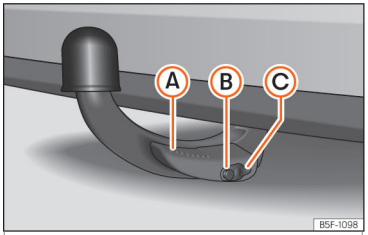


Fig. 270 Detachable ball properly attached.

Whenever you go to use the detachable ball, make sure that it is properly attached first.

Detachable ball properly attached.

- The detachable ball will not fall out of the housing cavity after a major “knock or jerk”.
- Lever Ⓐ ››› Fig. 270 is fully raised.
- The release bolt Ⓑ ››› Fig. 270 is sticking fully out (the red and green part is visible).
- The key has been removed.
- Cover Ⓒ ››› Fig. 270 is placed over the lock.

⚠ WARNING

• When removing the detachable ball, keep your hands well away from the reach of the lever's rotation to avoid getting your fingers caught.

• The towing bracket device should only be used if the detachable ball has been properly locked!

Removing the detachable ball - Step 1

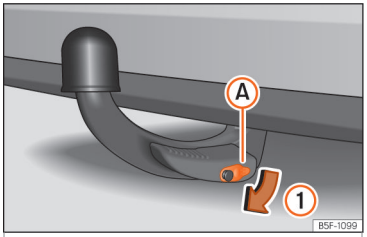


Fig. 271 Removing the lock cover.

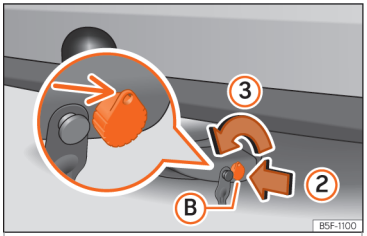


Fig. 272 Releasing the lock.

- Remove cover Ⓐ from the lock in the direction of arrow ① ››› Fig. 271.
- Insert key Ⓑ into the lock in the direction of arrow ② ››› Fig. 272.
- Turn the key in the direction of arrow ③ until the part of the key with the holes is facing upwards.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the detachable ball joint when the trailer is hitched.

Note

Before you remove the detachable ball, you are advised to place the protective cover on the ball coupling.

Removing the detachable ball - Step 2

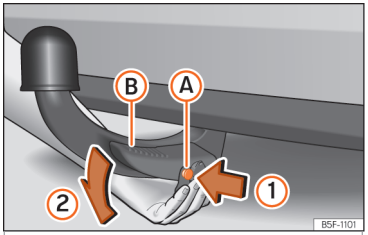


Fig. 273 Releasing the detachable ball.

Do not omit this first step ››› page 299, Removing the detachable ball - Step 1!

Releasing the detachable ball

- Grip the detachable ball from below.
- Press the release bolt (A) in the direction of arrow (1) as far as it will go, and at the same time press lever (B) in the direction of arrow (2) as far as it will go.

In this position, the detachable ball is loose and will fall/drop freely downwards. If this does not occur when you release it, press it with the other hand from above.

The detachable ball locks into the standby position at the same time and is therefore ready to be reinserted into the hook housing ››› ❗.

- Fit the cap (4) ››› Fig. 263 onto its housing.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave the detachable ball loose in the luggage compartment. It could cause damage in the luggage compartment in the case of abrupt braking, and even jeopardise passenger safety!

ⓘ CAUTION

- **If you hold the lever and do not press down on it as far as you can, after you remove the detachable ball, the latter will continue upwards and will not lock into the standby position. The detachable ball should be placed in this position before the next assembly.**
- **Keep the detachable ball in the standby position, with the key inserted into the box while you place it facing downwards with the side opposite to the one where the key is inserted. The key could get damaged!**
- **When operating the lever, do not apply too much pressure (for example, do not stand on it)!**

ⓘ Note

Remove any dirt from the detachable ball before you put it away with the vehicle tools.

Operation and care

Put the cover on the housing cavity so that dirt cannot get in.

Before hooking up a trailer, always check the ball coupling and apply suitable grease if necessary.

Use the protective cover when putting the detachable ball away to keep the luggage compartment clean.

Remove any dirt from the housing cavity surfaces and use a suitable cleaning product.

ⓘ CAUTION

The top part of the hook housing is greased. Make sure that the grease has not been removed.

Trailer towing

What do you need to bear in mind when towing a trailer?

Your vehicle may be used to tow a trailer when fitted with the correct equipment.

If you wish to **retrofit** a towing bracket, consult ››› page 305.

Connectors

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin connector for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle.

If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use an adapter cable. It is available at any Technical Service.

Trailer weight/drawbar load

Never exceed the authorised trailer weight. If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper slopes.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the vehicle climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density. The maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the vehicle and trailer combination must be reduced by 10% for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). The gross combination weight is the actual weight of the laden vehicle plus the actual weight of the laden trailer. When possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted **drawbar load** on the ball joint of the towing bracket, but do not exceed the specified limit.

The figures for **trailer weights** and **drawbar loads** that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct towing bracket figures for your specific model, which may be *lower than these figures*, are given in the vehicle documentation or on **››› page 346, Technical specifications**.

Distributing the load

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Loads carried in the trailer must be secured to prevent them moving.

Tyre pressure

The maximum permissible tyre pressure values are shown on the sticker on the rear part of the left front door frame. Set the tyre pressure of the trailer tyres in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's recommendations.

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard rear vision mirrors. If this is not the case, you should have additional exterior mirrors fitted. Both exterior mirrors should be mounted on hinged extension brackets. Adjust the mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

Tow rope

Always use a cable between the vehicle and the trailer **››› page 301**.

Trailer rear lights

The trailer's rear lights should comply with the statutory safety regulations **››› page 301**.

⚠ WARNING

Never transport people in a trailer. This could result in fatal accidents.

Note

- **Towing a trailer places additional demands on the vehicle. We recommend additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.**
- **Find out whether special regulations apply to towing a trailer in your country.**

Hitching and connecting the trailer

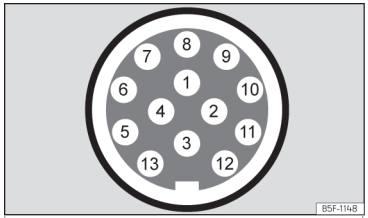


Fig. 274 Diagram: assignment of the pins of the trailer's electrical socket. »

Key of the Schematic diagram ››› Fig. 274:	
Pin	**Meaning**
1	Left turn signal
2	Rear fog light
3	Earth, pins 1, 2, 4 to 8
4	Right turn signal
5	Rear light, right
6	Brake lights
7	Rear light, left
8	Reverse lights
9	Permanent live
10	Cable without positive charge
11	Earth, pin 10
12	Unassigned
13	Earth, pin 9

Electrical socket for trailer

The vehicle is fitted with a 13-pole power socket for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle. If the system detects that a trailer has been connected electrically, the electrical equipment on the trailer will receive voltage through this connection.

Pin 9 has a permanent live. This powers, for example, the trailer's interior lighting. Pin 10 is only powered when the engine is running. The charge wire (pin 10) charges, for example, a caravan battery.

Pin 9 and 10 should not be connected to each other to avoid discharging or damaging the vehicle's battery.

The earth wires, pin 3, pin 11 and pin 13, should never be connected to each other to avoid overloading the electrical system.

If the trailer has a **7-contact connector**, you will need to use an adapter cable. In this case the function corresponding to pin 10 will not be available.

Trailer maximum electricity consumption

Brake lights (total)	84 Watts
Turn signal, on each side	42 Watts
Side lights (total)	100 Watts
Rear lights (total)	42 Watts
Rear fog light	42 Watts
Never exceed the values indicated!	

Note

- **If the rear lights of the trailer are not correctly connected, the vehicle electronics may be damaged.**
- **If the trailer absorbs excessive electric current, the vehicle electronics may be damaged.**
- **Never connect the trailer's electric system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or any other power sources. Only use the connections intended for providing electric current to the trailer.**

Ball coupling of towing bracket device*

The ball coupling is provided with instructions on fitting and removing the ball coupling of the towing bracket.

WARNING

The towing bracket ball coupling must be stored securely in the luggage compartment to prevent them being flung through the vehicle and causing injury.

Note

- **By law, the ball coupling must be removed if a trailer is not being towed if it obscures the number plate.**

Driving with a trailer

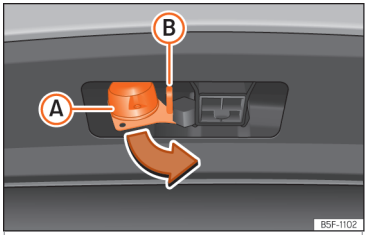


Fig. 275 Turn the 13-pin connector.

Before driving

- Grip the 13-pin connector at area (A) and remove it in the direction of the arrow ››› Fig. 275.
- Remove the protective cover (5) ››› Fig. 263 upwards.

After driving

- Grip the 13-pin connector at area (A) and insert it in the opposite direction to the arrow ››› Fig. 275.
- Fit the protective cover (5) ››› Fig. 263 on the ball coupling.

Safety lug

The safety lug (B) ››› Fig. 275 is used to hook up the trailer's retainer cable.

On hooking it up to the safety lug, the retainer cable should **have slack** in all the trailer positions with respect to the vehicle (sharp bends, reverse gear, etc.).

Headlights

The front part of the vehicle may be raised when the trailer is connected and the light may dazzle the rest of the traffic.

Adapt the height of the headlights using the headlight range adjuster ››› page 143[1].

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use the safety lug to tow!**
- **Adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions.**
- **All work on the electrical system must be carried out only by specialised workshops.**
- **Never connect the trailer's electric system to the electrical connections of the rear lights or any other power sources.**
- **After hooking up the trailer and connecting the socket, check that all the trailer's rear lights are working properly.**

Note

- **If there is any fault in the trailer's lighting, check the fuses in the instrument panel fuse box ››› page 50.**
- **The contact between the retainer cable and the safety lug may give rise to mechanical wear in the lug's surface protection. This wear will not prevent the safety lug from operating properly or cause any fault and is excluded from the warranty.**
- **When connecting and disconnecting the trailer, the towing vehicle's handbrake should be applied.**

Anti-theft alarm

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is triggered when the electrical connection between vehicle and trailer is interrupted.

Always turn off the anti-theft alarm system before connecting or disconnecting a trailer ››› page 133.

Conditions for the integration of a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- The vehicle is factory-equipped with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing bracket device. »

[1] This does not apply for vehicles with Full LED xenon headlights.

- The trailer is connected electrically to the towing vehicle by the trailer connector.
- The electrical system of the vehicle and the trailer are prepared for operation.
- The vehicle is locked with the ignition key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, trailers fitted with rear LED lights are not integrated in the anti-theft alarm system.

Driving tips

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care.

Weight distribution

The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle is very unfavourable. However, if this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.

Speed

The stability of the vehicle and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason, it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible speed in an unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially when driving downhill.

You should always reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of **snaking**. Never try to stop the "snaking" by increasing speed.

Always brake in due course. If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then, firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by locking of trailer wheels. Select a low gear in due course before going down a steep downhill. This enables you to use the engine braking to slow down the vehicle.

Reheating

At very high temperatures and during prolonged slopes, driving in a low gear and high engine speed, always monitor the coolant temperature gauge ››› page 114.

Stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer

The stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer together is an additional function of the electronic stability control (ESC).

If the system detects that the trailer is swaying, it intervenes automatically with the driver steering recommendation to reduce the swaying of the trailer.

Requirements for the stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer

- The vehicle is factory-equipped with a towing bracket or has been retro-fitted with a compatible towing bracket.
- The ESC and ASR are active. The control lamp or is not lit up on the instrument cluster.
- The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle through the trailer power socket.
- The vehicle is travelling at over 60 km/h (approx. 37 mph).
- The maximum vertical load technically permissible is being utilised on the coupling device.
- The trailer has a rigid draw bar.
- If the trailer has brakes, it must be equipped with a mechanical overrun brake.

WARNING

The enhanced security provided by the electric stability control of the towing vehicle and trailer should not lead you to take any risks that could compromise your safety.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Accelerate with caution when the road is slippery.**

- When adjusting any settings, stop accelerating.

⚠ WARNING

The electric stability control for the towing vehicle and trailer may not correctly detect all driving conditions.

- **When the ESC is switched off, the stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer is also switched off.**
- **The stability system does not always detect light and unstable trailers, so it may not stabilise these correctly.**
- **When driving on slippery surfaces with poor grip, the trailer can even *interfere* with the stability system.**
- **Trailers with a high centre of gravity can tip even without having previously swayed.**
- **If a trailer is not attached, but the trailer power socket is connected (e.g. installation of a bicycle rack with lights), repeated automatic braking may occur in extreme driving conditions.**

Retrofitting a towing bracket*

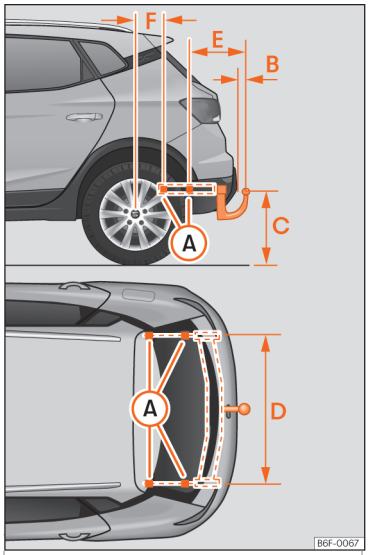


Fig. 276 Attachment points for towing bracket.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the vehicle is purchased, this must be completed according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

The attachment points for the towing bracket Ⓐ are on the lower part of the vehicle.

The distance between the centre of the ball coupling and the ground should never be lower than the indicated value, even with a fully loaded vehicle and including the maximum drawbar load.

Elevation values for securing the towing bracket:

Ⓑ	65 mm (minimum)
Ⓒ	350 mm to 420 mm (fully laden vehicle)
Ⓓ	1,033 mm
Ⓔ	322 mm
Ⓕ	338 mm

Fitting a towing bracket

- Driving with a trailer involves an extra effort for the vehicle. Therefore, before fitting a towing bracket, please contact a Technical Service to check whether your cooling system needs modification.
- The legal requirements in your country must be observed (e.g. the fitting of a separate control lamp).
- Certain vehicle components, e.g. the rear bumper, must be removed and reinstalled. The towing bracket securing bolts must be »

tightened using a torque wrench, and a power socket must be connected to the vehicle electrical system. This requires specialised knowledge and tools.

- Figures in the illustration show the elevation value and the attachment points which must be considered if you are retrofitting a towing bracket.

⚠ WARNING

The towing brackets should be fitted at a specialised workshop.

- **If the towing bracket is incorrectly installed, there is a serious danger of accident.**
- **For your own safety, please observe the tow bracket manufacturer's instructions.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **If the power socket is incorrectly installed, this could cause damage to the vehicle electrical system.**

Note

- **SEAT recommends that the towing hooks be fitted at a specialised workshop. Consult your SEAT dealer in case additional modifications to your vehicle are necessary.**
- **Due to the specific design of the exhaust, the fitting of a conventional towing hook is not recommended for some sportier versions. Please consult your Technical Service.**

Practical tips

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Accessories, replacement of parts and modifications

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety.

Before purchasing accessories and parts, and before making technical changes to your vehicle, we recommend that you consult your Technical Service.

SEAT dealerships will be happy to provide you with the latest information about the use, legal requirements and recommendations from the manufacturer regarding accessories and spare parts.

We recommend you use only **SEAT Approved Accessories®** and **SEAT Approved Spare Parts®**. This way, SEAT can guarantee that the product in question is suitable, reliable and safe. SEAT Technical Services have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that parts are correctly and professionally installed.

Despite a continuous observation of the market, SEAT is not able to assess the reliability, safety and suitability of parts that **SEAT has not approved**. For this reason, SEAT cannot assume responsibility for any non-genuine parts used, even if these parts have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct impact on the driver's control of the vehicle, such as a cruise control system or electronically-controlled suspension, must be approved by SEAT for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorisation symbol).

If **any additional electrical devices** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself, such as refrigerator boxes, laptops or ventilator fans, they must bear the **CE** mark (European Union manufacturer conformity declaration).

⚠ WARNING

Accessories, for example telephone holders or cup holders, should never be fitted on the covers, or within the working range, of the airbags. Otherwise, there is a danger of injury if the airbag is triggered in an accident.

Technical modifications

Modifications must always be carried out according to our specifications. Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other indirect systems may be affected by the faults. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate your vehicle registration documents.

SEAT Technical Services cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work incorrectly performed. For this reason, we recommend having all work performed by a SEAT Technical Service using **SEAT®** Original Spare Parts.

⚠ WARNING

Any type of work or modification performed incorrectly on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and can cause accidents.

Radio transmitters and office equipment

Radio transmitters (fixed installation)

Any retrofit installations of radio transmitters in the vehicle require prior approval. SEAT »

generally authorises in-vehicle installations of approved types of radio transmitters provided that:

- The aerial is installed correctly.
- The aerial is installed on the exterior of the vehicle (and shielded cables are used together with non-reflective aerial trimming).
- The effective transmitting power does not exceed 10 Watts at the aerial base.

A SEAT Official Service and specialised workshop will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters with a *higher* transmitting power.

Mobile radio transmitters

Commercial mobile telephones or radio equipment might interfere with the electronics of your vehicle and cause malfunctions. This may be due to:

- No external aerial.
- External aerial incorrectly installed.
- Transmitting power more than 10 W.

You must, therefore, do not operate portable mobile telephones or radio equipment *inside the vehicle* without a properly installed external aerial ››› ⚠.

Please note also that the maximum range of the equipment can only be achieved with an *external* aerial.

Business equipment

Retrofit installation of business or private equipment in the vehicle is permitted, provided the equipment cannot interfere with the driver's immediate control of the vehicle and that any such equipment carries the CE mark. Any retrofit equipment that could influence the driver's control of the vehicle must have a type approval for your vehicle and must carry the **e** mark.

⚠ WARNING

Mobile telephones or radio equipment which is operated inside the vehicle without a properly installed external aerial can create excessive magnetic fields that could cause a health hazard.

Note

- **The posterior fitting of electric and electronic equipment in this vehicle affects its licence and could lead to the withdrawal of the vehicle registration document under certain circumstances.**
- **Please use the mobile telephone/radio operating instructions.**

Checking and refilling levels

Refuelling

Refuelling

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 46

If the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly, it will switch itself off as soon as the tank is “full”. Never attempt to fill beyond this point, as this will fill the expansion chamber. Fuel may leak out if ambient conditions are warm.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

Vehicles with natural gas engines and hybrids

Every 6 months it is necessary to run on petrol until the control lamp switches off and then the tank must be refilled. This is necessary to ensure that the system works properly, as well as the fuel quality required for driving with petrol.

⚠ WARNING

- Fuel is highly flammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
  - Never smoke or come into contact with sparks when filling the fuel tank of the vehicle or a spare fuel canister with fuel. This is an explosion hazard.
  - Follow legal requirements for the use of spare fuel canisters.
  - For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. The canister could be damaged in an accident and leak.
- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following:
  - Never fill the spare fuel canister inside the vehicle or on it. An electrostatic charge could build up during filling, causing the fuel fumes to ignite. This could cause an explosion. Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.
  - Insert the fuel nozzle into the mouth of the canister as far as possible.
  - If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filling nozzle must be in contact with the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.
  - Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapours are explosive. Danger of death.

⚠ CAUTION

- Fuel spills should be removed from the paintwork immediately.
- Never run the tank completely dry. Irregular fuel supply can cause misfiring. As a result, unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and cause damage.
- When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry on a vehicle with a diesel engine the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds before starting the engine. Subsequently, when you start the engine it may take longer than normal to start firing (up to one minute). This is due to the fact that the fuel system has to purge itself of air before starting.

For the sake of the environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off, this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.

Note

There is no emergency mechanism for the manual release of the fuel tank flap. If necessary, request assistance from specialised personnel.

Refuelling with natural gas

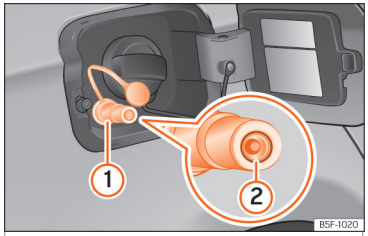


Fig. 277 Open tank lid: gas filler mouth (1), filler mouth retainer (2)

Before refuelling, the engine and the ignition, mobile telephone and heating must be switched off separately ››› ⚠.

Read the instructions on how to use the natural gas pump carefully.

The vehicle is not prepared for refuelling with liquefied natural gas (LNG) ››› ⚠. Before refuelling with natural gas, make sure you add the appropriate type of fuel ››› page 312.

Opening the fuel tank cap

The natural gas filler mouth is behind the fuel tank cap, next to the petrol filler mouth.

- Unlock the vehicle with the key or with the central locking button situated on the driver door ››› page 129. »

- Press on the rear area of the flap and open it.

Refuelling

Special feature: If the ambient temperature is very high, the natural gas pump protection against overheating disconnects this automatically.

- Remove the plug from the gas filler mouth ››› Fig. 277 ①.
- Connect the pump filling nozzle to the gas filler mouth.
- The fuel tank will be *full* when the pump compressor automatically cuts the supply.
- If you wish to finish refuelling in advance, press the button on the pump to stop the flow.

Closing the fuel tank cap

- Check that the mouth retainer ② of the gas filler is not trapped with the filler. If necessary, place it in the filler mouth again.
- Insert the plug in the filler mouth.
- Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

⚠ WARNING

Natural gas is a highly explosive, easily flammable substance. Incorrect handling of the natural gas can cause accidents serious burns and other injuries.

- **Before refuelling with natural gas, engage the filling mouth correctly. If you can smell gas, stop refuelling immediately.**

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle is not prepared to use liquefied natural gas (LNG), and this fuel must not be added under any circumstances. Liquefied natural gas can cause the natural gas tank to explode, resulting in serious injury.

Note

- **The filling nozzles of natural gas pumps can differ in the way they are operated. If you do not know, ask a qualified employee at the petrol station to do the refuelling.**
- **Noises heard when refuelling are normal and do not indicate the presence of a fault in the system.**
- **The vehicle natural gas system is prepared both for refuelling with a small compressor (slow refuel) and a large compressor (fast refuel) in natural gas service stations.**

Fuel

Identification of the fuel[1]

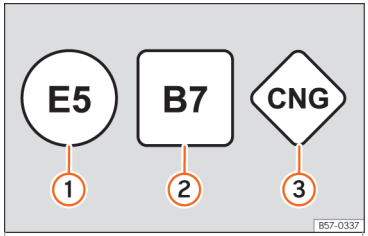


Fig. 278 Identification of fuels according to European Union (EU) Directive 2014/94/

Fuels are identified with different symbols. Depending on the fuel, the different symbols are on the pump and the tank lid of your vehicle. The identification serves to prevent confusion when choosing the fuel.

① **Petrol** with ethanol ("E" stands for **E**thanol). The number indicates the percentage of ethanol in the petrol. "E5" means, for example, an ethanol ratio of 5% max.

② **Diesel** with biodiesel ("B" stands for **B**iodiesel). The number indicates the percentage of biodiesel in the diesel. "B7"

[1] Depending on country

means, for example, a proportion of biodiesel of max. 7%.

③ **Natural gas**: "CNG" means **C**ompressed **N**atural **G**as.

Type of petrol

✓ Applies to vehicles: with petrol engine

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. The petrol must comply with the standard EN 228 and be **sulphur-free**. Fuels with a 10% ethanol ratio can be refuelled (E10)[1]. The types of petrol are differentiated by using the **octane numbers (RON)** or via the **anti-knock index (AKI)**.

The following pieces of text show the information included in the corresponding stickers on the tank lid (examples):

Super unleaded petrol 95 octane petrol or normal 91 octane petrol at least

We recommend refuelling with super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI). If not available: normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI) (with a slight power loss).

Super unleaded petrol, 95 octanes at least

You should use super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI) at least.

If super is not available, *if necessary*, use normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI). In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

Unleaded super plus 98 octane petrol or super 95 octane petrol at least

We recommend refuelling with super plus 98 octane petrol (93 AKI). If not available: super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI) (with a slight power loss).

If super is not available, *if necessary*, use normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI). In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

CAUTION

• Fuels high percentage of ethanol, e.g. E30 - E100 button must not be used. The fuel system would be damaged. Exception: vehicles with Totalflex engine **››› page 312, Ethanol fuel.**

• A single refuelling with leaded fuel or other metal additives entails a permanent deterioration of the effectiveness of the catalytic converter.

• Only use fuel additives that have been approved by SEAT. The products that contain substances to increase the octane rating or decrease knocking may contain metal additives that damage the engine and catalytic converter. This type of products must not be used.

• Do not use fuels shown in the pump as containing metals. LRP (*lead replacement petrol*) fuels contain high concentrations of metal additives. Risk of engine damage!

• High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

Note

• Fuel with an octane rating higher than the one required by the engine can be used.

• In countries in which there is no sulphur-free fuel, it is also allowed to use low sulphur content fuel.

[1] Follow the regulations of the country you are driving in.

Ethanol fuel

✓ Applies to vehicles: with Totalflex engine

You can recognise vehicles with Totalflex engines[1] by label on the fuel tank lid with with the marking “Petrol/ethanol”.

Vehicles with Totalflex engine can run with unleaded petrol (95 octane / 91 AKI) according to ANP No. 57 and with fuels with any high percentage of ethanol. The vehicle is refuelled in the same way as petrol refuelling.

Also consider that **››› page 311, Type of petrol**

Note

SEAT recommends filling the tank exclusively with petrol every 10,000 km to decrease impurities that using E100 ethanol fuel might have left in the engine.

Diesel

✓ Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine

Please note the information on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

We recommend you use **Diesel** according to standard EN 590.

The diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, thus affecting the start or operation of the engine. To ensure that you can continue to use your vehicle as usual, the diesel sold in gas stations is provided -depending on the station- with fluidity when cold. Ask the employee of the petrol station whether their diesel is suitable for use in winter and if it is suited for current and future temperatures.

CAUTION

- **Never use of FAME (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, other fuels or thinning agents as they can cause severely damage the fuel system and the engine.**
- **If the wrong fuel has been filled, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Risk of damaging the fuel system and the engine! Obtain technical assistance.**

Natural gas

✓ Applies to vehicles: with a natural gas engine

Natural gas can be compressed or in liquid form, addition to others.

Use of compressed natural gas (CNG)

Vehicles with a natural gas engine must only be working with **CNG** (**C**ompressed **N**atural **G**as **CNG**), or with a mixture of **biomethane** if it complies with Regulation EN 16723-2.

Do not use fuels such as liquefied natural gas (**L**iquefied **N**atural **G**as), liquified petroleum gas (LPG = **L**iquefied **P**etroleum **G**) or hythane (hydrogen mixed with methane) ››› ⚠.

Therefore, vehicles with a natural gas engine must only be refuelled using compressed natural gas (CNG).

Natural gas quality and consumption

Natural gas is divided into the groups H and L depending on its quality.

Gas type H has a superior heating power and inferior nitrogen and carbon dioxide content than type L. The higher the heating power of the natural gas, the lower the consumption will be.

However, the heating power and the proportion of nitrogen and carbon dioxide can fluctuate within the quality groups. Therefore, vehicle consumption can also vary when using a single type of gas only.

The engine management automatically adapts to the natural gas used according to its quality. Therefore, different quality gases can be mixed in the tank, without the need for comprehensive draining before applying a different quality gas.

[1] This motor is only available in some markets.

Updated information relating to natural gas quality is displayed on the instrument panel ››› page 108.

Natural gas and safety

If you can smell gas or suspect that there is a leak ››› ⚠:

- Stop the vehicle immediately.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the doors to appropriately ventilate the vehicle.
- Extinguish cigarettes immediately.
- Move away from the vehicle or switch off objects that may cause sparks or a fire.
- If you continue to smell gas, do not continue driving!
- Seek specialist assistance. Have the fault repaired.

Regular checks of the natural gas system

The natural gas tanks may be damaged or corroded by external factors. The walls of the gas tanks are weakened by deformations, damage or corrosion. As a result, the tanks could burst and result in serious injuries or even death. For this reason, the vehicle owner must have a specialised workshop check (visual check) **the gas system every 4 years at least**. The vehicle owner must have a specialised workshop replace the natural gas tanks before they reach the end of their service life. For further information about the service life of gas tanks, go to a SEAT dealer service or a specialised workshop

⚠ WARNING

Failure to act when you can smell gas in the vehicle or when refuelling can cause serious injuries.

- **Carry out the necessary operations.**
- **Leave the danger zone.**
- **If necessary, warn the emergency services.**

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle is not suitable for liquefied natural gas (LNG) or liquefied petrol gas (LPG), so LNG or LPG should not be used under any circumstances. Liquid gas can cause an explosion of the natural gas tanks and cause severe injuries!

⚠ WARNING

Damaged, corroded or rusted tanks can result in serious injury or even death.

- **Have the natural gas deposits checked at least every 4 years (visual check).**
- **Natural gas tanks have a limited service life. Have the natural gas tanks replaced when required. You can obtain further information about this at SEAT dealers or specialised workshops.**

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle underbody touches the ground or in the event of a rear collision, there could be damage to the natural gas tanks.

- **Check whether there is a smell of gas.**
- **If you notice a smell of gas, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop immediately and have the natural gas system checked.**

Note

Have the natural gas system checked regularly by a specialised workshop, according to the Maintenance Programme.

AdBlue®

Information on AdBlue®

Fig. 279 Related video

The consumption of AdBlue® depends on your personal driving style, the temperature of the system and on the outdoor temperature when the vehicle is used.

»

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures of -11°C (+13°F). The system has heating elements that guarantee its operation even at low temperatures.

The AdBlue® tank level capacity is approximately 10.4 litres.

The AdBlue® tank should never be empty. When the distance to empty drops below 2400 km, a warning to refill the AdBlue® tank will appear on the dash panel display **››› page 314**. If this information is ignored, later on it will not be possible to re-start the engine. If this warning does not appear, it is not necessary to refill the AdBlue® tank.

AdBlue® is a registered brand of the German Association of the Automotive Industry (VDA) and is also known as AUS32 or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

⚠ CAUTION

Filling the AdBlue® tank excessively can cause damage to the tank.

Refilling AdBlue®

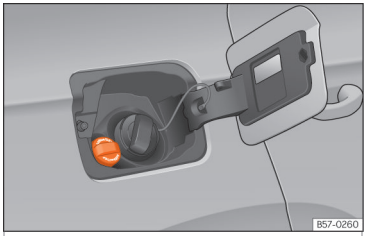


Fig. 280 AdBlue tank cap.

Operations prior to refilling

Park the vehicle on a flat surface. If the vehicle is not parked on a flat surface, but, for example, on a slope or on the side of a curb, the level indicator may not detect the load properly.

If a warning message about AdBlue® levels appears on the dash panel display, **fill at least the minimum amount required (approx. 5 litres)** Only after adding this amount will the system detect that AdBlue® has been added and you will be able to start the engine again. The maximum amount that can be refilled is 11 litres.

Switch the ignition off. If the ignition is not switched off during refilling, the warning to refill may continue to appear on the instrument panel display.

Fill with a refill bottle

Only use AdBlue® that complies with ISO 22241-1. Only use original containers.

- Open the tank cover **›››** **Fig. 280**.
- Unscrew the tank cap by turning it in an anti-clockwise direction.
- Please observe the manufacturer's instructions, indicated on the refill bottle.
- Check the expiry date.
- Remove the cap of the refill bottle.
- Insert the neck of the bottle in the tank filler neck vertically and screw the bottle on by hand, by turning it in a clockwise direction.
- Press the refill bottle in the direction of the filler neck and hold it in this position.
- Wait until the contents of the refill bottle have been poured into the AdBlue® tank. Do not compress or break the bottle!
- Turn the bottle in a counter-clockwise direction and gently pull it upwards **›››** ❗.
- The AdBlue® tank is full when no more liquid comes out of the bottle.
- Screw on the tank cap in a clockwise direction until it is tightly closed.
- Close the fuel tank flap.

Operations before driving

- After refilling the tank, **only** switch on the ignition.

- Leave the ignition on for at least 30 seconds for the system to detect the fluid load.
- Make sure you wait for at least 30 seconds before starting the engine!

Refilling the dispenser with AdBlue

Valid for vehicles with selective catalytic reduction.

- Open the tank cap.
- Turn the SCR tank cap anti-clockwise ››› Fig. 280.
- Add AdBlue until the nozzle stops for the first time.
- Close the SCR tube by turning it clockwise until you hear a click.

⚠ WARNING

AdBlue® should only be stored in the original container, which should be tightly closed and kept in a safe place.

- **Never keep AdBlue® in empty food containers, bottles or other similar containers. Other people may confuse it for other products.**
- **Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **When refilling, the nozzle grip should be aligned downward. Otherwise the nozzle will not connect automatically.**
- **Do not try to add any more additive after the nozzle has stopped for the first time. The AdBlue tank could overflow and AdBlue could spill out.**
- **Only use AdBlue® that complies with ISO 22241-1. Only use original containers.**
- **Never mix AdBlue® with water, fuel or additives. Any type of damage caused by such a mixture will not be covered by the warranty.**
- **Never pour AdBlue® into the fuel tank. This could result in engine damage.**
- **Do not carry the refill bottle inside the vehicle. If there is a leak (due to temperature changes or damage to the bottle), the AdBlue® may damage the vehicle.**

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the refill bottle in an environment-friendly manner.

Note

You can buy refill bottles that are adequate for AdBlue® use at SEAT dealerships.

Working in the engine compartment

Safety notes for work in the engine compartment

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 17

Before starting any work on the engine or in the engine compartment:

1. Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Apply the handbrake.
3. Move the gear lever to neutral or the selector lever to position **P**, depending on the case.
4. Wait for the engine to cool down.
5. Keep children away from the vehicle.
6. Raise the bonnet ››› page 17.

You should not do any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the jobs and have the correct tools! Have the work carried out by a specialised workshop if you are uncertain.

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. coolant, engine oil, spark plugs and batteries, are under constant development. SEAT provides a constant flow of information to Technical »

Services concerning modifications. For this reason, we recommend you have service fluids and consumables replaced by a Technical Service. Please observe the relevant instructions ››› page 307. The engine compartment of the vehicle is a hazardous area ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

All work on the engine or in the engine compartment, e.g. checking and refilling fluids, involves the danger of injury and burns, accidents and even fire.

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining burns. Wait until no more steam or coolant is emitted, then allow the engine to cool before carefully opening the bonnet.**
- **Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **Apply the handbrake and move the gear lever to neutral or selector lever to position P.**
- **Keep children away from the vehicle.**
- **Never touch hot engine parts. There is a risk of burns.**
- **Never spill liquids on a hot engine or on a hot exhaust gas system. This is a fire hazard.**
- **Avoid causing short-circuits in the electrical system, particularly at the points where the jump leads are attached ››› page 59. The battery could explode.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and could start automatically, even when the engine has been switched off and the key removed from the ignition!**
- **Never cover the engine with additional insulating materials such as a blanket. Risk of fire!**
- **Do not unscrew the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. If the coolant is hot, the cooling system will be pressurised!**
- **Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.**
- **Always make sure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths or tools, in the engine compartment.**
- **If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle, there is a risk of accident!. A hydraulic jack is insufficient for securing the vehicle and there is a risk of injury.**
- **If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. You should also observe the following:**
  - **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
  - **Ensure that jewellery, loose clothing and long hair do not get trapped in rotating engine parts. Danger of death. Before starting any work remove jewellery, tie back and cover hair, and wear tight-fitting clothes.**
  - **Never accelerate with a gear engaged without taking the necessary precautions. The vehicle could move, even if the handbrake is applied. Danger of death.**
- **If work has to be carried out on the fuel system or on electrical components, you must observe the following safety notes in addition to the above warnings:**
  - **Always disconnect the battery from the on-board network. The vehicle must be unlocked when this is done, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.**
  - **Do not smoke.**
  - **Never work near naked flames.**
  - **Always have a fire extinguisher on hand.**

⚠ WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly closed, it could suddenly open while driving leaving the driver without visibility. This could result in a serious accident.

- After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured by the locking mechanism in the lock carrier piece. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- While driving, if you notice that the bonnet is not correctly closed then stop immediately and close it correctly.

- Only open and close the bonnet when there is nobody within its range.

CAUTION

When topping up service fluids, make sure not to mistake them. Using the wrong fluids could cause serious malfunctions and engine damage!

For the sake of the environment

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. For this reason you should make regular checks on the ground underneath your vehicle. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected in a specialised workshop.

Checking levels

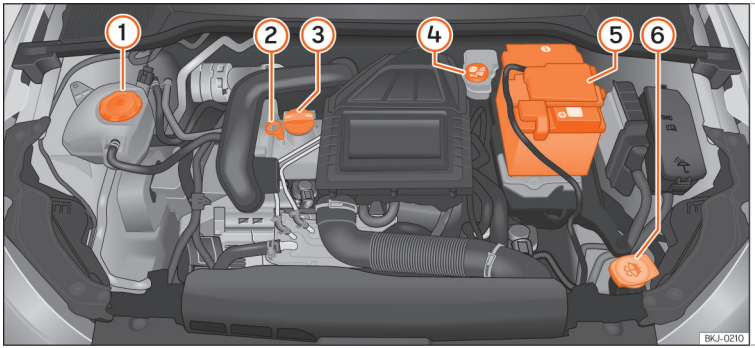


Fig. 281 Diagram for the location of the various elements.

From time to time, the levels of the different fluids in the vehicle must be checked. Never fill with incorrect fluids, otherwise serious damage to the engine may be caused.

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Engine oil level dipstick
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Vehicle battery
6. Windscreen washer reservoir

The checking and refilling of service fluids are carried out on the components mentioned »

above. These operations are described in ››› page 315.

Overview

You will find further explanations, instructions and restrictions on the technical specifications as of ››› page 346.

Note

The layout of parts may vary depending on the engine.

Engine oil

General notes

The engine comes with a special, multi-grade oil that can be used all year round.

Because the use of high-quality oil is essential for the correct operation of the engine and its long useful life, when topping up or changing oil, use only those oils that comply with VW standards.

We recommend that the oil change indicated in the Maintenance Programme, be performed by a technical service or specialised workshop.

If the engine oil level is too low

You can get information about the correct engine oil for your vehicle at your specialised shop. If you have to change your engine oil, use that oil.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, in the event of an emergency you can add oil once up to a maximum of 0.5 L of the next oil until the next oil change:

- *Valid for vehicles with petrol engines:* standard VW 504 00, VW 502 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C or API SN.

Vehicles with diesel particulate filter*

Only VW 507 00 engine oil, with reduced ash formation, may be used in diesel engines equipped with particulate filter. Using other types of oil will cause a higher soot concentration and reduce the life of the DPF. Therefore:

- Avoid mixing this oil with other engine oils.
- Only in exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ››› page 319 and you cannot obtain the oil specified for your vehicle, you can use a small quantity of oil (once) conforming to the specifications VW 506 00, VW 506 01, VW 505 00, VW 505 01 or ACEA B3/ACEA B4 (up to 0.5 l) ››› page 47.

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and recommend keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed.

Warning lamp

It lights up red

Do not continue driving!
Engine oil pressure too low.

If this warning lamp starts to flash, and is accompanied by three **audible warnings**, switch off the engine and check the oil level. If necessary, add more oil ››› page 319.

If the warning lamp flashes although the oil level is correct, *stop* driving. Do not even run the engine at idle speed! Obtain technical assistance.

It lights up yellow

Check the engine oil level as soon as possible.
Top up the oil at the next opportunity ››› page 319.

It flashes yellow

Fault in the oil level sensor.
Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have the system inspected. Until then it is advisable to check the oil level every time you refuel.

Checking engine oil level

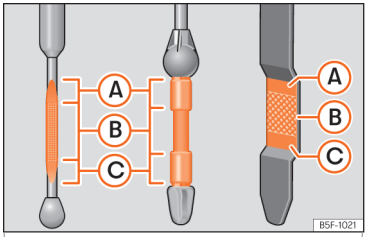


Fig. 282 Engine oil dipstick.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 46

Checking oil level

– Park the vehicle in a horizontal position.

– Briefly run the engine at idle speed until the operating temperature is reached and then stop.

– Wait for about two minutes.

– Pull out the dipstick. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.

– Then pull it out again and check the oil level. Top up with engine oil if necessary.

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

⚠ WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ››› page 315.**

ⓘ CAUTION

If the oil level is above area ››› Fig. 282 Ⓐ, do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact a Technical Service.

Topping up engine oil

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 46

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings **››› ⚠ in Safety notes for work in the engine compartment on page 315**.

The position of the filler neck is shown in the corresponding engine compartment image **››› page 317**.

Engine oil specification **››› page 47**.

⚠ WARNING

Oil is highly inflammable! Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up.

ⓘ CAUTION

If the oil level is above area ››› Fig. 282 Ⓐ, do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact a specialised workshop.

For the sake of the environment

The oil level must never be above zone ››› Fig. 282 Ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and leak into the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

Changing engine oil

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 46

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals given in the service schedule.

We recommend that you have the engine oil changed by a Technical Service.

The oil change intervals are shown in the Maintenance Programme. »

⚠ WARNING

Only change the engine oil yourself if you have the specialist knowledge required!

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ››› page 315, Safety notes for work in the engine compartment.**
- **Wait for the engine to cool down. Hot oil may cause burn injuries.**
- **Wear eye protection to avoid injuries, such as acid burns, caused by splashes of oil.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, keep your arm horizontal to help prevent oil from running down your arm.**
- **Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous! Used engine oil must be stored in a safe place out of the reach of children.**

ⓘ CAUTION

No additives should be used with engine oil. This could result in engine damage. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- **Because of disposal problems and the special tools and specialist knowledge required, we recommend that you have the engine oil and filter changed by a Technical Service.**
- **Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.**
- **Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be large enough to hold all the engine oil.**

Cooling system

Topping up coolant

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 47

Top up coolant when the level is below the MIN (minimum) mark.

Checking coolant level

– Park the vehicle in a horizontal position.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Read off the coolant level on coolant expansion tank. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks. When the engine is hot, it may be slightly above the upper mark.

Topping up coolant

– Wait for the engine to cool down.

– Cover the coolant expansion tank cap with a cloth and carefully unscrew it to the left ››› ⚠.

– Top up the coolant only if there is still coolant in the expansion tank, otherwise you could **damage the engine**. If there is no coolant in the expansion tank, do not continue driving. You should obtain professional assistance ››› ❗.

– If there is still some coolant in the expansion tank, top up to the upper mark.

– Top up with coolant until the level becomes stable.

– Screw the cap back on correctly.

Any loss of coolant fluid normally indicates a leak in the cooling system. Take the vehicle straight to a specialised workshop to have the cooling system examined. If there are no leaks in the engine cooling system, a loss of coolant can only occur if the coolant boils and is forced out of the system as a result of overheating.

⚠ WARNING

- **If your vehicle is immobilised for technical reasons, move it to a safe distance from traffic. Switch off the engine, switch on the blinkers and place the emergency triangles.**
- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine**

compartment, there is a risk of burns. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.

- The engine compartment is a dangerous area. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down. Always note the corresponding warnings ››› page 315.

⚠ WARNING

- The cooling system is under pressure. Do not unscrew the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot: risk of burns!
- The antifreeze and coolant fluid can be a health hazard. Therefore, the antifreeze should be stored in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children. Failure to comply could result in poisoning.
- If working inside the engine compartment, remember that, even when the ignition is switched off, the radiator fan may start up automatically, and therefore there is a risk of injury.

⚠ WARNING

If there is not enough anti-freeze in the coolant system, the engine may fail leading to serious damage.

- Please make sure that the percentage of additive is correct with respect to the lowest expected ambient temperature in the zone in which the vehicle is to be used.
- When the outside temperature is very low, the coolant could freeze and the vehicle would be immobilised. In this case, the heating would not work either and inadequately dressed passengers could die of cold.

ⓘ CAUTION

Do not top up the expansion tank with coolant fluid if it is empty! Air could enter the cooling system. In this case, stop driving. Seek specialist assistance. Otherwise, there is a risk of engine damage.

ⓘ CAUTION

The original additives should never be mixed with coolants which are not approved by SEAT. Otherwise, you run the risk of causing severe damage to the engine and the engine cooling system.

- If the fluid in the expansion tank is not purple but is, for example, brown, this indicates that the G13 additive has been mixed with an inadequate coolant. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case! This could result in serious faults and engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Coolants and additives can contaminate the environment. If any fluids are spilled, they should be collected and correctly disposed of, with respect to the environment.

Brake fluid

Checking the brake fluid level

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 48

The position of the brake fluid reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment image ››› page 317. The brake fluid reservoir has a black and yellow cap.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads are automatically adjusted as they wear.

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the “MIN” mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. A display on the instrument panel will warn you if the brake fluid level is too low ››› page 118.

⚠ WARNING

Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ››› page 315.

Changing the brake fluid

The Maintenance Programme indicates brake fluid change intervals.

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by a Technical Service.

Before opening the bonnet, please read and follow the warnings **››› ⚠ in Safety notes for work in the engine compartment on page 315** in section "Safety notes for working in the engine compartment".

In the course of time, brake fluid becomes hygroscopic and absorbs water from the ambient air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. This also considerably reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid. Heavy use of the brakes may then cause a vapour lock which could impair the braking effect.

Be sure to always use the correct brake fluid. Only use brake fluid that expressly meets the VW 501 14 standard.

You can buy VW 501 14 standard brake fluid in a SEAT dealership or a SEAT Official Service. If none is available, use only high-quality brake fluid that meets DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standards, or USA Standards FMVSS 116 DOT 4.

Using any other kind of brake fluid or one that is not of a high quality may affect operation of the brake system and reduce its effectiveness. Never use a brake fluid if the container does not state that it complies with VW 501 14, DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standards, or USA standards FMVSS 116 DOT 4.

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous. Old brake fluid impairs the braking effect.

- **Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ››› page 315.**
- **Brake fluid should be stored in the closed original container in a safe place out of reach of children. There is a toxic risk.**
- **Perform the brake fluid change according to the Maintenance Programme. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the brake system for too long. This would seriously affect the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle. This may cause an accident.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the vehicle paintwork. Wipe off any brake fluid from the paintwork immediately.

For the sake of the environment

The brake pads and brake fluid must be collected and disposed of according the applicable regulations. The SEAT Technical Service network has the necessary equipment and qualified personnel for collecting and disposing of this waste material.

Windscreen washer reservoir

Checking and topping up the windscreen washer reservoir water

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 48

The **windscreen washer** is supplied with liquid from the windscreen washer reservoir in the engine compartment. It has a capacity of approximately 3 litres.

The tank is in the engine compartment.

Plain water is not enough to clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend that you always add a product to the windscreen washer fluid. Approved windscreen cleaning products exist on the market with high detergent and anti-freeze properties, these may be added all-year-round. Please follow the dilution instructions on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

• When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ››› page 315.

CAUTION

• Never put radiator anti-freeze or other additives into the windscreen washer fluid.

• Always use approved windscreen cleansing products diluted as per instructions. If you use other washer fluids or soap solutions, the tiny holes in the fan-shaped nozzles could become blocked.

Vehicle battery

Symbols and warnings on handling the battery

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 49

	Wear eye protection
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fires, sparks, open flames and smoking are prohibited!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge.
	Keep children away from acid and batteries!

WARNING

Always be aware of the danger of injury and chemical burns as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system:

• Wear eye protection. Protect your eyes, skin and clothing from acid and particles containing lead.

• Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the batteries. This could spill acid through the vents.

• Rinse battery acid from eyes immediately for several minutes with clear water. Then seek medical care immediately. Neutralise any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with a soapy solution, and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.

• Fires, sparks, open flames and smoking are prohibited. When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid causing sparks and electrostatic charge. Never short the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause injury.

• A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge. The batteries should be charged in a well-ventilated room only.

• Keep children away from acid and batteries.

• Before working on the electrical system, you must switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical devices. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. When a light bulb is changed, you need only switch off the light.

• Deactivate the anti-theft alarm by unlocking the vehicle before you disconnect the battery! The alarm will otherwise be triggered.

• When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle on-board network, disconnect first the negative cable and then the positive cable.

• Switch off all electrical devices before reconnecting the battery. Reconnect first the positive cable and then the negative cable. Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause an electrical fire.

• Never charge a frozen battery, or one which has thawed. This could result in explosions and chemical burns. Always replace a battery which has frozen. A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32°F).

• Ensure that the vent hose is always connected to the battery.

• Never use a defective battery. This could cause an explosion. Replace a damaged battery immediately.

CAUTION

• Never disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is »

running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.

• Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight over a long period of time, as the intense ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.

• If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the battery from "freezing". If it freezes it will be damaged.

Warning lamp

It lights up
Alternator fault.

The control lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If the control lamp lights up while driving, the alternator is no longer charging the battery. You should immediately drive to the nearest specialised workshop.

You should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

The electrolyte level should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older batteries.

– Open the bonnet and open the battery cover at the front **››› ⚠ in Safety notes for work in the engine compartment on page 316 ››› ⚠ in Symbols and warnings on handling the battery on page 323**. For vehicles with the battery under the spare wheel, open the rear lid and lift the floor covering. The battery is located next to the spare wheel.

– Check the colour display in the "magic eye" on the top of the battery.

– If there are air bubbles in the window, tap the window gently until they disperse.

The position of the battery is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram **››› page 317**.

The "magic eye" indicator, located on the top of the battery changes colour, depending on the charge state and electrolyte level of the battery.

There are two different colours:

• Black: correct charge status.

• Transparent/light yellow: the battery must be replaced. Contact a specialised workshop.

Charging or changing the battery

The battery is maintenance-free and is checked during the inspection service. All work on the vehicle battery requires specialist knowledge.

If you often drive short distances or if the vehicle is not driven for long periods, the battery should be checked by a specialised workshop between the scheduled services.

If the battery has discharged and you have problems starting the vehicle, the battery might be damaged. If this happens, we recommend you have the vehicle battery checked by a Technical Service where it will be re-charged or replaced.

Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a specialised workshop only, as batteries using special technology have been installed and they must be charged in a controlled environment.

Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features.

Genuine SEAT batteries meet the maintenance, performance and safety specifications of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **We recommend you use only maintenance-free or cycle free leak-proof batteries which comply with standards T 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. This standard applies as of 2001 August or later.**
- **Before starting any work on the batteries, you must read and observe the warnings** **››› ⚠ in Symbols and warnings on handling the battery on page 323.**

❀ For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of appropriately and must not be disposed of with ordinary household waste.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

General notes

– When driving with **new tyres**, be especially careful during the first 500 km (300 miles).

– If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the obstacle.

– Check from time to time if the tyres are damaged (punctures, cuts, cracks or dents). Remove any foreign objects embedded in the treads.

– Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately.

– Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.

– Replace any missing valve caps as soon as possible.

– Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when put back.

– When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

New tyres

New tyres do not give maximum **grip** straight away and should therefore be “run in” by driving carefully and at moderate speeds for about the first 500 km (300 miles). This will also increase the useful life of the tyres.

The **tread depth** of new tyres may *vary*, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

Low profile tyres

Low profile tyres, compared to other rim and tyre combinations, offer a broader tread and a greater rim diameter along with a lower height of the tyre sidewall. This results in a more agile driving behaviour. However, on roads that are in poor condition, this might affect comfort and cause more noise.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres, for instance due to strong knocks, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. Therefore, maintaining the correct tyre pressure is particularly important **››› page 326**.

To avoid damage to tyres and wheels, drive with special care when driving on roads in poor condition.

Visually inspect your tyres every 3,000 km regarding damage, e.g. flattening/cracks on the tyre sidewall or deformations/cracks on the rims. »

If the rims and tyres have received a heavy impact or have been damaged, have them checked and, if required, replaced at a specialised workshop.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual **vibration** or the car **pulling to one side**, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce speed immediately if there is any reason to suspect that damage may have occurred. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialised workshop and have the car inspected.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on single drive tyres. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

Retrofitting accessories

If you wish to change or fit wheels, rims or wheel trims, we recommend that you consult with a SEAT Official Service centre for advice regarding current techniques.

⚠ WARNING

- **New tyres do not have maximum grip during the first 500 km. Drive particularly carefully to avoid possible accidents.**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **If you notice unusual vibrations or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and check the tyres for damage.**

Tyre pressure monitoring system

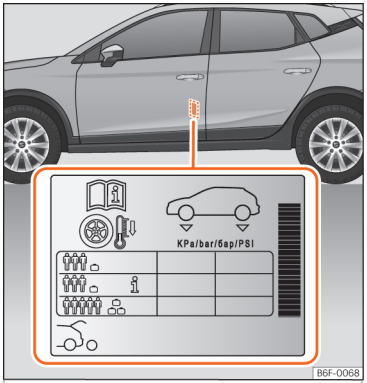


Fig. 283 Location of the tyre pressure sticker.

The maximum tyre pressure values are shown on a sticker stuck to the back of the left front door frame ››› **Fig. 283**.

1. Read the required tyre inflation pressure from the sticker. The values refer to Summer tyres.
2. The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
3. Adjust the tyre pressure to the load you are carrying.

Tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and before starting a journey.

Depending on the vehicle, tyre pressure can be adjusted to medium load to improve driving comfort ("comfort" tyre pressure). When driving with comfort tyre pressure fuel consumption may increase slightly.

⚠ WARNING

A tyre can easily burst if the pressure is too low, causing an accident!

- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. In this way it becomes too hot, and this can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**

- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well. Risk of accident!

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption.

Service life of tyres

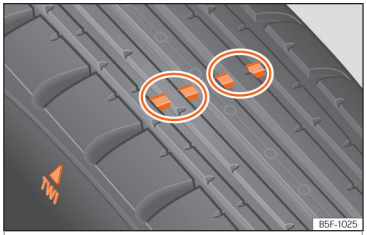


Fig. 284 Tyre tread wear indicators.

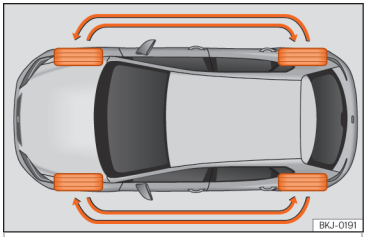


Fig. 285 Diagram for changing wheels.

The useful life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style and fitting.

Wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high "tread wear indicators" ››› Fig. 284, running across the tread. Depending on the make, there will be 6 to 8 of them evenly spaced around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. The minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Worn tyres must be replaced. Different figures may apply in export countries ››› ⚠.

Tyre pressure

Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and could cause tyre blow-out. For this reason, the tyre pressure should be checked at least once per month ››› page 326.

Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

Changing wheels around

If the front tyres are worn considerably more than the rear ones it is advisable to change them around as shown ››› Fig. 285. The useful life of all the tyres will then be about the same time.

Wheel balance

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration.

Unbalanced wheels should be rebalanced, as they otherwise cause excessive wear on steering, suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect running gear alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the wheel alignment checked by a Technical Service. »

⚠ WARNING

There is a serious danger of accidents if a tyre bursts during driving!

- **The tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread wear indicators are worn ››› page 327. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident. Worn tyres do not grip well at high speeds on wet roads. There is also a greater risk of "aquaplaning".**
- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. This causes it to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Risk of accident. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**
- **If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the running gear checked by a Technical Service.**
- **Keep chemicals such as oil, fuel and brake fluid away from tyres.**
- **Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately!**

❀ For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption.

New tyres and wheels

New tyres and wheels have to be run in.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. Those approved by SEAT are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road-holding and safe handling ››› ⚠.

Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together). A knowledge of tyre designations makes it easier to choose the correct tyres. Radial tyres have the tyre designations marked on the sidewall, for example:

195/55 R16 91V

This contains the following information:

195	Tyre width in mm
55	Height/width ratio in %
R	Tyre construction: **R**adial
16	Rim diameter in inches
91	Load rating code
V	Speed rating

The tyres could also have the following information:

- A direction of rotation symbol
- "Reinforced" denotes heavy-duty tyres.

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the outer side of the wheel).

"DOT ... 1116..." means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 11th week of 2016.

We recommend that work on tyres and wheels be carried out by a Technical Service. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres.

Any technical service has full information on the technical requirements when installing or changing tyres, wheels or wheel trims.

⚠ WARNING

- **We recommend that you use only wheels and tyres which have been approved by SEAT for your model. Failure to do so could impair vehicle handling. Risk of accident.**
- **Avoid running the vehicle on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.**
- **Never use old tyres or those with an unknown "history of use".**
- **If wheel trims are retrofitted, you must ensure that the flow of air to the brakes is not restricted. This could cause the brake system to overheat.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.**

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of according to the laws in the country concerned.

Note

- A SEAT Service Centre should be consulted to find out whether wheels or tyres of different sizes to those originally fitted by SEAT can be fitted, and to find out about the combinations allowed between the front axle (axle 1) and the rear axle (axle 2).
- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same model. The use of wheels or tyres which have not been approved by SEAT for use with your model may invalidate the vehicle's type approval for use on public roads.
- If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres) you should only use the spare tyre for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Wheel bolts

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different wheel rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you should not use wheel bolts from a different vehicle, even if it is the same model ››› page 307.

WARNING

If the wheel bolts are not tightened correctly, the wheel could become loose while driving. Risk of accident.

- The wheel bolts must be clean and turn easily. Never apply grease or oil to them.
- Use only wheel bolts which belong to the wheel.
- If the prescribed torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.

CAUTION

The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.

Tyre monitoring indicator*

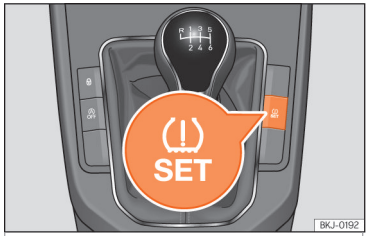


Fig. 286 Centre console: tyre monitoring system button.

Control lamp

It lights up

The tyre pressure of a wheel is much lower than the value set by the driver ››› ⚠.

Or: Fault in the tyre pressure gauge.

The tyre pressure loss indicator compares the revolutions and thus the wheel diameter of each wheel using the ESC. If the wheel diameter of a wheel changes, the control indicator of the tyres informs of this fact (!). The wheel diameter changes when:

- Tyre pressure is insufficient.
- The tyre structure is damaged.
- The vehicle is unbalanced because of a load.

»

- The wheels of one axle are under more pressure (for example, driving with a trailer or on steep slopes).
- The vehicle is fitted with snow chains.
- The temporary spare wheel is fitted.
- The wheel on one axle is changed.

Tyre pressure adjustment

After modifying tyre pressure or changing any wheels, the new tyre pressure must be stored in the Easy Connect system with the CAR / button and the **SETTINGS** function button ››› page 34.

In vehicles without a radio, press and hold down the SET ››› Fig. 286 button, with the ignition on, until an acoustic signal is heard.

If the wheels are under excessive load (for example, driving with a trailer or heavy load), the tyre pressure must be increased to the recommended value for a full load (see the sticker on the back of the left front door frame). If the tyre monitor system button is pressed down, the new tyre pressures are confirmed.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the tyre pressure control lamp lights up, reduce speed immediately and avoid any sudden turning or braking manoeuvre. Stop when possible, and check the tyre pressure and status.**
- **The driver is responsible for maintaining correct tyre pressures. For this reason, tyre pressure must be regularly checked.**
- **Under certain circumstances (e.g. when driving in a sporty manner, in winter conditions or on a dirt track) the tyre control lamp may light up belatedly or may function incorrectly.**

Note

If the battery is disconnected, the yellow warning lamp lights up after turning the ignition on. This should turn off after a brief journey.

Spare wheel (temporary spare wheel)*

Location and use of the temporary spare wheel

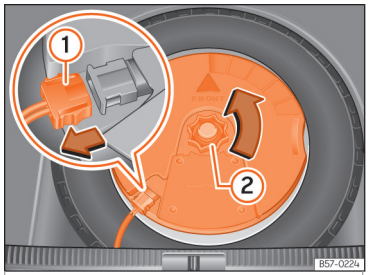


Fig. 287 In the boot: remove the subwoofer.

The temporary spare wheel is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is attached by a thumbnut.

How to use the temporary spare wheel

If you ever have a punctured tyre or loss of pressure, the temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use until you reach a workshop. Change it for a duty wheel as soon as possible.

Please note the following restrictions when using the temporary spare wheel. This

temporary spare wheel has been specially designed for your vehicle, thus, it cannot be changed with the temporary spare wheel from another vehicle.

No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the temporary spare wheel.

If you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. Fit the snow chains on the rear wheel that you have removed and replace the punctured front wheel with this wheel.

Getting the spare wheel out of vehicles with the Beats Audio® sound system (6 speakers with 1 *subwoofer*)*

Disassemble the *subwoofer*'s floor panel (carpet) as follows:

- Pull the carpet upwards to remove it.
- Disconnect the cable for the subwoofer speaker ››› Fig. 287 ①.
- Turn the securing wheel anti-clockwise ②.
- Remove the *subwoofer* speaker and the spare wheel.
- When replacing the spare wheel, place the *subwoofer* speaker in the direction indicated by the arrow and with the word "FRONT" facing forward.
- Reconnect the speaker cable and firmly rotate the securing wheel clockwise so that the *subwoofer* system and wheel are firmly in place.

Removing the 16" temporary spare wheel (without subwoofer)

- Remove the luggage compartment variable floor to access the wheel and the tools ››› page 158.
- Loosen the strap that secures the box by pressing on the buckle.
- Remove the toolbox.
- Turn the securing wheel anti-clockwise and remove it.
- Press the thread and turn it 90° clockwise or anti-clockwise and remove it.
- Pull on the front part of the spare wheel to remove it.

⚠ WARNING

- **After fitting the temporary spare wheel, check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. Failure to do so may cause an accident. The tyre pressure is listed on the back of the left front door frame.**
- **Do not drive at over 80 km/h (50 mph) when the temporary spare wheel is fitted on the vehicle: risk of accident!**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering: risk of accident!**
- **Never use more than one temporary spare wheel at the same time, risk of accident.**
- **No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.**

Winter service

Winter tyres

In winter conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the vehicle's handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow.

Winter **tyres must be inflated to a pressure** of 0.2 bar (2.9 psi/20 kPa) higher than the pressures specified for summer tyres (see the sticker on the back of the left front door frame).

Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.

Information on permitted **winter tyre sizes** can be found in the vehicle's registration documentation. Use only radial winter tyres. All »

tyre sizes listed in the vehicle documentation also apply to winter tyres.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The speed rating code ››› page 328, New tyres and wheels determines the following **speed limits** for winter tyres: ››› ⚠

Q max. 160 km/h (99 mph)

S max. 180 km/h (112 mph)

T max. 190 km/h (118 mph)

H max. 210 km/h (130 mph)

In some countries, vehicles which can exceed the speed rating of the fitted tyre must have an appropriate sticker in the driver's field of view. These stickers are available from your technical service. The legal requirements of each country must be followed.

Do not have winter tyres fitted for unnecessarily long periods. Vehicles with summer tyres handle better when the roads are free of snow and ice.

If you have a flat tyre, please refer to the notes on the spare wheel ››› page 328, New tyres and wheels.

⚠ WARNING

The maximum speed for the winter tyres must not be exceeded. Otherwise, this could lead to damage and risk of accident.

For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres again as soon as possible. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Maintenance

Service

Service intervals

Servicing and Digital Maintenance Plan

Log of services performed ("Digital Maintenance Plan")

The SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop records Service receipts in a central system. Thanks to this comprehensive documentation of the service history, it is possible to reproduce the services performed any time. SEAT recommends requesting a Service receipt after every service carried out containing all the services carried out on the system.

Whenever there is a new service the receipt is replaced with a current one.

The Digital Maintenance Plan is not available in some markets. In this case, your SEAT dealer will inform you about the current documentation of the work.

Service works

In the Digital Maintenance Plan, your SEAT authorised service or specialised workshop documents the following information:

- When each one of the services was carried out.
- Whether a specific repair has been suggested, e.g. changing the brake pads in the near future.
- If you have expressed a special request for the maintenance. Your Service Advisor will write the work order.
- The components or fluids that were changed.
- The date of the next service.

The Long Life Mobility Warranty is valid until the next inspection. This information is documented in all checks performed.

The type and the volume of the service may vary from one vehicle to another. A specialised workshop will be able to provide specific information on the jobs for your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic cause an accident and severe injuries.

- **Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a SEAT authorised service or specialised workshop.**

ⓘ CAUTION

SEAT cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or of lack of availability of spare parts.

ⓘ Note

Regular services on the vehicle not only maintain its value, but also its correct operation and road safety. For this reason, conduct the services in accordance with SEAT guidelines.

Fixed Service or Flexible Service

Services are classified as **oil change service** and **inspection**. The service interval display on the instrument panel display serves as a reminder of the next service.

Depending on the features, the engine and the conditions of use of the car, either the **Fixed service** or the **Flexible service** will be applied for an oil change service..

How to know which type of service needs to his vehicle

- Check the tables below:

»

Oil change service[a]		
PR No.	**Type of service**	**Service interval**
QI1	Fixed	Every **5000 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI2		Every **7500 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI3		Every **10000 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI4		Every **15000 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI6	Flexible	According to the service interval display

[a] The data are based on normal conditions of use.

[b] Whatever happens first.

Inspection Service[a]
According to the service interval display

[a] The data are based on normal conditions of use.

Bear in mind the information about the specifications of the engine oil according to the VW standard ››› page 46.

Particular characteristics of the Flexible Service

Regarding the **Flexible Service**, the oil change service only has to be performed when the vehicle needs it. To calculate when you have to carry out this service, take into account the individual conditions of use and personal driving style. A major component of the flexible service the use of LongLife oil instead of conventional engine oil.

Bear in mind the information about the specifications of the engine oil according to the VW standard ››› page 46.

If you do not want to the flexible service you can select the fixed service However, a fixed service may affect service costs The Service Advisor will gladly advise you.

Service intervals display

At SEAT, the dates of the services are indicated by the service interval display on the instrument panel ››› page 115 or in the **Vehicle settings** menu of the infotainment system ››› page 34. The service interval display gives information for service dates that involve an engine oil change or an inspection. When the time for the corresponding service comes, additional work required, such as the change of brake fluid and the spark plugs, can be carried out.

Information on the conditions of use

The service intervals and groups are usually based on **normal conditions of use**.

If, on the other hand, the vehicle is under **adverse conditions of use**, some of the work must be carried out before the next service period or even between service intervals.

Conditions of use adverse include:

- The use of fuel with a high sulphur content.
- Frequent short trips.
- Letting the engine idle for a long period of time, as in the case of taxis.
- Using the vehicle in areas with thick dust.
- Frequent driving with a trailer (depending on equipment).
- Using the vehicle mostly in situations with a lot of traffic and stops (e.g. in a city).
- Using the vehicle mostly in winter.

This applies especially for the following parts (depending on equipment):

- Dust and pollen filter
- Air Care allergen filter
- Air filter
- Toothed chain
- Particulate filter
- Engine oil

The Service Advisor of your specialised workshop will gladly inform you about the need of performing service work between

normal service intervals, always considering the conditions of use of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Have the services conducted at authorised SEAT services or specialised workshops.**

ⓘ CAUTION

SEAT cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or of lack of availability of spare parts.

Sets of services

Sets of services include all the **maintenance works** needed to ensure the safety and the smooth running of the vehicle (**depending on the conditions of use and the features of the vehicle**, such as the engine, gearbox, or operating fluids). Maintenance services are divided into *inspection* and *review* services. Consult the details of the jobs required for your vehicle at:

- Your SEAT authorised service
- Your specialised workshop

Due to technical reasons (continuous development of components) the sets of services may vary. Your SEAT authorised service or specialised workshop is always receiving updates in time.

Additional service offers

Approved spare parts

Original SEAT Spare Parts have been conceived for their vehicles and approved by SEAT, with a special emphasis on safety. These parts correspond exactly to the manufacturer's requirements in terms of design, accuracy of the measurements and materials. The original SEAT Spare Parts have been conceived exclusively for your vehicle. For this reason, we always recommend the use of Original SEAT Spare Parts. SEAT cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

Approved spare parts

Approved spare parts, following the manufacturer's requirements, are an additional service to you, offering the possibility of replacing complete sets, such as: light engine, gearboxes, heads, control units, electrical components, etc.

These parts are, **approved parts**, and are the same as the factory parts, which are also approved spare parts.

Original accessories

We recommend you only use SEAT Original Accessories and SEAT approved accessories for your vehicle. The reliability, safety and suitability of these accessories have been inspected specifically for this type of vehicle. SEAT cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

SEAT Service Mobility (SEAT Service Mobility)

Since the moment you purchase your SEAT vehicle you will be able to enjoy the benefits and coverage of the SEAT Mobility Service.

For the first two years after the purchase, your new SEAT vehicle is automatically covered by the SEAT Mobility Service without additional costs.

If you wish to enjoy this service after this period, you can extend SEAT Mobility as long as you carry out the recommended Inspection and Maintenance Services at a SEAT Authorised Service. »

If your SEAT vehicle is immobilised due to a fault or an accident, our assistance services will help you keep moving.

Take into account that the SEAT Mobility Service differs depending on the country in which the vehicle was purchased. For further information ask your SEAT dealership or the SEAT website in your country.

Warranty

Fault-free operation warranty

SEAT Authorised Services ensure the perfect condition of new vehicles. Check the purchase agreement or complementary additional documentation provided by your Technical Service to see the conditions and the terms of the warranty. Consult further information in this regard in your SEAT Official Service.

Vehicle maintenance

Maintenance and cleaning

Basic considerations

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of your vehicle. In addition, it may become a prerequisite to demand the warranty in the event of corrosion damage and deficiencies in the paint coat of the bodywork.

Specialised workshops have the necessary care products. Please follow the instructions for application on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can be damaging to your health if misused.**
- **Always keep care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children. Danger of poisoning!**

❀ For the sake of the environment

- **When purchasing car care products, chose products that are compatible with the environment.**
- **The waste from car-care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste.**

Washing the vehicle

The longer you take to clean the tanks, e.g. remains of insects, bird excrements, tree resin or anti frost salt adhered to your vehicle, the more damage it can cause to the surface. High temperatures, for instance strong sunlight, further intensify the damage.

Before washing the car, soften the dirt using plenty of water.

To remove encrusted dirt such as insects, bird droppings or tree resin, use a lot of water and a microfibre cloth.

Have the underside of the vehicle washed after the end of the anti frost salts in winter.

High pressure cleaners

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the distance between the spraying water. Do not aim the jet directly to the side window gaskets, doors, covers or the panoramic sunroof*; the same applies to tyres, rubber hoses, soundproofing material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not remove snow and ice with a high-pressure cleaner.

Do not use a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a rotating jet for forcing off dirt.

The water temperature must not exceed 60°C.

Automatic car wash tunnels

Spray the vehicle before starting the car wash.

Make sure that the windows and the panoramic sunroof* are closed and the windscreen wipers are deactivated. Bear in mind the instructions of the car wash tunnel operator, especially if your vehicle has detachable parts.

Use of car washes without brushes if possible.

Washing by hand

Clean your vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or with a brush. Only use cleaning products that do not contain solvents.

Washing vehicles with a matte paint by hand

To prevent damage to the vehicle when washing it, first remove the thicker dust and dirt. To remove traces of insects, grease and fingerprints, it is best to use a special cleaner for matte paint.

Apply the product with a microfibre cloth. To avoid damaging the surface of the paint, do not apply too much pressure.

Rinse with plenty of water. Then clean it with a neutral cleaning product and a soft microfibre cloth.

Rinse the vehicle again with plenty of water and then leave it to dry. Remove traces of water with a leather cloth.

⚠ WARNING

- **Only wash the vehicle with the ignition switched off or according to the specifications of the car wash tunnel operator. Risk of accident!**
- **When cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel arches, protect yourself from sharp or pointy metal parts. Risk of cut!**
- **After cleaning the brakes could act more slowly due to moisture or, in winter, the ice on the brake discs and pads. Risk of accident! In this case the brakes should be dried by pressing the brake pedal several times.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electric exterior rear-view mirrors must always be folded/deployed electrically!**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!**
- **Do not use sponges, abrasive household sponges or similar to clean insect remains. Risk of damaging the surface!**
- **Vehicle parts with matte paint:**
  - **Do not use polish or hard wax. Risk of damaging the surface!**
  - **Never select washing programs that include the use of wax. This could damage the appearance of matte paint.**
  - **Do not put stickers or magnets on parts with matte paint, as removing them may damage the paint.**

❀ For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. These places are prepared to prevent oily water from getting into the public drains.

Cleaning and maintenance instructions

The cleaning and maintenance of individual components of the vehicle can be checked in the following tables. The contents should be understood merely as a recommendation. Go to your specialised workshop if you have »

special questions or parts that are not listed. Take he general considerations into account ››› ⚠ in Take special care with... on page 341.

Exterior cleaning

Windscreen wipers

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft cloth with wipers

Headlights / Tail lights

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[a]

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Sensors / Camera lenses

Problem	Solution
Dirt	*Sensors*: soft cloth with cleaning product which does not contain solvents *Camera lenses* - soft cloth with cleaning product with no alcohol content
Snow/ice	Hand brush/Anti frost spray with no solvents

Wheels

Problem	Solution
Anti frost salt	Water
Brake abrasion dust	Acid-free special cleaning product

End exhausts

Problem	Solution
Anti frost salt	Water, if a steel cleaning product is required

Covers / Trims

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Neutral soap solution[a], if a steel cleaning product is required

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Paint

Problem	Solution
Flaws in the paint	Check the paint's colour code in an authorised service and restore with a touch-up pencil
Spilled fuel	Immediately rinse with water
Environmental rust tank	Apply rust remover and then apply hard wax. Go you your specialised workshop if you have any queries
Corrosion	Have your specialised workshop take care of this
The water does not create droplets on the clean paint	Maintain with hard wax (at least 2 times a year)
No shine despite sober maintenance/paint	Treat with suitable wax and apply paint preservative afterwards if the wax used does not contain preservative ingredients
Tanks, e.g. insect remains, bird droppings, tree sap, road salt	Immediately soften with water and remove with a microfibre cloth
Fat-based dirt, e.g. cosmetic products or sunscreen	Delete immediately with a neutral soap solution[a] and a soft cloth

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Carbon fibre parts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Clean the same way as painted parts ››› page 336

Decoration slides

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[a]

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Interior cleaning

Windows

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Apply windscreen cleaner and then dry with a cloth

Covers / Trims

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Neutral soap solution[a]

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Plastic parts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Damp cloth
Encrusted dirt	Neutral soap solution[a], if possible solvent-free plastic cleaner

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Displays/instrument panel

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft cloth with a liquid crystal display cleaner

Control panels

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft brush, then soft cloth with neutral soap solution[a]

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Seat belts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Neutral soap solution[a], allowed to dry before retracting

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Fabrics, artificial, Alcantara leather

Problem	Solution
Dirt particles adhered to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.	Absorbent cloth and neutral soap solution[a]
Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a neutral soap solution[a]. Absorb the dissolved grease and paint particles drying with an absorbent cloth, in case you must treat it with water afterwards
Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.	Special stain remove: dry with an absorbent cloth, if applicable, apply neutral soap solution afterwards[a]

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Natural leather

Problem	Solution
Recent dirt	Cotton cloth with neutral soap solution[a]
Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.	Recent stains: absorbent cloth Dry stains: leather cleaner
Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Recent stains: absorbent cloth and leather cleaner Dry stains: grease dissolving spray
Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather

»

Problem	Solution
Care	Apply preservative cream regularly to protect from sunlight. Use a colour preservative if required

a) Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Carbon fibre parts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Clean like plastic parts

Take special care with...

Headlights/tail lights

- Do not clean the headlights/tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
- Do not use cleaning products that contain alcohol. Risk of cracks!

Wheels

- Do not use for paint wax or other abrasive products.
- If the protective coating on the paint of the rim has been damaged due to stone impacts, scratches, etc., the damage should be repaired immediately.

Camera lenses

- Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lenses. Risk of cracking the lens!
- To clean the camera lens, never use abrasive cleaning products or products with alcohol. Risk of scratches and cracks!

Windows

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
- Never remove snow or ice from windows and rearview mirrors with warm or hot water. Risk of cracks on the windows!
- To prevent damage to the heating of the rear window, do not put stickers over the heating elements.

Covers/trims

- Do not use cleaning products or chrome based cleaning agents.

Paint

- The vehicle must be free from dirt and dust before applying wax or care products. Risk of scratches!
- Do not apply wax or care products if the vehicle is exposed to direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- The ambient rust deposits must not be removed through friction. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- Remove cosmetic products and sunlight immediately. Risk of damaging the paint job!

Displays/instrument panel

- The screens, the instrument panel and the trim around it must not be cleaned dry. Risk of scratches!
- Make sure that the instrument panel is switched off and cooled down before cleaning.
- Make sure that no liquid leaks between the instrument panel and the trim. Risk of damage!

Control panels

- Make sure that no liquid leaks into the control panels. Risk of damage!

Seat belts

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Seat belts and their components must never be cleaned with chemical products, nor should they be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp objects. Risk of damaging the fabric!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, ask your specialised workshop to replace the belt in question.

Fabrics/artificial leather/Alcantara leather

- Do not treat artificial leather/Alcantara leather with leather cleaning products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar products.
- If the stain is very hard to remove, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have it removed there. This will prevent damage.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Open Velcro, e.g. on clothes can damage the seat upholstery. Make sure that Velcro fasteners are closed.

Natural leather

- Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as humid weather, darkness or when the sun is in its lowest point, visibility may be impacted. Risk of accident! Such coatings can also cause the windscreen wiper blades to make noise.

Note

- **Remains of insects can be removed much more easily with previously treated paint.**
- **Regular car care treatments can prevent deposits of ambient rust.**

Remove the vehicle from traffic

If you want to leave your vehicle stationary for a long period of time, contact a qualified workshop. They will gladly inform you about the necessary measures, such as anti-corrosion protection, Service and storage.

Also take into account instructions regarding the vehicle's battery ››› page 323.

Information for the user

Information for the user

Event Data Recorder

Description and operation

Your vehicle has an event data recorder (EDR).

The EDR's function is to record data in the event of a mild or serious accident. These data are used to support the analysis of how different vehicle systems behaved.

The EDR records, over a reduced time range (normally 10 seconds or less), dynamic driving data and data from the restraint systems, such as:

- How different vehicle systems worked.
- Whether the driver and the occupants were wearing their seat belts.
- How hard the acceleration or brake pedal was pressed.
- Vehicle speed.

These data will provide a better understanding of the circumstances of the accident.

Data from the driving assist systems are also recorded. This includes data such as whether the systems were inactive or active and if such action had an impact on the vehicle's dynamic behaviour, changing its path in the aforementioned situations, accelerating or decelerating the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this includes data from systems such as:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency braking assistance system (Front Assist).
- Park Pilot system

The EDR data are only recorded in specific accident situations. No data are recorded in normal driving conditions.

No audio or video data inside or around the vehicle are recorded. Under no circumstances are personal data such as name, age, or gender recorded. Nevertheless, third parties (such as criminal proceedings authorities) may relate the contents of the EDR data to other data sources and create a personal reference in the context of an accident investigation.

In order to read the EDR data it is necessary to access (if legally permitted to do so) the vehicle's ODB ("On-Board-Diagnose") interface while the vehicle is switched on.

SEAT will not have access to EDR data unless the owner (or, in "Leasing" cases, the lessee or hirer) gives their consent. There may be exceptions to this, depending on legal or contractual provisions.

Due to legal requirements in safety-related products, SEAT may use the EDR data for field research and in order to improve vehicle system quality. Any data used for the purposes of research will be treated anonymously (in other words, no reference will be made to the vehicle, their owner or the lessee/hirer).

Other important information

Recycling of electrical or electronic devices

All electrical or electronic devices (EED) that are not permanently fitted in the vehicle must be marked with the following symbol:

This symbol indicates that EED must not be discarded as home waste but through selective waste collection.

Information about the EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU compliance declaration

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with Directive 2014/53/EU when legally required.

The full text of the EU compliance declaration is available online at the following address:

www.seat.com/generalinfo CE

Table of correspondences

The table of correspondences will help you to associate the name of the device in the declaration of compliance with the features of the vehicle and the terminology used in the on-board documentation.

Features of the vehicle	Name of the device according to the declaration of compliance
Radiofrequency remote control (vehicle)	FS09, FS12A, FS12P, FS1477, FS94
Radio frequency remote control (auxiliary heater)	Sender STH SEAT - 50000914
	Telestart
Auxiliary heating	50000864 / D208L VW
	Telestart
Bluetooth	MIB2 Entry
	MIB Standard 2
	MIB2 Main-Unit
	A580 / A270
Wireless hotspot	MIB2 Main-Unit
	A580 / A270
Keyless Access System	MQB-B B
Radar sensors for assistance systems	ARS4-B
	MRRevo14F
	BSD3.0
Central control unit	5WK50254
	5WK50474
Infotainment system	MIB2 Entry
	MIB Standard 2
	MIB2 Main-Unit
	A580 / A270
Wireless charging	WCH-183
	WCH-185
	5G0.980.611
Connection to the external antenna of the car	UMTS/GSM-MMC
	UMTS/GSM-MMC-AG2
Instrument panel	eNSF
	Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster
Antenna	FM/AM Antenna Base
	Antennas MQB27 Small/Big family
	Antennas KSA Small Fam III
	5Q0.035.507 Roof Antenna
	GNSS Antenna VAG 720166002
	8S7.035.503.B

»

Features of the vehicle	Name of the device according to the declaration of compliance
Antenna amplifiers	6F0.035.225 6F9.035.225 3V5.035.577.A 7N0.035.552.J 7N0.035.552.K 7N0.035.552.Q 5F4.035.225 5F4.035.225.A 5F4.035.225.B 5F9.035.225 5F9.035.225.A 5F9.035.225.B 575.035.225 575.035.225.A 575.035.225.B

Addresses of the manufacturers

According to the Directive 2014/53/EU, all relevant components must include the address of the manufacturer.

The address of the manufacturers of components that, due to their size or nature, cannot include a sticker are listed below, as long as it is legally required:

Radioelectrical equipment fitted in the vehicle	Addresses of the manufacturers
Radiofrequency remote control key	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt, GERMANY

Radioelectrical equipment fitted in the vehicle	Addresses of the manufacturers
Radio frequency remote control (auxiliary heater)	Digades gmbH Äußere Weberstraße 20 02763 Zittau, GERMANY
	Webasto Thermo & Comfort SE Friedrichshafener Str. 9 82205 Gilching, GERMANY
Radar sensors for assistance systems	ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH Peter-Dornier-Straße 10 88131 Lindau, GERMANY
	Robert Bosch GmbH Postfach 16 61 71226 Leonberg, GERMANY

Frequency bands, station power

Radioelectrical equipment[a)]	Frequency band	Max. station power	Valid for models
Radiofrequency remote control (vehicle)	433.05-434.78 MHz	10 mW (ERP)	All SEAT models
	433.05-434.79 MHz	10 mW	
	868.0-868.6 MHz	25 mW	
	434.42 MHz	32 µW	
Radio frequency remote control (auxiliary heater)	868.7-869.2 MHz (869.0 MHz)	0.24 mW, / −6.3 dBm e.r.p.	Ateca
	868.0-868.6 MHz (868.3 MHz)	3.1 mW, / 4.8 dBm e.r.p.	Alhambra

Radioelectrical equipment[a)]	Frequency band	Max. station power	Valid for models
Auxiliary heating	868.0-868.6 MHz (868.3 MHz)	23.5 mW, / 13.7 dBm e.r.p.	Alhambra
	868.7-869.2 MHz (869.0 MHz)	23.5 mW, / 13.7 dBm e.r.p.	Ateca
Bluethooth	2402-2480 MHz	6 dBm	All SEAT models
	2400-2483.5 MHz	10 dBm	
Wireless hotspot	2400-2483.5 MHz	10 dBm	Leon and Ateca
Connection to the external antenna of the car	GSM 900: 880-915 MHz	33 dBm	Ibiza, Arona, Leon, Ateca and Alhambra
	GSM 1800: 1710-1785 MHz	30 dBm	
	WCDMA FDD I: 1920-1980 MHz	24 dBm	
	WCDMA FDD III: 1710-1785 MHz	24 dBm	
Keyless Access	434.42 MHz	32 µW	Ibiza, Toledo, Arona, Leon and Ateca
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76 GHz-77 GHz	28.2 dBm	Toledo, Leon and Alhambra
		35.0 dBm	Ibiza, Arona and Ateca
	24050-24250 MHz	20 dBm	Arona, Ateca and Alhambra
Wireless charging	110-120 kHz	10 W	Ibiza, Arona, Leon and Ateca
Instrument panel	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m	All SEAT models

[a)] The commissioning or authorisation of radioelectrical technology may be restricted in some European countries, forbidden or only allowed with additional requirements.

Technical data

Technical specifications

Important information

Important

The information in the vehicle documentation always takes precedence over the information in this Instruction Manual.

All technical specifications provided in this documentation are valid for the standard model in Spain.

The figures may be different depending whether additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Abbreviations used in the technical specifications section

kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
PS	Pferdestärke (horsepower), formerly used to denote engine power.
rpm, 1/min	Revolutions per minute - engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
CZ	Cetane number, indication of the diesel combustion power.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle identification data

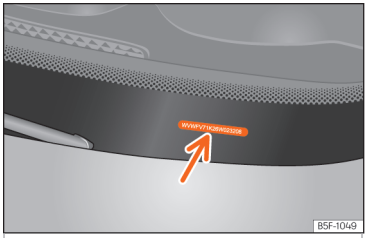


Fig. 288 Chassis number.

Chassis number

The VIN is located in the Easy Connect and under the windscreen, on the driver side ››› Fig. 288. Additionally, the chassis number is located in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side. The number is engraved on the top side rail, and is partially covered.

VIN in the Easy Connect

• Select: CAR / button > function button **SETTINGS > Service > Chassis number**.

Identification plate

The identification plate is located on the rear pillar of the right-hand front door. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have an identification plate.

Identifying letters

The identifying letters of the engine can be viewed on the instrument panel when the engine is switched off and the ignition is on.

• Hold down the button **0.0/SET** on the dash panel for more than 15 seconds.

Information on fuel consumption

Fuel consumption

Approved consumption values are derived from measurements performed or supervised by certified EU laboratories, according to the

legislation in force at the time (for more information, see the Publications Office of the European Union on the EUR-Lex website: © European Union, http://eur-lex.europa.eu/) and apply to the specified vehicle characteristics.

The values relating to fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions can be found in the documentation provided to the purchaser of the vehicle at the time of purchase.

Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions depend on the equipment/features of each individual vehicle, as well as on the driving style, road conditions, traffic conditions, environmental conditions, load or number of passengers.

Note

In practice, and considering all the factors mentioned here, consumption values can differ from those calculated in the current European regulations.

Weights

Kerb weight refers to the basic model with a fuel tank filled to 90% capacity and without optional extras. The figure quoted includes 75 kg to allow for the weight of the driver.

Special versions, optional equipment fittings or retro-fitting accessories will increase the weight of the vehicle ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect vehicle handling and lead to an accident. Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit road conditions and requirements.**
- **Never exceed the gross axle weight rating or the gross vehicle weight rating. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Trailer mode

Trailer weights

The trailer weights and drawbar loads approved are selected in intensive trials according to precisely defined criteria. The approved trailer weights are valid for vehicles in the *EU* for maximum speeds of 80 km/h (50 mph) (in certain circumstances up to 100 km/h (62 mph)). The figures may be different in other countries. All data in the official vehicle documentation takes precedence over these data at all times ››› ⚠.

Drawbar loads

The *maximum* permitted drawbar load on the ball coupling of the towing bracket must not exceed **55 kg**.

In the interest of road safety, we recommend that you always tow approaching the maximum drawbar load. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor, if the drawbar load is too small.

If the maximum permissible drawbar load cannot be met (e.g. with small, empty and light-weight single axle trailers or tandem axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1 metre), a minimum of 4% of the actual trailer weight is legally required for the drawbar load.

⚠ WARNING

- **For safety reasons, you should not drive at speeds above 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer. This also applies in countries where higher speeds are permitted.**
- **Never exceed the maximum trailer weights or the drawbar load. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Wheels

Tyre pressure and wheel bolts

Tyre pressure

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the back of the left front door frame. The tyre pressure values given there are for *cold* tyres. Do not reduce the slightly raised pressures of warm tyres ››› ⚠.

The pressure for winter tyres is 0.2 bar higher than that of summer tyres (2.9 psi / 20 kPa).

Wheel bolts

After the wheels have been changed, the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ››› ⚠. The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is **120** Nm.

⚠ WARNING

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Checking the tyre pressure is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents - particularly at high speeds.**
- **If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.**

Note

We recommend that you ask your Technical Service for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

Engine data

Petrol engines

	1.0 TSI Start-Stop		
Power output in kW (PS) at 1/min	70 (95)/5,000-5,500	85 (115)/5,000-5,500	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	175/2,000-3,500	200/2,000-3,500	
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	3/999	
Fuel	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ		
Gearbox	manual	manual	DSG
Top speed (km/h)	173 (IV)	182 (V)	182 (VI)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.4	6.6	6.7
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	11.4	9.8	10.0
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,615-1,700[a)]	1,625-1,710[a)]	1,655-1,740[a)]
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,180	1,189	1,212
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	850	860	890
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	815-900[b)]	815-900[b)]	815-900[b)]
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	590	590	600
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,100	1,200	1,200
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,000	1,100	1,100

[a)] Varies depending on the features.

[b)] Varies depending on the rear spring.

Petrol engines

	1.5 TSI Evo Start-Stop	1.6 MPI	
Power output in kW (PS) at 1/min	110 (150)/5,000-6,000	81 (110)/5,800	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1,500-3,500	155/3,800-4,000	
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,498	4/1,598	
Fuel	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ		
Gearbox	manual	manual	automatic
Top speed (km/h)	205 (V)	181 (IV)	181 (IV)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	5.8	7.1	7.3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	8.3	11.1	11.5
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,665-1,750[a]	1,595-1,680[a]	1,635-1,720[a]
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,222	1,156	1,194
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	900	830	870
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	815-900[b]	815-900[b]	815-900[b]
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	610	570	590
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,200	1,200	1,200
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,200	1,100	1,100

[a] Varies depending on the features.

[b] Varies depending on the rear spring.

Natural gas/petrol engines

	1.0 TGI Start-Stop
Power output in kW (PS) at 1/min	66 (90)/4,500-5,800
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	160/1,900-3,500
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Fuel	CNG
	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ
Gearbox	manual
Top speed (km/h)	169 (4)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	8.6
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	13.2
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,700
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,301
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	a)
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	a)
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	650
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 8% (kg)	a)
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 12% (kg)	a)

a) Data not available as this edition goes to print.

Diesel engines

	1.6 TDI CR Start-Stop		
Power output in kW (PS) at 1/min	70 (95)/2,750-4,600		85 (115)/3,250-4,000
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1,500-2,600		250/1,500-3,200
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,598		4/1,598
Fuel	Diesel according to standard EN 590, min. 51 CN		
Gearbox	manual	DSG	manual
Top speed (km/h)	172 (5)	174 (6)	185 (5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.9	8.4	7.1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	11.9	12.8	10.3
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,715-1,800[a]	1,745-1,830[a]	1,725-1,810[a]
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,297	1,320	1,303
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	950	980	960
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	815-900[b]	815-900[b]	815-900[b]
Maximum trailer weight without brakes (kg)	640	660	650
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 8% (kg)	1,200	1,200	1,200
Weight of trailer with brakes on gradients up to 12% (kg)	1,200	1,100	1,200

[a] Varies depending on the features.

[b] Varies depending on the rear spring.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

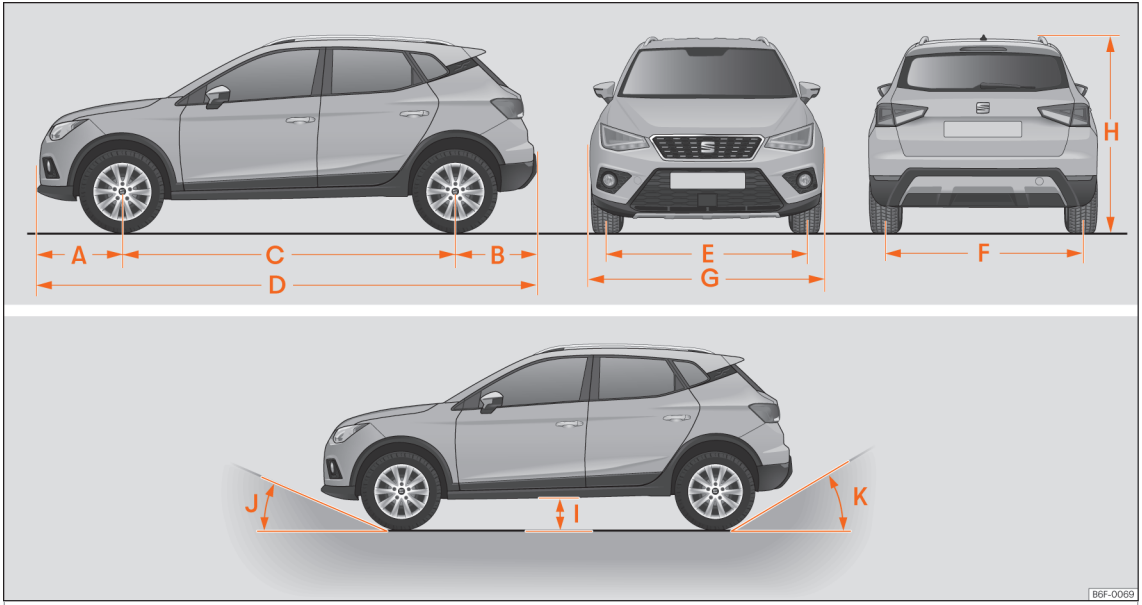


Fig. 289 Dimensions and angles.

››› Fig. 289		ARONA
A	**Front projection (mm)**	803
B	**Rear projection (mm)**	769
C	**Wheelbase (mm)**	2,566
D	**Length (mm)**	4,138
E	**Front[a] track (mm)**	1,503
F	**Back[a] track (mm)**	1,486
G	**Width (mm)**	1,780
H	**Height at kerb weight (mm)**	1,552[b]
I	**Ground clearance between the axles (mm)**	190
J	**Front projection angle limited by the bumper**	maximum 20.1°
K	**Rear projection angle limited by the bumper**	maximum 29.5°
	Turning radius (m)	11.0

[a] This data will change depending on the type of wheel rim.

[b] Dimension to the roof bars.

Index

A

ABS ... 229
  control lamp ... 229
ACC ... 259
  radar sensor ... 261
Accessories ... 307
Active cylinder management (ACT)
  status indication ... 106
Adaptive Cruise Control ... 250, 259
  control and warning lamps ... 260
  deactivating temporarily ... 266
  function for preventing overtaking in an in-side lane ... 265
  instructions on the screen ... 261
  malfunction ... 260
  operating ... 262
  radar sensor ... 261
  special driving situations ... 266
AdBlue
  information ... 313
  maximum filling capacity ... 313
  refilling ... 314
  specification ... 314
  tank capacity ... 313
Adjust
  Vehicle menu ... 34
Adjusting
  front head restraints ... 67
  lights ... 143
  rear head restraints ... 68, 149
  seats ... 64
Adjusting the front seats
  adjusting the lumbar support ... 148
Adjusting the head restraints
  front head restraints ... 148
  rear head restraints ... 68
Adjusting the seat ... 148
Adjustment
  front head restraints ... 148
Airbag covers ... 21
Airbags ... 74
Airbag system ... 21, 74
  activation ... 76
  control lamp ... 79
  deactivation of front airbag ... 78
  description ... 75
  front airbags ... 21, 76
  functioning ... 76
  head-protection airbags ... 23, 77
  side airbags ... 22, 77
Air conditioning ... 41
  Climatronic ... 168
  controls ... 166
  general notes ... 161
  manual air conditioning ... 44
Air outlets ... 163
Air recirculation
  air conditioning ... 163
Alarm system ... 133
  switching off ... 134
Alcantara leather: cleaning ... 339
Alternator
  warning lamp ... 324
Ambient lighting ... 144
Anchoring
  the front tow line. ... 89
Android Auto™ ... 183, 185
Anti-freeze ... 47
Anti-lock brake system ... 226, 228, 229
Anti-locking system
  control lamp ... 229
Anti-puncture ... 52, 85
Anti-puncture kit ... 52, 85
  check after 10 minutes ... 86
Anti-puncture set ... 85
Anti-theft alarm ... 133
  trailer ... 303
  vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow protection ... 135
Anti-theft alarm system ... 133
  switching off ... 134
Anti-theft security system ... 15
Anti-tow protection ... 135
App
  SEAT Media Control ... 187
Apple CarPlay™ ... 183, 185
Aquaplaning ... 328
Ashtray ... 154
Aspects to note before setting off ... 63
ASR ... 227
  control lamp ... 227
Assistance systems
  ACC ... 259
  adaptive cruise control ... 259
  blind spot detector (BSD) with parking assistance (RCTA) ... 269
  Cruise control system ... 250
  emergency braking assistance (Front Assist) ... 255
  fatigue detection ... 110
  Park Assist ... 276

parking assistant (RCTA) ... 269
parking system Plus ... 286
rear parking aid ... 290
speed limiter ... 252
Assisted starting ... 59
Audible warning signal
control and warning lamps ... 118
unfastened safety belt ... 69
Automatic car wash tunnel ... 337
Automatic dipped beam control ... 139
Automatic gearbox ... 233
downhill speed control ... 239
driving tips ... 236
emergency program ... 240
kick-down feature ... 237
launch control program ... 238
manual release of the selector lever ... 40
selector lever lock ... 234
selector lever positions ... 233
steering wheel with gear shift paddles ... 236
tiptronic ... 233, 236
Automatic transmission
control lamp ... 233
AUX-IN ... 214
external audio source ... 195
Average consumption ... 104

B

Battery ... 126
Before setting off ... 63
Belt tensioners
control lamp ... 79
Belt tightening ... 73
Biodiesel ... 312
Blind spot detector (BSD) ... 269
control lamps ... 269
driving situations ... 272
indication in the external rear view mirror ... 270
malfunction ... 269
operating ... 270
towing ... 274
Bluetooth®
connect audio source ... 196
Bonnet ... 315, 317
close ... 18
closure ... 18
opening ... 17
Brake assistance system ... 226
Brake fluid ... 48, 321
changing ... 322
Brake pads ... 223, 243
Brakes
brake fluid ... 321
new Brake pads ... 223
Brake servo ... 223, 231
Brake system ... 321
warning lamp ... 224
Braking
brake assistance system ... 226
Braking distance ... 223
BSD
see Blind spot detector (BSD) ... 269
Bulbs
changing bulbs ... 93
Buzzer ... 141

C

Capacities ... 46
AdBlue tank ... 313
natural gas tank ... 309
Catalytic converter ... 246
malfunction ... 246
CCS ... 38
Central locking
anti-theft alarm ... 133
automatic speed-dependent locking ... 129
central locking button ... 129
electric windows ... 138
emergency locking ... 16
key by remote control ... 125
Keyless Access ... 130
selective unlocking system ... 128
self-locking system to prevent involuntary unlocking ... 129
unlocking system ... 129
Central locking system ... 127
safe security system ... 127
Central wheel trim ... 53
Centre console ... 13
Cetane number (diesel fuel) ... 312
Changing a wheel ... 53
subsequent work ... 57
wheel bolts ... 54
Changing bulbs
additional brake light ... 98
dipped beam ... 95
DRL (daytime running light) ... 95
fog light ... 96
general notes ... 93
interior light and reading light ... 98

luggage compartment light 98
main beam headlight 94
number plate light 97
rear bulb in the side panel 96
rear light in the rear lid 97
turn signal light 95
Changing the blades 87
Charging the battery 59
Checking levels
engine compartment 317
Child-proof locking
electric windows 136
Child seat 23, 82
Child seats
categorisation into groups 82
ISOFIX system 27
safety instructions 24, 81
securing with seat belt 25
Top Tether system 27, 30
Cigarette lighter 155
Cleaning
Alcantara leather 339
carbon fibre 338, 340
control panels 339
decorative sheets 339
exhaust tail pipes 338
exterior 338
fabrics 339
headlights / tail lights 338
high pressure cleaners 336
Interior 339
leather 339
paint 338
plastic parts 339
seat belts 339
sensors/camera lenses 338
special care 340
the radio screen 339
trims/covers 338, 339
washing the vehicle 336
wheels 338
windows 339
windscreen wipers 338
Climatronic 42
adjusting the temperature 169
automatic mode 169
controls 168
fan regulation 169
general notes 161
windscreen defrost 169
Clocks
analogue 111
digital 111
set time 111
Close 125
bonnet 18
Closing 125
windows 136
Windows 136
Clutch (warning lamp) 240
Coming Home 141
Coming Home Function 141
Communication between the Infotainment system and mobile devices 179
Connectivity 179
Full Link 179
SEAT Media Control 187
WLAN point of access 188
Connectivity Box 215
Contact key 217
Control and warning lamps 118
ABS anti-blocking system 226
adaptive cruise control 260
airbags 78
airbag system 79
alternator 324
applying the brake 260
ASR 226
audible warning signal 118
blind spot detector (BSD) 269
brake systems 224
cruise control system (CCS) 250
depress the brake 255
diesel preheating system 245
EDL 229
EDS 226
emission control 245
engine management 245
engine oil 318
ESC 226
gear change 240
handbrake 224
instrument panel 37
lights 139
parking assistant (RCTA) 269
particulate filter 245
seat belt 69
speed limiter 252
Start-Stop 248
steering column lock 242
transmission 233
tyres 329

Control lamps
engine coolant ... 114
Fuel reserve ... 113
refuel ... 113
Controls and displays
general instrument panel ... 101
Controls for the windows ... 18, 136
Controls on the steering wheel ... 119
Coolant
checking level ... 320
Coolant temperature
safety recommendations ... 320
Cooling system
checking coolant ... 320
topping up coolant ... 320
Correct position ... 64
Correct sitting position
driver ... 64
front passenger ... 65
rear seat passengers ... 66
Cruise control ... 38
control and warning lamps ... 250
operation ... 251
Cruise control system ... 250
Current ... 154
Cylinder deactivation
see Active cylinder management (ACT) ... 106

D

Dangers in not using the seat belt ... 71
Dashboard ... 102
Dash panel ... 37
Data label ... 346
Data transfer ... 179
Deactivating the front passenger front airbag ... 22
Deactivation of front airbag ... 78
Detachable ball
assembling ... 297, 298
checking attachment ... 299
placing in standby position ... 296
removing ... 299, 300
standby position ... 297
Diesel
particulate filter ... 246
refuelling ... 312
Diesel fuel
particulate filter ... 246
Digital instrument
panel (SEAT Digital Cockpit) ... 104
Digital SEAT Cockpit
navigation map ... 105
Dimensions ... 353
Direction of rotation
tyres ... 57
Display ... 103
Display indications
compass indications ... 107
driving recommendation ... 106
instrument panel ... 106
speed limiter ... 252
status of active cylinder management (ACT) ... 106
time ... 111
Disposal
belt tensioners ... 74
Distance control
see Adaptive Cruise Control ... 259
Door cylinder ... 15
Door handle ... 15
Door lock ... 15
Door release lever ... 101
Doors
childproof locks ... 133
opening and closing ... 15
Downhill speed control ... 239
Downhill speed control function ... 239
Driver
see Correct sitting position ... 64, 65, 66
Driver-side general instrument panel
left-hand drive ... 9
right-hand drive ... 10
Driving
driving abroad ... 142, 247
driving through water ... 247
economic ... 244
safe ... 63
with a trailer ... 300, 303, 304
with trailer ... 295
Driving abroad
headlights ... 142
petrol ... 247
Driving mode ... 275
Driving on flooded roads ... 247
Driving profile ... 275
DSG ... 233
Duplicate keys ... 125
Dust and pollen filter ... 161
Dynamic lights range control ... 143

E

E10
see Ethanol (fuel) ... 312
Easy Connect ... 34
EDL
see Electronic differential lock ... 229

EDS ... 229
Electrical power socket ... 154
Electrical socket
  trailer ... 302
Electric windows ... 18, 136
  convenience opening and closing ... 138
Electrolyte ... 324
Electronic differential lock ... 226, 228, 229
  control lamp ... 229
Electronic immobiliser ... 15, 219
Electronic stability control (ESC) ... 226
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ... 228
Electronic torque management (XDS) ... 231
Emergencies ... 84
  automatic gearbox emergency program ... 240
  bulbs ... 51
  changing a wheel ... 53
  changing the battery ... 324
  emergency towing of the vehicle ... 58
  emergency warning triangle ... 84
  fire extinguisher ... 84
  first-aid kit ... 84
  fuses ... 50
  hazard warning lights ... 143
  jump leads ... 59
  puncture ... 52
  replacing a blown fuse ... 50
  Spare wheel ... 330
  vehicle tools ... 84
Emergency braking assistance system
  indications on the display ... 255
  malfunction ... 257
  operating ... 258
  radar sensor ... 257
  switching off temporarily ... 258
  system limitations ... 259
Emergency operation
  front passenger door ... 16
  selector lever ... 40
Emergency warning triangle ... 84
Emission control system
  control lamp ... 245
Emissions data ... 346
Engine
  assisted starting ... 59
  noises ... 222
  running in ... 242
Engine and ignition
  automatic ignition switch-off ... 220
  My Beat ... 223
  preheating the engine ... 222
  starting the engine ... 222
  starting the engine with Press & Drive ... 222
  stopping the engine ... 222
Engine breakdown
  Control lamp ... 245
Engine compartment ... 315, 317
  battery ... 323
  brake fluid ... 321
  coolant ... 320
  engine oil ... 318, 319
  opening ... 17
  safety notes ... 315
  windscreen washer liquid ... 322
Engine coolant ... 47
  checking level ... 320
  control lamp ... 114
  G12 plus-plus ... 47
  G13 ... 47
  specifications ... 47
  temperature display ... 114
  warning lamp ... 114
Engine data ... 349, 350
Engine management ... 245
  control lamp ... 245
Engine oil ... 46, 318
  changing ... 318, 319
  checking engine oil level ... 319
  consumption ... 319
  diesel ... 318
  dipstick ... 319
  inspection service ... 318
  maintenance intervals ... 318
  oil properties ... 46
  specifications ... 47, 318
  topping up ... 319
Engine oil pressure
  control lamp ... 318
Enlarging
  the luggage compartment ... 151
Environment
  environmental compatibility ... 243
  environmentally-friendly driving ... 244
Environmental tip
  refuelling ... 308
Equipment ... 307
ESC ... 226
  Electronic stability control ... 226
  Multi-collision Brake ... 231
  Sport Mode ... 228
Ethanol (fuel) ... 312
Event Data Recorder ... 342

Exhaust filtering system
catalytic converter ... 246
particulate filter ... 246
Exhaust purification system for vehicles with diesel engines ... 313
Exiting a parking space with Park Assist ... 283
Exterior lighting
changing bulbs ... 93
Exterior mirrors ... 146
adjustment ... 20
control ... 147
folding in electrically ... 147
folding in manually ... 146
heated ... 147
Exterior view ... 7, 8
External aerial ... 307

F

Fabrics: cleaning ... 339
Fastening rings ... 157
Fatigue detection ... 110
Fault in electronic differential lock (EDL)
control lamp ... 229
Faulty bulbs
changing the bulbs ... 93
Filling the fuel tank ... 308
Fire extinguisher ... 84
First-aid kit ... 84
Floor mats ... 68
Fluid level control ... 46
Fog
lights with cornering light function ... 142
Fog light bulb ... 96
Fog lights with cornering light function ... 142
Frequency band
AM ... 190
change ... 190
DAB ... 190
FM ... 190
Front airbags ... 21
safety instructions ... 76
Front Assist
indications on the display ... 255
Front drink holder ... 154
Front passenger front airbag
control lamp ... 79
deactivation ... 22
Front seats
manual adjustment ... 19
Fuel ... 46, 310
consumption ... 346
diesel ... 312
ethanol ... 312
fuel gauge ... 113
identification ... 310
natural gas ... 312
petrol ... 311
saving ... 244
Fuel consumption ... 244
Why does fuel consumption increase? ... 246
Fuel gauge ... 113
control lamp ... 113
Fuel tank cap
opening and closing ... 46
Full Link ... 179
pairing ... 183
setup ... 183
Function buttons ... 175
Fuses ... 50, 91
fuse box ... 91
identifying blown fuses ... 51
identifying by colours ... 50
preparation before replacing ... 50
replacing ... 50

G

Gear-change indicator ... 240
Gearbox DSG
see Automatic gearbox ... 233
Gearbox lever ... 40
Gear change ... 40
automatic ... 40
changing gears (manual gearbox) ... 232
kick-down ... 276
manual ... 40
manual gearbox ... 232
Gear engaged ... 40
Gear recommendation ... 240
Gear shift paddles (automatic gearbox) ... 236
General
instrument panel ... 104
General instrument panel
control and warning lamps ... 37
controls and displays ... 101
turn signal and main beam lever ... 140
General overview of the engine compartment ... 317
Glove compartment ... 153
Glow plug system ... 218

H

Handbrake ... 224
lamp ... 224
Hazard warning lights ... 32, 143
HBA ... 230
Head-on collisions and their laws of physics ... 71
Head-protection airbags
description ... 23
safety instructions ... 23
Headlights
driving abroad ... 142
fog lights ... 140
Head restraints ... 19
adjustment ... 148
front head restraints ... 67
rear head restraints ... 68
Headrests ... 19
adjustment ... 148
front ... 67
rear ... 68
Heated rear window ... 43, 45
switch ... 145
Heating ... 165
defrosting the windscreen ... 165
demisting the windscreen and side windows ... 165
Heating and fresh air ... 44, 164
Heating and fresh air system
controls ... 164
Heating or cooling the interior ... 166
Heating system ... 165
Hill driving assistant ... 231
Horn ... 101
How to jump start ... 59
description ... 59
Hydraulic Brake Assist
automatic hazard warning lights activation ... 230

I

Identification of the fuel ... 310
Identification plate ... 346
Identifying letters on engine ... 346
Identifying letters on the engine
show ... 108
Ignition ... 31, 217
Ignition lock ... 31, 217
see Starter button ... 220
Incorrect position ... 66
Indications on the display ... 107
ACT ... 244
adaptive cruise control ... 261
ECO ... 107
Emergency braking assistance system (Front Assist) ... 255
identifying letters of the engine ... 107
odometer ... 106
SEAT Drive Profile ... 274
selector lever positions ... 233
service intervals ... 115
warning and information messages ... 110
Indications on the screen
doors, bonnet and rear lid open ... 106
Outside temperature ... 106
positions of the selector lever ... 106
speed warning ... 107
Inertia mode ... 239
Information profiles ... 104
Infotainment knobs ... 174
Infotainment system ... 34
CD player ... 194
function buttons ... 175
general instructions for use ... 174
general panel of the device ... 172
input mask ... 177
memory card ... 194
on-screen keypad ... 177
text input ... 177
update navigation data ... 199
Infotainment System ... 170
AUX-IN ... 195
Bluetooth® audio ... 196
changing the volume ... 175
general panel ... 173
Images main menu ... 197
infotainment knobs ... 174
initial configuration ... 178
Internet access ... 189
Media mode ... 191
memory buttons ... 191
mute ... 175
navigation ... 198
proximity sensors ... 178
Radio mode ... 190
rotary knobs ... 174
safety instructions ... 170
scroll knob ... 176
scroll (display) ... 176
search in lists ... 176
sharing a WLAN connection ... 188
standby ... 174
station logos ... 191
switch on and off ... 174

Telephone mode ... 209
touchscreen ... 175
USB ... 195
Vehicle menu ... 208
verification boxes ... 175
Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) ... 189
WLAN ... 188
WLAN audio ... 197
Inspection ... 318, 333
Inspection service ... 318
Instrument panel ... 103, 104
control and warning lamps ... 118
display ... 103, 104
display indications ... 106
instructions shown on the screen ... 107
instruments ... 103, 104
service interval indication ... 115
structure of the menus ... 107
use with the multifunction steering wheel ... 118
use with the windscreen wiper lever ... 117
Instrument panel display ... 104, 106
Instruments ... 104
Interference from a mobile telephone ... 174
Interior bulbs ... 98
Interior lights ... 33
Interior mirror ... 146
anti-dazzle ... 146
Interior view ... 14
ISOFIX ... 27, 29
ISOFIX system ... 27
ISOFIX System ... 29

J

Jack ... 53
mounting points ... 55
Jump leads ... 59

K

Key-operated switch ... 78
Key by remote control
unlocking and locking ... 125
Keyless-Entry
see Keyless Access ... 130
Keyless-Exit
see Keyless Access ... 130
Keyless Access
Keyless-Entry ... 130
Keyless-Exit ... 130
Press & Drive ... 220
special characteristics ... 132
starting the engine ... 222
unlocking and locking the vehicle ... 130
Keyless Access locking and ignition system
see Keyless Access ... 130
Keys
replacing the battery ... 126
spare key ... 125
synchronise ... 127
unlocking and locking ... 15, 125
vehicle key ... 125
Kick-down
automatic gearbox ... 237
manual gearbox ... 276

L

Launch control (automatic gearbox) ... 238
Leaving Home ... 141
Leaving Home Function ... 141
Lifting the vehicle ... 55
Lighting of the instrument panel ... 144
Lights ... 31, 139
additional brake light ... 98
AUTO ... 139
changing bulbs ... 93
coming home ... 141
control and warning lamps ... 139
cornering light ... 142
daytime running lights ... 140
fog lights ... 140
interior light and front reading lights ... 98
interior lights ... 144
leaving home ... 141
lighting of instruments ... 144
lighting of the controls ... 144
lights range control ... 143
light switch ... 139
luggage compartment light ... 98
main beam lever ... 140
main beams ... 32
motorway light ... 142
number plate light ... 97
parking lights ... 140
reading lights ... 144
turn signal lever ... 140
Lights range control ... 143
Light switch ... 31
Load compartment in the luggage compartment
see Loading the luggage compartment ... 155
Loading the luggage compartment ... 155
Loading the vehicle
fastening rings ... 157
luggage compartment ... 16
roof carrier system ... 160

Locking and unlocking
in the door cylinder ... 15
with Keyless Access ... 130
with the central lock button ... 129
Locking the front passenger door manually ... 16
Luggage ... 155
Luggage compartment ... 16, 155
luggage compartment light ... 144
luggage compartment variable floor ... 158
manual release mechanism ... 17
stowing the shelf ... 156
see also Loading the luggage compartment ... 155
Luggage compartment floor ... 158
Luggage compartment shelf
stowing ... 156
Luggage compartment variable floor ... 158

M

Main beam lever ... 140
Maintenance
see Service ... 333
Maintenance intervals ... 318
Malfunction
adaptive cruise control ... 260
catalytic converter ... 246
clutch ... 240
emergency braking assistance system (Front Assist) ... 257
gearbox ... 240
particulate filter ... 246
Manual air conditioning ... 166
Manual gearbox ... 232
Media
changing the Media source ... 193
copyright ... 192
main menu ... 192
messages and symbols ... 193
playback sources ... 194
playing modes ... 192
Memory card ... 194
MirrorLink ... 184
Mobile ... 307
Mobile signal amplifier ... 215
Mobile telephones ... 307
Motor
Start-Stop system ... 248
Multi-collision Brake ... 231
Multi-function steering wheel
without voice control ... 123
with voice control ... 120
Multifunction indicator ... 108
Multifunction steering wheel ... 119
Multimedia ... 214
My Beat ... 223

N

Natural gas ... 312
fuel gauge ... 114
fuel tank cap ... 309
LNG ... 310
refuelling ... 309, 312
smell ... 313
special features ... 310
Navigation ... 198
change view ... 204
entering the destination ... 200
importing vCards ... 207
main menu ... 199
messages and symbols ... 199
my destinations ... 202
navigation announcements ... 201
Navigation with images ... 207
points of interest (POI) ... 203
predictive navigation ... 206
route ... 201
select the destination on the map ... 200
split screen ... 204
traffic reports (TRAFFIC) ... 206
Navigation announcements ... 201
Noises
adaptive cruise control ... 260
refuelling natural gas ... 310
tyres ... 57, 326
Number of seats ... 69

O

Octane rating (petrol) ... 311
Odometer ... 104
total ... 103, 104
trip recorder ... 103, 104
Oil change ... 319
Oil properties ... 46
One-touch opening and closing
electric windows ... 138
Opening ... 125
bonnet ... 17
fuel tank flap ... 309
the fuel tank flap ... 308
windows ... 136
Opening and closing ... 125
bonnet ... 17
by remote control ... 125

fuel cap 46
fuel tank flap 309
in the door cylinder 15
in the lock cylinder 15
rear lid 16, 136
windows 136
with the central lock button 129
Operating malfunction
Park Assist 276
Original SEAT Spare Parts 335
Outside temperature
display 106
Overview
of the structure of the menus 107

P

Park Assist 276
automatic braking intervention 284
automatic interruption 277
conditions for exiting a parking space 283
exiting a parking space (only for parallel spaces) 283
operating malfunction 276
parallel parking 281
parking conditions 281
perpendicular parking 281
see Park Assist 276
stopping prematurely 277
Parking 225, 237
with Park Assist 281
Parking aid
adjusting the display and audible warnings 288, 291
automatic activation 287
braking while manoeuvring 289
driving with a trailer 289
malfunction 289, 292
rear parking aid 290
sensors and camera: cleaning 338
towing bracket 292
visual indication 288, 291
Parking aid system
see Parking aid 284, 286, 290
Parking assistance
parking system plus 286
see Park Assist 276
surroundings warning 286
Parking assistant (RCTA) 269, 273
control lamp 269
Parking distance warning system
see Parking aid 284, 286, 290
Parking (automatic gearbox) 236
ParkPilot
see Parking aid 284, 286, 290
Particulate filter
malfunction 246
Parts 307
Passenger
see Correct sitting position 64, 65, 66
Passenger-side instrument panel
left-hand drive 11
right-hand drive 12
Pedals 68
Petrol 311
Pollution filter 161
Positioning seat belts
during pregnancy 73
seat belts 73
Power-assisted steering 241
Power steering 241
Preheating system
control lamp 245
Preheating the engine 222
Press & Drive
starter button 220
starting the engine 222
Products for vehicle maintenance 336
Puncture
action 52

R

Radar sensor 257, 261
Radio
changing frequencies 190
information and symbols 190
main menu 190
memorise station logos 191
memory buttons 191
Radio DISPLAY: clean 339
Radio transmitters 307
Raising the vehicle 55
RCTA 273
see Parking assistant (RCTA) 269
Rear Assist 292
instructions for use 293
parking 294
screen 293
special characteristics 293
Rear Assist system 292
Rear bulbs in the side panel
disassemble the rear light 96
Rear fog light
control lamp 139
Rear lid 16, 17, 136

Rear lights in the rear lid
disassemble the bulb holder ... 97
Rear parking aid ... 290
Rear seat
folding down the backrest ... 151
Rear seat passengers
see Correct sitting position ... 64, 65, 66
Rear View Camera ... 292
Rear view mirror ... 146
Rear window wiper blades
changing ... 62
cleaning ... 62
Refuel
control lamp ... 113
fuel gauge ... 113
Refuelling ... 308
gas gauge ... 114
natural gas ... 309
opening the fuel tank flap ... 308
petrol additives ... 311
Remote control ... 125
Removing and attaching head restraints ... 149
Repair work ... 307
Replacement
parts ... 307
Replacement keys ... 125
Replacement parts ... 307
Replacing the battery
of the vehicle key ... 126
Reverse gear (automatic gearbox) ... 233
Revolution counter ... 103, 104, 112
Rims
changing a wheel ... 53
Roll-back function
windows ... 137
Roof carrier ... 159
Roof carrier system ... 159
Roof load ... 160
technical data ... 160
Roof luggage rack
attach the cross bars ... 159
Roof rack ... 159
Rotary knobs ... 174
Running in
brake pads ... 243
engine ... 242
new tyres ... 325
tyres ... 243

S

Safe ... 128
SAFE ... 219
Safe driving ... 63
Safe Security system ... 128
Safety
child safety ... 80
child seats ... 80
deactivating the front passenger airbag ... 22
safe driving ... 63
Safety equipment ... 63
Safety instructions
belt tensioners ... 74
front airbags ... 76
head-protection airbags ... 23
side airbags ... 77
use of seat belts ... 70
using child seats ... 24, 81
Safety recommendations
coolant temperature ... 320
Saving fuel
inertia mode ... 239
Seat
heating ... 150
removable covers ... 151
Seat belt position
for pregnant women ... 19
seat belts ... 19
Seat belts ... 69
adjustment ... 19, 72
control lamp ... 69
protective function ... 70
purpose ... 69, 74
safety instructions ... 70
unfastened ... 71
Seat belt tensioners ... 20, 73
SEAT Digital Cockpit ... 104
information profiles ... 104
SEAT Drive Profile ... 274
Seat heating ... 150
SEAT Media Control ... 187
data transmission and control functions ... 187
SEAT Service Mobility ... 335
Selective catalytic reduction
see Exhaust purification system (diesel) ... 313
Selective opening ... 128
Selector lever lock ... 234
Selector lever (automatic gearbox)
malfunction ... 234
manual release mechanism ... 40
positions ... 233
Service
conditions of use ... 334
digital maintenance plan ... 333
fixed service ... 333

flexible service ... 333
oil change service ... 333
service ... 333
Service proof ... 333
services ... 333
servicing ... 333
sets of services ... 335
Service interval indicator ... 108
Service intervals ... 115
Service intervals display ... 334
Service Menu
identifying letters on the engine ... 108
restart oil service ... 108
restart Trip ... 108
service interval indicator ... 108
time ... 108
Service warning: check ... 116
Set
time ... 111
Side airbags
description ... 22
safety instructions ... 77
Signal lever ... 32
Smell of gas ... 313
Snow chains ... 57
Spanner symbol ... 115
Spare wheel ... 330
Special characteristics
tow-starting ... 88
Special features
Lowering the volume ... 174
Speed limiter ... 252
control lamp ... 252
display indications ... 252
operate ... 253
Speed warning ... 109
Sport Mode ... 228
Stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer ... 304
Start-Stop ... 248
Start-Stop system
operation ... 248
switching off and on ... 250
switch the engine off and on ... 248
Start-Stop System
driver instructions ... 248
lamps ... 248
the engine does not switch off ... 248
the engine starts by itself ... 248
Starter button ... 220
Starting the engine ... 217, 218
after the fuel tank has run dry ... 219
diesel ... 218
petrol ... 217
Starting the vehicle ... 31
Steering ... 65, 241
control lamp ... 242
power-assisted steering ... 241
steering column lock ... 241
Steering wheel
adjustment ... 20
gear shift paddles (automatic gearbox) ... 236
Steering wheel height adjustment ... 65
Storage compartments ... 153
of front door panel ... 153
on the front passenger side ... 153
right front seat ... 153
storage pocket in the seat ... 153
Sun visors ... 145
Switch
hazard warning lights ... 143
Switch-off delay (Infotainment system) ... 174
Switching off the engine ... 219
Switching off the lights ... 139
Switching on the lights ... 139
Switching the ignition on and off ... 31, 217

T

Technical data
roof load ... 160
Technical modifications ... 307
Technical specifications ... 346
Telephone
Bluetooth® profiles ... 210
call lists ... 214
display and symbols ... 213
enter telephone number ... 213
general information ... 209
main menu ... 212
pairing a mobile phone ... 211
places with special regulations ... 210
Temperature display
of the engine coolant ... 114
Temporary spare wheel ... 330
Tightening torque
wheel bolts ... 56
Tightening torque of wheel bolts ... 348
Time
adjust ... 108
set ... 111
Tiptronic (automatic gearbox) ... 233, 236
Top Tether ... 27, 30
Top Tether system ... 27, 30
Tow-starting ... 59, 87
Tow-starting the engine ... 88

Towing
blind spot detector (BSD) ... 274
special characteristics ... 274
Towing a trailer ... 300
Towing bracket
retrofitting ... 305
Towing bracket device ... 295
ball coupling ... 302
description ... 296
operation and care ... 300
Towing the vehicle ... 58, 87
Towline anchorages ... 58
rear ... 89
Tow rope ... 301
Traction control ... 226
Traction control system ... 227, 228
control lamp ... 227
Trailer ... 295
connecting ... 301, 303
driving with a trailer ... 303
electrical socket ... 302
hitching ... 301
mode ... 347
parking aid ... 289, 292
rear lights ... 301
safety lug ... 303
stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer ... 304
tow rope ... 301
Trailer turn signals
control lamp ... 141
Trailer weight ... 347
Transporting children ... 80
Transporting items
fastening rings ... 157
roof carrier ... 159
roof carrier system ... 159
Transporting objects
roof carrier system ... 160
Travel data ... 108
Travel data indicator ... 108
Trip odometer ... 108
Turn signal lever ... 140
Turn signals
control lamp ... 141
Tyre Mobility Set ... 52
components ... 86
inflating a tyre ... 86
sealing a tyre ... 86
Tyre Mobility System
see Anti-puncture kit ... 85
Tyre pressure ... 327, 348
Tyre profile ... 327
Tyre repair ... 85
Tyre repair kit
see Anti-puncture kit ... 85
Tyres ... 325
accessories ... 326
changing ... 53
new tyres ... 328
pressure ... 326, 327, 329
service life ... 327
wear indicators ... 327
with directional tread ... 57
with directional tread pattern ... 326
Tyre tread depth ... 327
Tyre wear ... 327

U

Unfastening your seat belt ... 72
Unfasten the seat belt ... 19
Unlocking and locking
by remote control ... 125
with Keyless Access ... 130
with the central lock button ... 129
Unlocking manually
rear lid ... 17
USB ... 214
connecting an external data storage device ... 195
USB/AUX-IN Port ... 214

V

Vanity mirror ... 145
Vehicle
data label ... 346
identification data ... 346
identification number ... 346
raising ... 55
unlocking and locking with Keyless Access ... 130
vehicle identification number ... 346
Vehicle battery ... 49, 323
assisted starting ... 59
changing ... 324
charging ... 324
connecting and disconnecting ... 323
disconnect and connect ... 116
electrolyte level ... 324
winter conditions ... 323
Vehicle care
windscreen wipers service position ... 61
Vehicle data ... 353

Vehicle documentation compartment 153
Vehicle interior monitoring and anti-tow system 135
activation 135
Vehicle maintenance 336
Vehicle paint
maintenance 338
Vehicle seats 69
vehicle tools 53
Vehicle tools
housing 84
Ventilation 165
Ventilation slits 156

W

Warning lamps
engine coolant 114
Warning symbols 118
see also Control and warning lamps 118
Warning triangle 143
Warranty 336
Washing the vehicle
external vehicle maintenance 336
high pressure cleaners 336
sensors 276
Weights 347
What negatively affects driving safety? 63
Wheel balance 327
Wheel bolts 54, 348
anti-theft 54
caps 54
tightening torque 56, 329
Wheels 325, 348
central wheel trim 53
changing 53
new wheels 328
removing and fitting 56
snow chains 57
Wheel trim
removing 54
Windows
electric 18, 136
Window wiper 145
Window wiper blade 33
Windscreen and rear window wiper blades ... 87
Windscreen defrosting 165
Windscreen washer 48, 145
Windscreen washer water
checking 322
filling amounts 322
topping up 322
Windscreen wiper blades
service position 61
Windscreen wipers 33, 145
cleaning 338
lifting the wiper blade 61
replacing the wiper blade 61
service position 61
Winter conditions
battery 323
diesel 312
snow chains 57
tyres 331
Winter tyres
sizes 331
Wireless Charger 215
Wireless charging 215
WLAN 188
connecting an external audio source 197

X

XDS 231

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

Inglés 6F9012720BD (11.18)

6F9012720BD

SEAT